



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

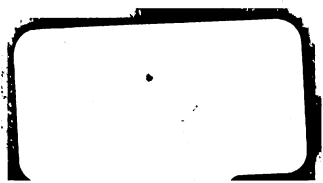
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

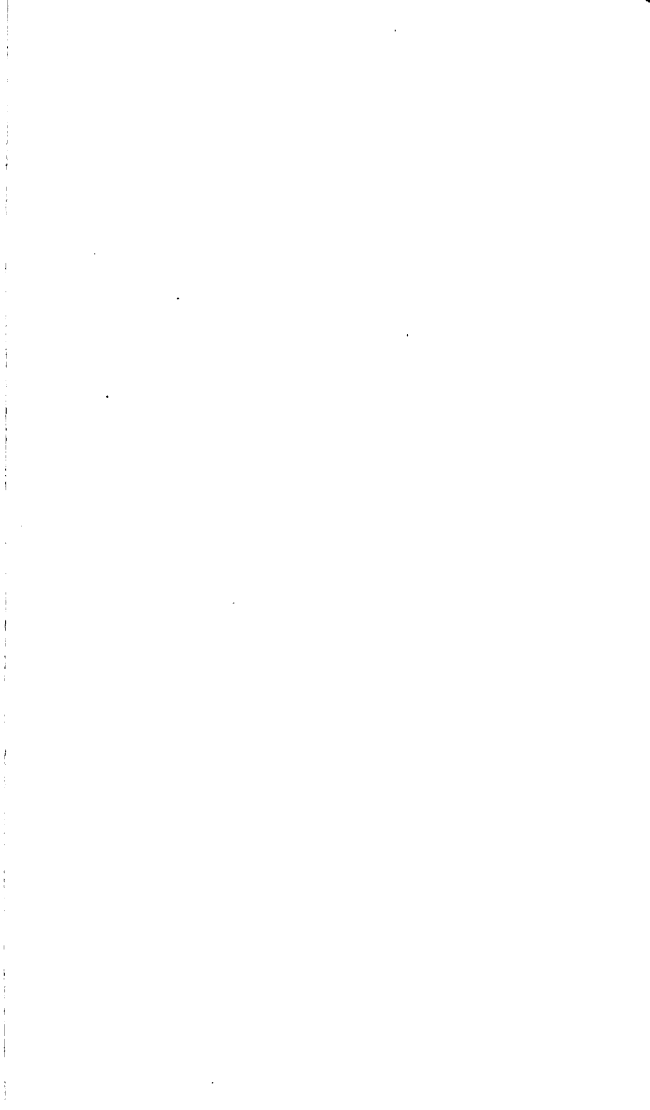
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 3433 08182560 0

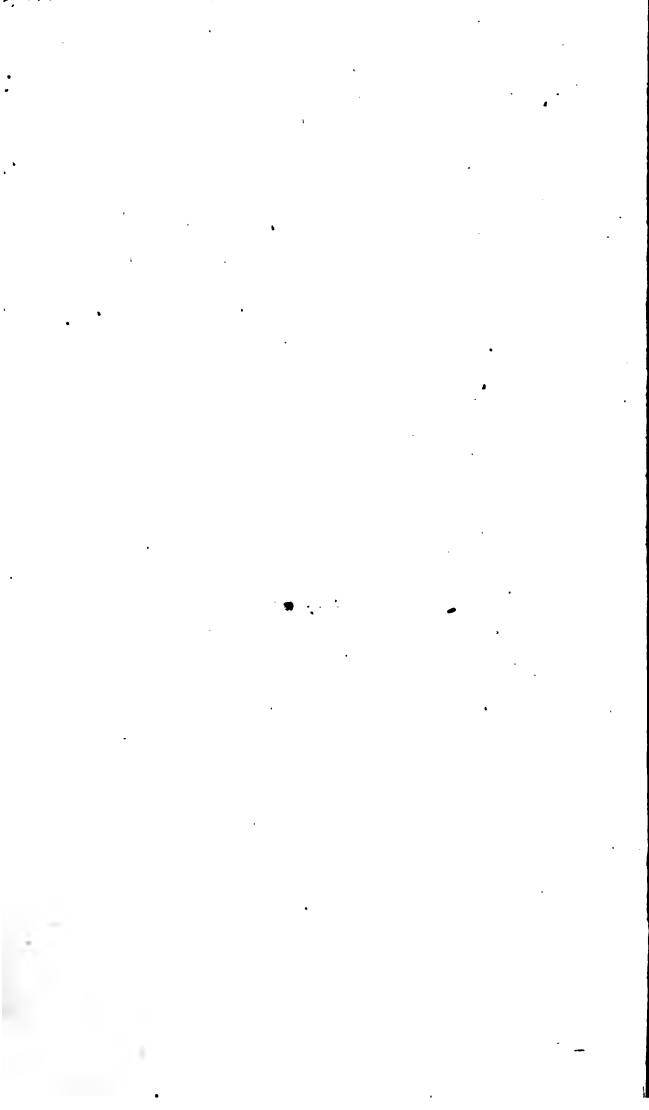












THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

1843.

CHK



Class 13 no. 100
HISTORY

OF

THE EXPEDITION

UNDER THE COMMAND OF

Meriwether W.
CAPTAINS LEWIS AND CLARKE,

TO

**THE SOURCES OF THE MISSOURI, THENCE ACROSS THE ROCKY
MOUNTAINS, AND DOWN THE RIVER COLUMBIA TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN: PERFORMED DURING THE
YEARS 1804, 1805, 1806,**

BY ORDER OF THE

GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES.

PREPARED FOR THE PRESS

BY PAUL ALLEN, ESQ.

**REVISED, AND ABBRIDGED BY THE OMISSION OF UNIMPORTANT DE-
TAILS, WITH AN INTRODUCTION AND NOTES,**

BY ARCHIBALD M. VICKAR.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

NEW-YORK:

HARPER AND BROTHERS, 82 CLIFF-ST.

1843.

CHW

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

585927

ASTOR LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.
P. 1913 L

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1842, by
HARPER & BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the Southern District of New-York.

ALVY W. B. N.
CLERK
FEBRUARY

Checked
May 1913

ADVERTISEMENT.

THAT portion of the North American Continent known by the name of the Oregon Territory, lying between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Ocean, has for many years been almost a blank in the history of the United States. It has, however, frequently been the subject of resolutions and reports in Congress, of communications between the different branches of the government, and of discussion with the ministers of foreign powers. Still, any strong interest in regard to it has been confined to a few, and it has been for the most part overlooked amid other topics of the day. As a subject involving in its considerations connected with commerce, colonization, and territorial boundaries, it is now daily growing in importance.

The History of the Expedition of Captains Lewis and Clarke, during the years 1804, 1805, and 1806, by order of the Government of the United States, is the first narrative which diffused widely among us a knowledge of this ter-

Feb. 20, 1913 - Vol. 42.06 (2 vols.)

ritory, and the intermediate country from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains. It presents a description of a wild and magnificent region, unvisited before by white men, with its barbarous tribes, their character and habits, and abounding in herds of buffalo, deer, and antelope, outnumbering the human tenants of the land. The work being now nearly out of print, it seemed to the publishers a suitable time to put forth an edition of the Journal of Lewis and Clarke pruned of unimportant details, with a sketch of the progress of maritime discovery on the Pacific coast, a summary account of earlier attempts to penetrate this vast western wilderness, and such extracts and illustrations from the narratives of later travellers, led by objects of trade, the love of science, or religious zeal, as the limits of the undertaking would allow.

The matter of the original journal is indicated by inverted commas, and where portions of it, embracing minute and uninteresting particulars, have been omitted, the leading facts have been briefly stated by the editor in his own words, so that the connexion of the narrative is preserved unbroken, and nothing of importance is lost to the reader. To the lamented death of Captain Lewis, while his manuscript was not

yet fully prepared for publication, are doubtless in a great measure to be ascribed many verbal inaccuracies which appear in the original edition, and which the present editor, with a scrupulous avoidance of any change of the evidently intended meaning of the text, has endeavoured to correct. The seventh chapter of the second volume, giving an account of the quadrupeds, birds, and plants found on the Columbia and its tributaries, has, to avoid unnecessary interruption of the course of the narrative, been transferred to the appendix.

This Journal must ever retain a high degree of interest, as the account of the first, and what is likely always to remain the only voyage made by Indian or white man, in boats or canoes stemming the current and rapids of the Missouri by the aid of sails, oars, pole, and tow-line, from the point where its waters discharge themselves into the Mississippi to its sources in the Rocky Mountains. They and their party were also the first white men who, after crossing the mountains, discovered the head-waters of the Columbia River, and were borne by its rapid current to the bay where its tumultuous waters meet the stormy tides of the Pacific. Nor has any traveller followed them in tracing the windings of the Upper Missouri from the

villages of the Mandans, by its falls and mountain gates, almost to the first bubblings of its fountain.

A map accompanies the work, which, by its accuracy and completeness, will prove a ready guide to the attentive reader.

The publishers here tender their acknowledgments to G. R. Clarke, Esq., for the kind and liberal manner in which, in behalf of himself and the other relatives of the distinguished traveller, he has expressed his consent to this publication.

H. & B.

New-York, March, 1842.

CONTENTS

OF

THE FIRST VOLUME.

INTRODUCTION	Page vii
-------------------------------	-----------------

CHAPTER I.

Party composing the Expedition.—Their Departure.—Cave near Osage Woman River.—Grand Osage River.—Osage Indians.—Curious traditional Account of their Origin.—The Missouri.—Snake Bluffs.—Kansas River.—Kansas Indians.—The Nodawa River.—The Nemahaw, and Mounds on its Banks.—Party afflicted with Boils.—Platte River . . .	53
--	-----------

CHAPTER II.

Some Account of the Pawnees and other Tribes of Indians.—Council held with the Ottos and Missouri Indians.—Little Sioux River.—Ravages of Smallpox among the Mahas.—Council held with another Party of the Ottos.—Death of Sergeant Floyd.—Honour among the Indians . . .	63
--	-----------

CHAPTER III.

Whimsical Instance of Superstition of the Sioux Indians.—Council held with the Sioux.—Character of that Tribe, their Manners, &c.—A ridiculous Instance of their Heroism.—Ancient Fortifications.—Vast Herds of Buffalo.—Account of the Petit Chien, or Little Dog.—Narrow Escape of George Shannon.—Surprising Fleetness of the Antelope.—Pass the River of the Sioux.—The Grand Detour, or Great Bend.—Encamp on the Teton River	77
---	-----------

CHAPTER IV.

Council held with the Tetons.—Their Manners, Dances, &c.—Chayenne River.—Council held with the Ricara Indians.—Their Manners and Habits.—Strange Instance of Ricara Idolatry.—Another Instance.—Cannonball River.—Arrival among the Mandans.—Character of the surrounding Country . . .	97
--	-----------

VOL. I.—A.

CHAPTER V.

Council held with the Mandans.—A Prairie on Fire, and a singular Instance of Preservation.—Peace established between the Mandans and Ricaras.—The Party encamp for the Winter.—Indian Mode of catching Goats.—Beautiful Appearance of Northern Lights.—Friendly Character of the Indians.—Some Account of the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetarees.—The Party acquire the Confidence of the Mandans by taking part in their Controversy with the Sioux.—Religion of the Mandans, and their singular Conception of the term *Medicine*.—Their Tradition.—The Sufferings of the Party from the Severity of the Season.—Indian Game of Billiards described.—Account of the Sioux . . . Page 120

CHAPTER VI.

The Party increase in Favour.—A Buffalo Dance.—Medicine Dance.—The Fortitude with which the Indian bears the Severity of the Season.—Distress of the Party for Want of Provision.—The great Importance of the Blacksmith in procuring it.—Depredations of the Sioux.—The Homage paid to the Medicine Stone.—Summary Act of Justice among the Minnetarees.—The Process by which the Mandans and Ricaras make Beads.—Character of the Missouri and of the surrounding Country 150

CHAPTER VII.

Indian Method of attacking the Buffalo on the Ice.—Presents sent to the President of the United States.—Visit from a Ricara Chief.—They leave their Encampment, and proceed on their Journey.—Description of the Little Missouri.—Some Account of the Assiniboins.—Their Mode of burying the Dead.—Whiteearth River.—Great Quantity of Salt discovered on its Banks.—Yellowstone River.—Account of the Country at the Confluence of the Yellowstone and Missouri.—Description of the Missouri and the surrounding Country 170

CHAPTER VIII.

Usual Appearance of Salt.—The formidable Character of the White Bear.—Porcupine River described.—Beautiful Appearance of the surrounding Country.—Immense Quantities of Game.—Milk River described.—Big Dry River.—An Instance of uncommon Tenacity of Life in a White Bear.—Narrow Escape of one of the Party from that Animal.—A still more remarkable Instance.—Muscleshell River 188

CHAPTER IX.

The Party continue their Route.—Judith River.—Indian Mode of taking the Buffalo.—Slaughter River.—Phenomena of Nature.—Walls on the Banks of the Missouri.—The Party encamp, to ascertain which of the Streams constitutes the Missouri.—Captain Lewis leaves the Party to explore the Northern Fork, and Captain Clarke explores the Southern.—Narrow Escape of one of Captain Lewis's Party . . . Page 204

CHAPTER X.

Return of Captain Lewis.—Captain Clarke's Researches.—Tansy River.—The Party believing the Southern Fork to be the Missouri, Captain Lewis resolves to ascend it.—Mode of making a Place to deposite Provisions, called by the French *Cache*.—Captain Lewis explores the Southern Fork.—Falls of the Missouri discovered, which decides the Question.—Romantic Scenery of the surrounding Country.—Narrow Escape of Captain Lewis.—The main Body of the Party, under Captain Clarke, approach within five miles of the Falls, and prepare for making a Portage over the Rapids . . . 219

CHAPTER XI.

Description and romantic Appearance of the Missouri at the Junction of the Medicine River.—Difficulty of transporting the Baggage round the Falls.—The Party employed in the Construction of a Boat of Skins.—During the Work, the Party much troubled by White Bears.—Violent Hailstorm, and providential Escape of Captain Clarke and his Party.—Description of a remarkable Fountain.—Singular Explosion heard from the Black Mountains.—The Boat found to be insufficient, to the serious Disappointment of the Party.—Captain Clarke undertakes to remedy the Difficulty by building Canoes, and succeeds . . . 233

CHAPTER XII.

The Party embark on board the Canoes.—Smith's River.—Character of the Country, &c.—Dearborne's River.—Captain Clarke precedes the Party for the Purpose of discovering the Indians of the Rocky Mountains.—Magnificent rocky Appearances on the Borders of the River, denominated the Gates of the Rocky Mountains.—Captain Clarke arrives at the Three Forks of the Missouri without overtaking the Indians.—The Party arrive at the Three Forks, of which a particular and interesting Description is given . . . 254

CHAPTER XIII.

The Name of the Missouri changed, as the River now divides itself into three Forks, one of which they called Jefferson, one Madison, and one Gallatin.—Their general Character.—The Party ascend the Jefferson Branch.—Description of the River Philosophy, which enters into the Jefferson.—Captain Lewis, with a small Party, goes in advance in search of the Shoshonees.—Description of the Country bordering on the River.—Captain Lewis still preceding the main Party in quest of the Shoshonees.—A singular Accident, which prevented Captain Clarke from following Captain Lewis's Advice, and ascending the middle Fork of the River.—Description of Philanthropy River, another Stream running into the Jefferson.—Captain Lewis, with a small Party, having been unsuccessful in his first Attempt, sets off a second time in quest of the Shoshonees Page 275

CHAPTER XIV.

Captain Lewis precedes the main Body in Search of the Shoshonees.—His ill Success at the first Interview.—The Party with Captain Lewis at length discover the Source of the Missouri.—Captain Clarke, with the main Body, still employed in ascending the Missouri or Jefferson River.—Captain Lewis's second Interview with the Shoshonees successful.—The interesting Ceremonies of his first Introduction to the Natives detailed at large.—Their Hospitality.—Their Mode of hunting the Antelope.—The Difficulties encountered by Captain Clarke in ascending the River.—Suspensions entertained of Captain Lewis by the Shoshonees, and his Mode of allaying them.—The ravenous Appetite of the Savages illustrated by a singular Adventure.—The Indians still Jealous, and the great Pains taken by Captain Lewis to preserve their Confidence.—Captain Clarke arrives with the main Body, exhausted by the Difficulties they had undergone 293

CHAPTER XV.

Affecting Interview between the Wife of Chaboneau and the Chief of the Shoshonees.—Council held with that Nation, and favourable Result.—The extreme navigable Point of the Missouri.—General Character of the River and of the Country through which it passes.—Captain Clarke, in exploring the Source of the Columbia, falls in with another Party of Shoshonees.—Geographical Information acquired from one of that Party.—Their Manner of catching Fish.—The Party reach Lewis River.—Difficulties which Captain Clarke had to en-

counter in his Route.—Friendship and Hospitality of the Shoshonees.—The Party with Captain Lewis employed in making Saddles, and preparing for the Journey . . . Page 317

CHAPTER XVI.

Contest between Drewyer and a Shoshonee.—Fidelity and Honour of that Tribe.—The Party set out on their Journey.—Conduct of Cameahwait reproved, and himself reconciled.—Easy Parturition of the Shoshonee Women.—History of this Nation.—Their Terror of the Pahkees.—Their Government, and Family Economy in the Treatment of their Women.—Their Complaints of Spanish Treachery.—Description of their Weapons of War.—Curious Mode of making Shields.—Caparison of their Horses.—Dress of the Men and Women particularly described.—Their Mode of acquiring new Names 344



INTRODUCTION.

THE western shores of North America were visited at an early day by Spanish navigators. The discovery of a new continent, which crowned the splendid conceptions and enterprise of Columbus, and the ocean path opened to the countries of the gorgeous East by Vasco di Gama, after many a gallant endeavour of the mariners of Portugal, awakened a spirit for discovery and adventure among the maritime nations of Europe. Fifty years had not yet elapsed since the first voyage of Columbus, when Magellan passed through the straits which bear his name, and made his way to India; Balboa had crossed the Isthmus of Darien to the shores of the Pacific; the empire of Montezuma had sunk under the arm of Cortez, and Peru and Chili had been subjugated by Pizarro and his captains. Various expeditions were fitted out from the western ports of Mexico, for the purpose of tracing the northern coasts or of finding a way to India; and the records of those days hand down to us narratives of such voyages, suited to the spirit of the times, but regarded with distrust by modern judgments. Still, the voyage of Ulloa, who in 1539 coasted the western shore of California as high as the thirtieth degree of north latitude; of Cabrillo and Ferrer, who in 1540 advanced as far as the forty-

third degree, are not subject to this exception. Between the years 1578-80, Sir Francis Drake visited these shores ; but it is made a question whether he ever proceeded beyond the points discovered by prior Spanish navigators. In 1602, Viscaïno, being ordered by the Viceroy of Mexico to survey the northwestern coast and ascertain the best points for settlement, proceeded to the forty-third degree north, as far as Cape Blanco. On his passage northward he found two good harbours, to which he gave the names of Port San Diego and Monterey, the latter in honour of the viceroy, to whom he sent letters urging the establishment of colonies and garrisons at several places indicated by him. His death in 1609 seems to have put an end to the project. This cape remained the limit of Spanish and European discovery for 160 years ; and, except by those engaged in voyages from Mexico to India, and certain bucaniers who harboured about the Gulf of California, these coasts were altogether neglected. In 1610, Henry Hudson entered the bay which bears his name. The year 1616 is distinguished in the calendar of discoveries by the passage of Lemaire and Van Schouten from the Atlantic into the Pacific, around the southern extremity of the island which lies south of Magellan's Straits. This extreme point, in honour of their native city in Holland, they called Cape Horn. About the beginning of the eighteenth century the Jesuits formed establishments in California, and made unavailing efforts for the conversion and civilization of the

Indians, until the expulsion of their order from the Spanish dominions in 1767.

In 1774, for the first time since the voyage of Viscaino in 1602, the Spanish authorities of Mexico directed a farther examination of this coast. The expedition was intrusted to Juan Perez, with orders to proceed as far as the sixtieth degree north, and thence to return and examine the coast southward as far as Monterey. He proceeded as high as the fifty-fourth degree north latitude, and on his return entered a bay, in latitude forty-nine and a half degrees, which he called San Lorenzo, and which is probably the Nootka Sound of Captain Cook. In 1775 the viceroy sent out two vessels under Heceta and Bodega. The limit of their joint northern progress was Fuca's Straits; but disastrous circumstances inducing Heceta to return to Monterey, Bodega persevered in his northern course. Heceta, on his return, discovered a promontory, which he called San Roque, and immediately south of it an opening in the land as of a harbour or the mouth of a river. This opening should be the mouth of the Columbia. Bodega, on his part, sailed northward as high as the fifty-eighth degree, and noted and named bays and capes. These discoveries, kept from the world with the caution of their colonial policy, prompted the Spaniards to farther plans of adventure, but in their execution they were dilatory. In the mean while Captain James Cook was on the seas. When on his way to the Arctic Ocean in his second voyage, in the year 1778, he made

the land 100 miles north of Cape Mendocino on the 7th of March. He held his course northward, and passed the mouth of the Columbia without notice in a stormy night. On the 29th he reached a large and safe inlet, which at first he named King George's Sound, but afterward called it by what he presumed was its Indian name, "Nootka."

While the season permitted navigation, he passed through Behring's Straits, traced the coast of America eastward as far as Icy Cape, examined the Asiatic shore westward till the rigours of the climate drove him to Unalashka, and from Unalashka he sailed for Owyhee, where he arrived on the 26th of November, and moored for the winter. On the 16th of February he lost his life by the natives, and left his name to be honoured by the good and brave of every land, and the spot where he fell a shrine of pilgrimage for the navigators of every nation and tongue who sail the broad Pacific.*

* On a hill about a mile from the shore is a monument to his memory, erected by Lord Byron, captain of his Britannic majesty's frigate "Blonde." It consists of a simple wall of lava about five feet high, embracing a square of twenty feet, in the centre of which is a cedar post twelve feet high, and near the top a copper plate with this inscription :

In memory
of

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, R.N.,
who discovered these islands
in the year of our Lord
1778,

This humble monument is erected
by his fellow-countrymen,
in the year of our Lord
1825.

Townsend's Narrative.

Captain Clarke, now senior in command, sailed from Owyhee in March, and proceeded to Petro-Paulowsk, or the Harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, the principal port of Kamtschatka, and thence through Behring's Straits. The ice prevented an advance in any direction as far as that of the preceding year; ill health compelled him to return to the south; and on the 22d of August death closed his earthly discoveries near Petro-Paulowsk. Captain John Gore now succeeded to the direction of the enterprise. The condition of the vessels determined him to proceed homeward; and leaving Petro-Paulowsk, they arrived at the mouth of the River Tigris, or Bocca Tigris, below Canton. In their voyages along the northwest coasts, the men as well as officers had procured a quantity of furs of the first quality, in exchange for knives, buttons, and other trifles. These furs they had applied to the most ordinary uses of bedding or clothing, and, consequently, they were not in very good condition. The Russian traders had urged them to dispose of them, but they were advised to retain them until their arrival at Canton, where they received for them in money and goods to the amount of ten thousand dollars.

The journals of Captain Cook and of those who succeeded him in the command were published in London in 1784-5, and the information thereby communicated attracted commercial enterprise into new channels. The fur-trade had hitherto been carried on between the Russian possessions and China by land; and a

large portion of the skins obtained in Canada and the region around Hudson's Bay were shipped to Russia, whence many of them found their way to China. None had yet been sent directly to that country. But in 1785 and the following year, British merchants, individuals as well as companies, commenced a trade by direct voyages to Nootka Sound and the Northwest Coast, carried the furs obtained there to Canton, and, by special permission of the East India Company, took in a cargo of teas for London. The French did not attempt the trade before 1790, although the ill-fated Peyrouse, who was sent out in 1785, in order to prepare the way for it by surveys of the coasts, made land near Mount St. Elias, and, after examining the coast as far as Monterey, sailed for the East Indies. The Spanish government was also excited to engage in the trade, and collected furs in California for the Canton market.

The first voyages from the United States were those of the ship *Columbia*, of 220 tons, and sloop *Washington*, of 90, John Kendrick and Robert Gray commanders, fitted out by a company of merchants at Boston. They sailed from Boston on the 30th of September, 1787, doubled Cape Horn in company, but were afterward separated in a gale. The *Washington* arrived at Nootka on the 17th of September, 1788. She was joined by the *Columbia* before the end of the month, and both vessels wintered there. They returned by the Cape of Good Hope, and arrived at Boston on the 9th of August, 1790.

Several important surveys of different points of the coast were made by the captains of British and American vessels engaged in the fur-trade between the years 1785 and 1790. But the most interesting was the attempt of Captain John Meares, in the *Felice*, under the Portuguese flag, from Macao, to discover the opening seen by Bruno Heceta in 1775, which was laid down on the charts as "Entrada de Heceta," or "de Ascension," and in some instances, "Rio de San Roque." He concludes his examination of it by calling the promontory "*Cape Disappointment*," and the opening "*Deception Bay*." He gives its latitude $46^{\circ} 10'$ north, and writes, "We can now with safety assert that no such river as that of Saint Roc exists, as laid down in Spanish charts."

In the year 1791, no less than seven American vessels arrived in the North Pacific, among them the *Columbia*, commanded by Captain Gray, who left Boston on the 27th of September, 1790, and reached the coast a little to the northward of Cape Mendocino. Coasting along towards Nootka, he observed an opening in latitude $46^{\circ} 16'$, discharging a current so strong as to prevent an entrance, although he remained nine days at hand in order to effect it. He sailed towards Nootka, fully convinced that he had discovered the mouth of a great river. In September, 1791, he made *Clyoquot* his winter station, and built a house of strength on the shore, which he named Fort Defiance. Here, also, he built and launched a schooner called the *Enterprise*.

Captain Vancouver, with Lieutenant Broughton, in the British ships-of-war the *Discovery* and the *Chatham*, were despatched from England in 1791, in order to receive from the Spanish authorities the surrender of a post at Nootka Sound, under the stipulation of a convention (averting an impending war) made between the two courts in 1790. As he was sailing along the coast, towards his port of destination, on the 27th of April, 1792, he passed by, with but a careless glance, the cape and seeming bay so emphatically named by Meares *Disappointment* and *Deception*, and puts down, "Not considering this opening worthy of more attention, I continued our course to the northwest," &c.


Two days after he met the *Columbia*, Captain Gray, who informed him, among other matters, "of his having," in the words of Captain Vancouver, "been off the mouth of a river in latitude $46^{\circ} 10'$, where the outset or reflux was so strong as to prevent his entering for nine days." Vancouver proceeded northward strong in his incredulity, while Captain Gray again sought the mouth of the river. On his way he found and entered a harbour near the forty-seventh degree, to which he gave the name of Bulfinch's Harbour, in compliment to one of the owners. In some maps it bears this name; in the English maps it has that of Whitby, a lieutenant in command of one of Vancouver's vessels. Leaving Bulfinch's Harbour on the 11th of May, after a few hours' sail he reached the mouth of the river, crossed the bar, and found his ship on a broad and rapid stream, the

waters of which were so perfectly fresh that the casks of the ship were filled within ten miles of the Pacific. On leaving the river, Captain Gray bestowed on it the name of his vessel; the southern point of land he called Cape Adams, and substituted the name of Cape Hancock for that of Cape Disappointment. Neither Cape Hancock nor Cape Adams have taken an assured place in the maps; and the name of Cape Disappointment remains, to preserve in remembrance for a time, probably short, the *sagacity* of the sponsor. The name of the good ship Columbia, it is not hard to believe, will flow with the waters of the bold river as long as grass grows or water runs in the valleys of the Rocky Mountains.

The early dawning of European civilization upon the western coasts of North America gave promise of a brighter day than that which followed. It has been already mentioned that, as early as the year 1602, Viscaino had sailed along the coast, beyond the Cape of Mendocino, as far as the forty-third degree of north latitude. He had examined and selected spots for forts and colonies, in compliance with orders from Madrid to the Viceroy of Mexico. The energies of Spanish colonization were concentrated in the Council of the Indies. Viscaino was invested with the rank and powers of governor-general of California, and from his zeal and able qualities, success might have attended his plans. But these were cut short by his death in 1609; and during the 160 years following, no farther progress was made in the survey of

the coasts or in the projected settlements. The only English settlement on the Atlantic shore of the continent at this time, was that in Virginia, on James's River ; and some years were still wanting to the period of the arrival of the Pilgrims at Plymouth. But when these 160 years had passed away, the Atlantic portion of the American Continent was in the possession of large and flourishing colonies, which, in regard to moral character and civil rights, and the rational happiness flowing from them, were not inferior to their kindred in Europe. The cupidity of trade had already plunged men deep into the wilderness ; and when this passion became joined with a spirit of hardihood and adventure, wider enterprises took hold on the imagination. Among men of this spirit Jonathan Carver is conspicuous.

In the mean while, the Russians had found their way to the Pacific, through Kamtschatka, in 1696, and, during the reign of Peter the Great and his successor, pushed their discoveries to the coast of America. Behring, in 1741, entered the straits which bear his name, separating Asia from America. The Russians subsequently extended their trade to the Eleutian Islands and the coasts of America. In the year 1803 they had established a post on the Gulf of Sitca, which being afterward destroyed by the Indians, was replaced by one in the vicinity, called New Archangel, the chief settlement of Russian America. In 1812 they formed another station in California, near Port San Fran-

cisco, for procuring supplies of meat from the wild cattle, and which they still retain. 

Jonathan Carver, distinguished, as we have before remarked, by hardihood and the spirit of adventure, was the first to conceive the project of crossing the breadth of the North American Continent from the extreme white settlements to the shores of the Pacific, and to follow it up by efforts for its accomplishment. Carver's father was an English officer in the time of William and Mary, who came over to the then colony of Connecticut, where, in 1732, his son was born. The son in early manhood, following his own inclinations, obtained an ensign's commission in a provincial regiment during the war between France and England, in which the colonies bore an honourable part, and which was terminated by the peace of 1763, and the cession of the French province of Canada to Great Britain. Carver narrowly escaped massacre at Fort William Henry; and the peace found him captain of a company. The close of the war having laid open to the enterprising spirit of the colonists the regions of the Northwest, Carver determined to visit the country where are the sources of the Mississippi. In the year 1766 he left Boston, and by way of Albany and Michilimackinac proceeded as far west as the River St. Francis. He returned to Boston in 1768, after an absence of two years and seven months. His intercourse with the Indians during his residence among them was not devoted merely to the objects and purposes of trade, but he applied

himself to the study of their languages and habits, and to collecting whatever knowledge he could of the regions beyond them. His object, he says, was to prevail on the government to establish a post near the Straits of Anian, after a journey had been effected to the shores of the Pacific. As to the information he acquired, Carver tells us, "From the intelligence I gained from the Naudowessie Indians, whose language I perfectly obtained during a residence of five months; and also from the accounts I afterward obtained from the Assinipoils, who speak the Chippeway language and inhabit the heads of the River Bourbon; I say from these nations, together with my own observations, I have learned that the four most capital rivers on the Continent of North America, namely, the St. Lawrence, the Mississippi, the River Bourbon, and the Oregon, or the River of the West, have their sources in the same neighbourhood. The waters of the three former are within thirty miles of each other; the latter, however, is rather farther west." The want of means prevented any immediate farther prosecution of his design; but in the year 1774, Richard Whitworth, member of the British Parliament for the town of Stafford, who seems to have had something of the spirit of a projector, united with him in it. "He" (Mr. Whitworth), Carver says, "designed to have pursued nearly the same route that I did; and after having built a fort at Lake Pepin, to have proceeded up the River St. Pierre, and from thence up a branch of the River *Messorie*, till, having discovered

the source of the Oregon or River of the West, on the other side of the lands that divide the waters which run into the Gulf of Mexico from those that fall into the Pacific Ocean, he would have sailed down that river to the place where it is said to empty itself, near the Straits of Anian.”*

The actual and still growing dissensions between Great Britain and her colonies, it is to be presumed, proved the death-blow to this scheme, which, for the sake of the sagacious as well as brave projector, deserved to have been crowned with success. The name of Jonathan Carver is not mentioned by Mr. Jefferson in the memoir prefixed to the narrative of Lewis and Clarke, nor is it anywhere more than merely referred to in the narrative itself. Later works, however, on our wide and yet wild Western dominion, do him justice, and quote with sentiments of honourable respect his own expression of his feelings and anticipations.

“That the completion of this scheme,” says Carver, “which I have had the honour of first planning and attempting, will some time or other be effected, I make no doubt. Those who are so fortunate as to succeed in it will reap (exclusive of the national advantages that must ensue) emoluments beyond their most sanguine expectations. And while their spirits are elated by their success, perhaps they may bestow some commendations and blessings on the per-

* The Straits of Anian must have been supposed to correspond with some part of Behring’s Straits, which separate the northern coasts of Asia from the American Continent.

son that first pointed out to them the way; these, though but a shadowy recompense for all my toil, I shall receive with pleasure."

The principal, if not only object which led men to encounter the hardship and perils of the wilderness, was the trade in furs with the Indians. The discovery of Hudson and Baffin Bays, to which the early navigators were led when in search of a northwest passage to the Pacific, laid open new and extensive regions; and in order to draw adequate benefits from these new sources of trade, the Hudson's Bay Company was established.

This company was an association of London merchants, to whom, in the year 1669, Charles II. granted the whole region round Hudson's Bay, with the understanding that they should endeavour to discover a passage from the Northern Atlantic to the Pacific. They had the exclusive privilege of establishing trading-posts on the shores and tributary waters of that bay. The French of Canada were their rivals in the fur-trade with the Indians until the cession of that province to Great Britain in 1763. This change threw the whole trade for a time into the hands of the Hudson's Bay Company; but in 1766 some Scottish merchants of Upper Canada established a post at Michilimackinac, which became the centre of the trade extending from Lakes Superior to the Upper Mississippi, and to Lakes Winnipeg and Athabasca. Fort Chepewyan was erected on this latter in 1778. The evils arising from the competition of unrestricted trade, and the united and predominating

strength of the Hudson's Bay Company, led in 1783 to an association of the principal merchants under the name of the Northwest Company, whose headquarters were to be at Montreal. The union with a rival body in 1787 added strength to the Company. This union comprised names well known in the trade of the northwest regions: the M'Tavishes, M'Gillivrays, M'Kenzies, the Frobishers, &c. M'Kenzie became a member in 1787, and, under the auspices of the Company, made his two journeys to the north and the west. In the first, leaving Fort Chepewyan in June, 1789, he made his way by Slave Lake and M'Kenzie's River to the Arctic Sea, in latitude 69° , longitude 135° , midway between the Icy Cape of Behring's Straits and the Coppermine River seen by Hearne in 1771. In October, 1792, leaving the same fort, he ascended the Unjigah or Peace River by canoes to the Rocky Mountains, which he crossed in latitude 54° ; he then embarked on the Tacoutche Tesse,* which reaches the sea north of latitude 49° . After proceeding a short time by this stream, he was induced, by the information of the Indians that it held a long southerly course, to reascend it to a point whence he should take a westerly route by land. After thirteen days' march he came to a stream called Salmon River, on which he embarked, and on the 20th of July, 1792, reached the Pacific Ocean near King's Island, so named by Vancouver, in latitude 52° . M'Kenzie sup-

* Tacoutche, now Frazer's River.

posed the Tacoutche Tesse to be the Columbia; in which supposition it is now well known he was mistaken. In the edition of his voyages of 1802, he takes a comprehensive view of the vast field of commercial advantages that would open to Great Britain, should some company, with large privileges, on the Columbia, be combined with the Hudson's Bay Company, thereby securing to her subjects the trade of the Northwest regions by an inland communication from the Atlantic to the shores of the Pacific, and thence to the port of Canton; a design which Mr. John Jacob Astor, of New-York, nobly attempted in behalf of his fellow-citizens. But, baffled by circumstances which no human sagacity could either foresee or control, he now lives in honoured age to see its accomplishment by the Hudson's Bay Company for the benefit of a foreign nation.

Mr. Astor engaged in the fur-trade soon after the peace with Great Britain in 1783; and this he conducted either in connexion with the British companies, or through their operations. The Treaty of Commerce and Navigation of 1794 gave greater security to citizens of the United States interested in this trade; and the government itself had, by the establishment of trading-posts, endeavoured to detach the Indians from foreign connexions, but failed before the superior activity of the companies. The acquisition of Louisiana,* however, by

* Louisiana was ceded in consideration of the sum of \$15,000,000; of which amount \$11,250,000 was to be paid in a six per cent. stock, and the balance was made up of claims of

the United States, and the expedition of Lewis and Clarke, opened a new and ample field for fresh enterprises. The British traders made their first establishment beyond the Rocky Mountains in 1806. A new impulse had been given to their operations by the residence of Lewis's party among the Mandans in the winter of 1804-5, and by information they obtained of the views of the American government; and in the spring of 1806, Simon Frazer, a partner of the Northwest Company, established a post on Frazer's Lake, near the fifty-fourth degree of latitude, in the country called New Caledonia. The Missouri Fur Company, formed at St. Louis in 1808, at the head of which was Manuel Lisa, a Spaniard, within two years established posts on the Upper Missouri, and one beyond the Rocky Mountains, on the headwaters of Lewis River, the south branch of the Columbia. This appears to have been the first

American citizens against France, which its government had stipulated to pay, and which the United States now assumed.

The area of the country thus ceded, according to the claims of France and the estimate of Mr. Jefferson, exceeded a million of square miles; but all except a very small proportion of it was occupied by savage tribes, its original proprietors. Its few civilized inhabitants were principally French and the descendants of French, with a small number of Spanish Creoles, Americans, English, and Germans. The whole amounted to no more than 80 or 90,000, including about 40,000 slaves.

Mr. Jefferson was delighted with this acquisition, and wrote to General Gates that this extensive territory, which more than doubled the area of the United States, was not inferior to the old part in soil, climate, productions, and important communications. He believed, also, that it afforded the means of tempting all the Indians on the east of the Mississippi to remove to the west, and even of condensing instead of scattering our population.—*Tucker's Life of Jefferson*, ii., 142.

post established by white men in the country drained by the Columbia; but the enmity of the Indians and the scarcity of food caused its abandonment by Mr. Henry in 1810. Mr. Astor, in 1809, obtained a charter from the State of New-York for a company under the name of the "American Fur Company," which in 1811 was merged in an association with certain partners of the Northwest Company, who bought out the Mackinaw Company, under the name of the Southwest Company, which was suspended by the war in 1812, and terminated altogether at the peace, British fur-traders being forbidden by an Act of Congress of 1815 from pursuing their traffic within the territories of the United States.

In the year 1810, Mr. Astor engaged in the great enterprise of the Pacific Fur Company. His plan was to establish trading-posts on the Columbia and its branches, on the shores of the Pacific, and the head-waters of the Missouri, with a strong factory at the mouth of the Columbia River. This factory was to be supplied with goods for the Indian trade by yearly ships from New-York, which, after discharging their cargoes, were to convey the furs that had been collected to the Canton market, and thence, in return, to bring home the teas and silks of China. Arrangements were also made at St. Petersburg for certain privileges of trade with the Russian-American possessions.

The execution of this plan led to the voyage of the Tonquin, Captain Thorn, to the mouth of the Columbia. This ship, mounting ten guns,

with a crew of twenty men, and having as passengers the partners of the company, M'Dougal, M'Kay, David Stuart, and his nephew, Robert Stuart, besides a body of artisans and Canadian *voyageurs*, left New-York in September, 1810, and arrived at the mouth of the Columbia on the 22d of March, 1811. Eight men were lost in attempting to cross the bar in the boats; and it was not before the 12th of April that the launch left the ship with hands and materials for erecting a fort, to which they gave the name of Astoria. On the 5th of June the *Tonquin* left the river, with M'Kay as supercargo, to trade for peltries along the northern coast, and to touch at Astoria on her return in the autumn. Captain Thorn arrived in a few days in the Harbour of Neweetee, at Vancouver's Island. Here the Indians visited the ship in order to dispose of their furs; when provocations on either side, and the imprudence of Thorn, produced a conflict, which ended in the Indians putting to death twenty-three men, or all on board, with the exception of an Indian interpreter, Lewis, the ship's clerk, and four others who had taken refuge in the cabin, and who, making their way to the coast, were massacred by the savages. Lewis, with the interpreter, alone remained on board, and he meditated a severe vengeance. The Indians having left the ship, he succeeded in enticing them again on board, when he fired the magazine, and its explosion caused the immediate death of himself and more than one hundred of the natives; the interpret-

er, however, was thrown from the mainchains into the water unhurt.

In July, a party of the Northwest Company arrived at Astoria, under the conduct of Mr. Thompson, astronomer and partner, who had left Montreal the preceding year, with the design of anticipating the new company in the occupation of the mouth of the Columbia. On their way they had built huts and hoisted flags by way of taking possession of the country; but, disappointed by the preoccupation of this point, after hospitable treatment by M'Dougal, and being furnished with some goods, Thompson retraced his steps. In the course of the summer the Pacific Fur Company established several posts in the interior.

The land party went out under the direction of Mr. Wilson Price Hunt, of New-Jersey, who was a partner, and destined to be the head of the establishment at the mouth of the Columbia. This expedition had been organized at Montreal and Michilimackinac, and did not reach St. Louis until the autumn of 1810. They left St. Louis on the 21st of October, 1810, wintered at Nodowa, and, after complicated sufferings from hard travel, cold, thirst, and hunger, besides annoyances from the insolence and craft of the Indians, surpassing all that is told of any equally well-appointed body of travellers beyond the Rocky Mountains, did not finally unite their numbers at Astoria before the 15th of February, 1812.

In May, 1812, the residents at Astoria were made happy by the arrival of the ship Beaver

from New-York, with supplies. Unfortunately for the establishment, it was determined in the council of the partners that Mr. Hunt should sail in the Beaver, and visit the Russian settlements, with a view to a commercial intercourse, and that he should be relanded in October, when the ship was to return on her voyage to the Sandwich Islands and Canton. The Beaver set sail in August, and the months passed away till January, and still she did not make her appearance.

David Stuart was at his post on the Okinagan, Clarke took his station on the Spokain River, and M'Kenzie established himself above the mouth of the Shahaptan. M'Kenzie, disgusted with the discomforts of his situation, on the 16th of January made his appearance at the post of Clarke, and gave utterance to his discontent. Here M'Tavish, of the neighbouring post of the Northwest Company, broke in upon them, and was the bearer of ill news. He had been to Lake Winnipeg, where he had received an express from Canada, with the declaration of war by the United States, and Mr. Madison's proclamation. He farther informed them that an armed ship was expected at the Columbia about March, and that he was ordered to join her there at that time.

This news determined M'Kenzie; he returned to the Shahaptan, broke up his establishment there, and repaired to Astoria. M'Dougal was overcome by the intelligence; nor was there counsel in M'Kenzie. The partners suspended all business, and it was decided by them to

abandon the establishment in the course of the coming spring, and return to the United States. M'Kenzie returned to his post on the Shaphtan with despatches for Stuart and Clarke, and met M'Tavish above the falls on his way towards Astoria. He forwarded M'Dougal's letters to his partners, and, having reunited at Walla-Walla, they arrived together at Astoria on the 12th of June. Here, under strong feelings of despondency, the partners announced their intention by letters to Mr. Astor, and intrusted to M'Tavish, to relinquish the enterprise (under an article of the original agreement) on the 1st of June the ensuing year, excepting they should receive supplies from Mr. Astor and the stockholders, with orders to persevere.

Mr. Astor, not to be wanting to himself, and to what he truly regarded as a national establishment, had made an application to the secretary of state for the aid of the government, and was encouraged by the hope of a national vessel being detached for that purpose ; but in this hope he was disappointed. He, however, determined that the Enterprise, a vessel loaded with supplies for the colony, should proceed alone to Astoria. But the blockade of the port of New-York, which just then took place, compelled him to break up her voyage, and his only reliance was on the safe arrival of the Lark, a vessel previously fitted out, to protract the existence of the establishment.

Mr. Hunt encountered many vexatious delays in the Russian ports ; the Beaver was greatly damaged by the violent storms of those nor-

thern latitudes, and under these circumstances he directed her course to the Sandwich Islands. Here, on the 20th of June, news of the war between the United States and Great Britain first reached him by the ship Albatross from China. The Beaver sailed for Canton, where she was laid up till the return of peace. The Albatross was chartered by Mr. Hunt, and landed him on the 20th of August, after his year's wandering, at the mouth of the Columbia. Misfortunes seem to have crowded upon Astoria. After a short stay there, Mr. Hunt again set sail in the Albatross for the Marquesas and Sandwich Islands. Here he found that the Lark, which had left New-York in March, 1813, had foundered near one of the Sandwich Islands, with the loss of several lives. It then became his duty, in accordance with the orders of Mr. Astor, sent out by the Lark, to obtain a vessel for the purpose of transporting the stock of furs at Astoria to the Russian settlements, beyond the power of the British. He accordingly chartered the Brig Pedler for this object, and in January sailed for Astoria.

On the 7th of October a party of the Northwest Company, in which was M'Tavish, arrived at Astoria, and encamped under the guns of the fort ; they announced the expected arrival of two British vessels, the Phœbe and the Isaac Todd. Backed by this information, M'Tavish proposed to purchase the whole stock of goods and furs belonging to the Company both at Astoria and in the interior, to which M'Dougal, assuming the whole management in virtue of

the power vested in him by the non-arrival of Mr. Hunt, acceded. A Mr. Stuart, with a reserve party of the Northwest Company, arrived shortly afterward, and dictated more peremptory terms, by which the property of Mr. Astor was parted with at one third of its real value. All this needs no comment, as M'Dougal, shortly after concluding this agreement, became a member of the Northwest Company.

On the 30th of November the British sloop-of-war *Racoon*, Captain Black, came to anchor in Baker's Bay, and on the 12th of December took formal possession of the fort and country, hoisted the British colours, and changed the name of Astoria to that of Fort George. On the 28th of February, the brig *Pedler*, with Mr. Hunt on board, arrived in the Columbia River. He arranged matters, as well as circumstances would permit, with M'Dougal and M'Tavish, and on the 3d of April, accompanied by two of his party, Mr. Seton and Mr. Halsey, bid a final adieu to Astoria. The following day, Messrs. Clarke, M'Kenzie, David Stuart, and others who had not entered the service of the Northwest Company, set out to cross the Rocky Mountains.

After the return of peace in 1815, a demand was made by Mr. Monroe, secretary of state, of the surrender of the post at the mouth of the Columbia, by virtue of the first article of the Treaty of Ghent; but this was not carried into effect till 1818, when, in October, a formal act of surrender and acceptance, expressed in writing, passed between Captain Hickey, of his

majesty's ship Blossom, and J. Keith, of the Northwest Company, on the one part, and J. B. Prevost, agent of the United States, on the other.

After the restoration of Fort George (otherwise *Astoria*) to the government of the United States, the friends of the original settlement naturally looked for its reoccupation by its founder. But the administration at Washington, for reasons not expressed, withheld their countenance and aid, when Mr. Astor, both in will and ability, was prepared to replant this offset of the American republic of the Atlantic on the shores of the Pacific, the soil of which, whether American or Asiatic, had hitherto been so unpropitious to civilization grafted upon freedom. No subsequent American establishment here has had more than a shortlived existence; and there is now neither port nor trading-post under the control of the United States through the whole region watered by the Columbia. The direct trade which had flourished for nearly twenty years between the Northwest Coast and Canton gradually declined, and the vessels from the ports of the United States, now so numerous in the Pacific, are for the most part engaged in the pursuit of the whale.

The property, posts, and business have therefore remained ever since with the Northwest Company, under M'Dougal's sale. The Northwest Company becoming merged in the Hudson's Bay Company in the year 1821, the chief factory was transferred from Astoria to Vancouver. It has been stated that the company

reoccupied Astoria, or Fort George, in 1830; but the accounts of recent travellers make it a very inconsiderable station.

From this period there was no intercourse between the United States and the regions beyond the Rocky Mountains (the fur companies and traders confining themselves to the headwaters of the Mississippi and the borders of the Yellow Stone) until 1823, when Mr. Ashley made a successful expedition beyond the mountains; and in 1826 the Rocky Mountain Fur Company of St. Louis commenced regular expeditions to the borders of the Columbia and Colorado. The American Fur Company then extended their operations. In 1832, Captain Bonneville set out with a party, and was absent two years, chiefly on the waters of the Lewis River.

About the same time Nathaniel Wyeth led two expeditions across the mountains, and established two posts, one at Fort Hall, near the junction of the Pontneuf and Lewis Rivers, and the other at Fort William, on Wappatoo Island. These parties, each of from fifty to one hundred men in number, and twice as many horses and mules with loads of merchandise, assembled yearly beyond the mountains; the principal points of rendezvous being Green River, a branch of the Colorado, and Pierre's Hole, a valley about 100 miles farther north. Here they are met by the hunters and trappers, who, to the number of three or four hundred, are throughout the year engaged in procuring furs. The Indians, too, bring their furs to these

points, and exchange them for articles of use or ornament. Besides these, some zealous missionaries, or men devoted to natural science, or intelligent travellers, fond of strange scenes and stirring adventures, accompany almost every yearly expedition.* This southern route by the La Platte, and its branch the Sweet Water, to the rendezvous, and thence through the country of the Flatheads to the waters of the Columbia and shores of the Pacific, seems to be stripped of the perils which so frequently environed the earlier travellers who attempted unknown passes of the mountains. The parties arriving with furs are becoming less in number from year to year, as well east as west of the Rocky Mountains, below the latitude of 49° , owing to the great destruction of the fur-bearing animals by the hunters of the rival companies. The posts established in the Oregon Territory by Wyeth have given way before the superior resources of the Hudson's Bay Company, and the American companies have abandoned the hunting-grounds which lie beyond the Rocky Mountains.†

The natural boundaries of the region known

* The mode of encampment practised by the caravans, where danger is to be apprehended, is as follows: Each man of the party is provided with two or three horses or mules, and the goods or furs which they carry are put up in packages of such size and weight as to be borne three upon a horse. A spot being selected for the night, the packs are arranged at intervals around, forming a sort of breastwork, within which the horses are picketed. The party is divided into messes, each having its head, and these by turns perform the duty of guards. Where wagons convey the goods, they are used in like manner for an outwork.

† Niles's Weekly Register, vol. lix., for 1840-41.

by the name of the Oregon Territory are well defined. "The form or configuration of the country is the most perfect and admirable which the imagination can conceive. All its outlines are distinctly marked; all its interior is connected together. Frozen regions on the north, the ocean and its mountainous coast to the west, the Rocky Mountains to the east, sandy and desert plains to the south—such are its boundaries. Within, the whole country is watered by the streams of a single river, issuing from the north, east, and south, uniting in the region of tide-water, and communicating with the sea by a single outlet. Such a country is formed for defence, and whatever power gets possession of it will probably be able to keep it."*

This river with a single outlet is the Columbia. Its most northern branch is Canoe River, rising near the latitude of 54° . At a place called by the traders the Boat Encampment it is joined by two streams, one from the northeast, the other from the southeast. Two hundred miles below their junction is the mouth of M'Gillivray's River, and a little lower down the Flathead or Clarke's River, both having their sources in the Rocky Mountains. Somewhat farther down, the Hudson's Bay Company have a trading station, and a post called Fort Colville, which is strongly stockaded. In 1836 Mr. Parker visited this fort, as well as that of Okinagan, established in 1811. David Stuart,

* Major Joshua Pitcher's Memoir. Senate Doc., 21st Congress, 2d Session, vol. i., No. 39.

of the Pacific Fur Company, represents the Indians around as friendly and well disposed. He met at this fort a person who was in Lewis and Clarke's expedition, and who had for several years been in the employ of the Company as interpreter with the Indians. Kettle Falls are half a mile below the fort, forming a broken cataract of about one hundred feet. The river then flows west, receiving the Spokain from the southeast, and at the distance of 100 miles is joined by the Okinagan, a large stream from the north.

The head-waters of Lewis's River are in the angle formed by the Rocky and Snowy Mountains, between the 42° and 44° of latitude, near which are also the sources of the Colorado, the Platte, the Yellow Stone, and the Missouri. Its course is westward along the foot of the Snowy Mountains to the Blue Mountains, where it forms the Salmon Falls. The principal streams flowing into the Lewis before its junction with the Columbia are the Malade, the Wapticacoos, or North Branch, Kooskooskee, and Salmon Rivers from the east, and several small streams from the west. The character of the Columbia from this to the ocean is fully described in Lewis and Clarke's Journal.

"Beyond the Rocky Mountains," writes Mr. Parker, "nature appears to have studied variety on the largest scale. Towering mountains and wide-extended prairies, rich valleys and barren plains, and large rivers, with their rapids, cataracts, and falls, present a great variety of prospects. The whole country is so mountainous

that there is no elevation from which a person cannot see some of the immense ranges which intersect its various parts. From an elevation a short distance from Fort Vancouver, five isolated conical mountains, from ten to fifteen thousand feet high, whose tops are covered with perpetual snow, may be seen rising in the surrounding valley. There are three general ranges west of the rocky chain of mountains, running in northern and southern directions: the first, above the Falls of Columbia River; the second, at and below the Cascades; the third, towards and along the shores of the Pacific. From each of these, branches extend in different directions. Besides these, there are those in different parts which are large and high, such as the Blue Mountains, south of Walla-Walla; the Salmon River Mountains, between Salmon and Kooskooskee Rivers, and also in the region of Okinagan and Colville. The loftiest peaks of the Rocky Mountains have been found in about 52° north latitude, where Mr. Thompson, astronomer of the Hudson's Bay Company, has ascertained the heights of several. One, called *Mount Brown*, he estimates at 16,000 feet above the level of the sea; another, *Mount Hooker*, at 15,700 feet. It has been stated, farther (though probably with some exaggeration), that he discovered other points farther north, of an elevation ten thousand feet higher than these. Between these mountains are widespread valleys and plains. The largest and most fertile valley is included between Deer Island on the west, to within twelve miles

of the Cascades, which is about fifty-five miles wide, and extending north and south to a greater extent than I had the means of definitely ascertaining; probably from Puget's Sound on the north, to the Umbigua River on the south. The Willamette River and a section of the Columbia are included in this valley. The valley south of the Walla-Walla, called the Grand Round, is said to excel in fertility. To these may be added Pierre's Hole and the adjacent country; also Recueil Amère, east of the Salmon River Mountains. Others of less magnitude are dispersed over different parts. To these may be subjoined extensive plains, most of which are prairies well covered with grass. The whole region of country west of the Salmon River Mountains, the Spokain Woods, and Okinagan, quite to the range of mountains that cross the Columbia at the Falls, is a vast prairie, covered with grass, and the soil is generally good. Another large plain, which is said to be very barren, lies off to the southwest of Lewis or Malheur River, including the Shoshonees Country; and travellers who have passed through this have pronounced the interior of America a great barren desert; but this is drawing a conclusion far too broad from premises so limited."* According to others who have described the country, there are two leading ranges, parallel to the Rocky Mountains, which divide the country into three regions, viz., Low, Middle, and High, differing material-

* Parker's Journal, p. 205.

ly in climate, soil, and productive power—from the great fertility of the portion bordering on the ocean to the stunted barrenness of the upper plains under the Rocky Mountains.

The third division, or the High Country, lies between the Blue Mountains and the Rocky Mountains on the east. The southern part of this region is a desert of steep rocky mountains, deep narrow valleys, called *holes* by the traders, and wide plains, covered with sand and gravel, and with traces of volcanic fire. This region is remarkable for the dryness of the atmosphere, quickly absorbing all moisture ; and for the great difference of temperature by day and night—a difference sometimes amounting to no less than 40 degrees between sunrise and noon ; and the range of the thermometer in the course of twenty-four hours has been observed to vary as much as 74°. Not far from this region of desolation is a large salt lake, towards the south, called by the Indians Lake Youta, and on the old Spanish maps Timpanogos ; and at no great distance from this is one of the points of rendezvous of the traders, hunters, and Indians.

The seasons may be divided into the dry and rainy. The latter commences in November and ends with May ; the intermediate months are without rain, the skies serene, and the heats are relieved by the prairie winds, which render the weather delightful. Mr. Parker states that during his winter's residence at Vancouver, there were only three days when the mercury fell as low as 22° of Fahrenheit.

The conventional lines which bound this region are, first, the southern boundary between the territories belonging to the United States and those of Spain, as agreed upon in the treaty made between the two powers on the 22d of February, 1819. This was to be a line drawn from the source of the River Arkansas, north or south, as the case might be, to the forty-second parallel of latitude, and thence along that parallel westward to the Pacific; his Catholic majesty ceding to the United States all his rights, claims, and pretensions to any territories north of the said line. This treaty was not ratified until two years afterward; and before another year had passed, the authority of Spain over the territory south of this boundary had ceased; but in 1828, the same boundary was confirmed by a treaty with the new state of Mexico. By the convention between Russia and the United States of 1824, no establishment is to be formed by the citizens of the latter power north of the parallel of $54^{\circ} 40'$, and none under the authority of Russia south of that latitude. The treaty between Great Britain and Russia of 1825, likewise recognises this line, but without acknowledging the absolute and entire possession by Russia of the territory north of it. The territorial claims of Great Britain extend southward from this parallel of $54^{\circ} 40'$; while those of the United States extend northward from the parallel of 42° ; nor has any dividing line yet been agreed upon.

In the negotiations held by Messrs. Rush and Gallatin with the commissioners of the British

government subsequently to the treaty of Ghent in 1818, in order to settle definitively the boundaries west of the Lake of the Woods, it was proposed by the former that a line should be drawn from the northwestern extremity of that lake (north or south, as it might be) to the forty-ninth parallel of latitude, and from the point of intersection westward to the Pacific. This, however, was not assented to; such line was agreed upon no farther than to the Rocky Mountains, leaving the boundary west of the mountains unsettled; and as to the territories claimed by the United States or by Great Britain west of those mountains, it was determined that, with their harbours, bays, and rivers, they should be free and open for ten years to the vessels, subjects, or citizens of both nations; it being at the same time understood that the said agreement was not to be construed so as to affect or prejudice the claims of either party, or of any other power, to any portion of those territories. The negotiations as to the boundary were resumed in 1824, and the forty-ninth parallel of latitude, from the mountains to the Pacific, was again proposed by Mr. Rush; but Mr. Canning replied by a counter-project, that the line should be drawn from the mountains westward along the forty-ninth parallel to the nearest head-waters of the Columbia, and thence down the middle of that stream to the Pacific. Here the matter rested until 1826, when it again became the subject of discussion between Mr. Gallatin, the American minister, and the British government. But no boundary could be

agreed upon ; and the only result was the convention of August, 1827, that the third article of the convention of 1818, for the common occupation of the territory, should be farther indefinitely continued in force ; either party, however, being at liberty to annul the engagement, on giving notice of twelve months to the other. This agreement still remains in force, notwithstanding several attempts made in the Congress of the United States to procure its abrogation.

The contentions and murderous conflicts between the servants of the rival British companies, to wit, the Hudson's Bay and the Northwest, led in 1820 to a compromise sanctioned by the British government, and to a union of the two, under the name of the Hudson's Bay Company ; to which was granted by the crown the exclusive privilege for 21 years of establishing posts and trading stations with the Indians west of the Rocky Mountains. This privilege, however, was not to be exercised to the prejudice of citizens of the United States. At the same time the jurisdiction of the courts of Upper Canada was extended to causes as well civil as criminal that might arise there ; and justices of the peace were to be appointed in the Indian country, to have cognizance of and decide on minor offences and civil causes of limited amounts. These legal provisions, together with the large capital and united efforts of the Hudson's Bay Company, have led to the striking contrast presented between the British and American traders in the Oregon Territory, under the common occupancy and right of traffic

secured to each by the convention of 1818, after a trial of 21 years.

In the year 1835 Mr. William A. Slocum was directed by the government of the United States to proceed to the mouth of the Columbia by sea, and while there to collect any information that might be useful or interesting to his government. He arrived in the Columbia at the close of the year 1836. His report to the Department of State, dated the 20th of March, 1837, gives the following account of the settlements and course of trade:

“Fort Vancouver, the principal depôt of the Hudson’s Bay Company west of the Rocky Mountains, stands on a gentle acclivity four hundred yards from the shore, on the north bank of the Columbia or Oregon River, about 100 miles from its mouth. The principal buildings are enclosed in a picket forming an area of 750 by 450 feet. Within are thirty-four buildings, comprising officers’ dwelling-houses, and workshops for the various mechanics, all of wood except the magazine for powder, which is of brick. Without, and near the fort, are forty-nine cabins for labourers and mechanics, a large barn and seven buildings attached thereto; an hospital and large boathouse on the shore six miles from the fort. On the north bank the Company have erected a sawmill on a never-failing stream which falls into the Columbia, which cuts over 2000 feet of lumber daily, employs twenty-eight men, chiefly Sandwich Islanders, and ten yoke of oxen; the depth of water at the mill is four fathoms, where the

largest ships of the Company take in their cargoes for the Sandwich Island market.

"The farm at Vancouver contains at this time about 3000 acres of land, fenced and under cultivation, employing generally one hundred men, chiefly Canadians and half-breed Iroquois; the mechanics are Europeans. These, with the factors, traders, clerks, and domestics, may be estimated at thirty. The labourers and mechanics live outside the fort in good log cabins, two or three families generally under one roof; and as nearly every man has a wife, or lives with an Indian or half-breed woman, and as each family has from two to five slaves, the whole number of persons about Vancouver may be estimated at from seven hundred and fifty to eight hundred souls. The police of the establishment is as strict as in the best-regulated military garrison. The produce of the farm this year was 8000 bushels of wheat, 5500 of barley, 6000 of oats, 9000 of pease, 14,000 of potatoes, besides large quantities of turnips, rutabaga, pumpkins, &c. About 6000 bushels of wheat, old crop, remain on hand.

"Stock consists of about 1000 head of neat cattle, 700 hogs, 200 sheep, 450 to 500 horses, and 40 yoke of working oxen. There are a large threshing machine, distillery (not at present in operation), and a gristmill. The farm is abundantly supplied with implements for a much larger establishment, and will be much increased the ensuing year. A thriving orchard is planted. The apple, pear, quince, and grape grow well.

“Trade.—A large ship arrives annually from London with all needful supplies for the colony, and for the trade with the natives, and discharges at Vancouver. She brings likewise naval stores for refitting the ships of the Company that remain on the coast. These are the ship *Nereide*, the brig *Llama*, a schooner and a sloop; besides the steamboat *Beaver*, of 150 tons, with two engines of thirty horse power, built in London the last year. These vessels are all well armed and manned; their crews are shipped in England for five years, at two pounds per month for seamen.

“The London ship usually arrives in early spring; discharges, and takes in a cargo of lumber for the Sandwich Islands; returns in August to receive the furs that are brought to the depôt (Fort Vancouver) once a year from the interior, via the Columbia River, from the Snake Country, and from the American rendezvous west of the Rocky Mountains, and from as far south as St. Francisco, in California. While one of the Company's vessels brings in the furs and peltries collected at the different depôts along the coast at the north, the steamboat is employed in navigating the magnificent straits from Juan de Fuca to Stickem. Immense quantities of furs, sea-otter, beaver, martin, and sable can be collected along the shores of these bays and inlets. The chief traders, at Narquallah, in $47^{\circ} 30'$; Fort Langley, in $49^{\circ} 50'$; Fort M'Laughlin, in $52^{\circ} 16'$; Fort Simpson, in $54^{\circ} 40'$ north, purchase all the furs and peltries from the Indians in their vicinity, and

as far as New-Caledonia in the interior, and supply them with guns, powder, lead, tobacco, beads, &c., all of which supplies are taken from the principal depôt at Vancouver.

“An express, as it is called, goes out in March yearly from Vancouver, and ascends the Columbia 900 miles in batteaux. One of the chief factors takes charge of the property, and conveys it to York Factory, on Hudson’s Bay ; the annual returns of the business being conducted by the Hudson’s Bay Company west of the Rocky Mountains, in the Columbia district. This party likewise conveys to the different forts along the route, goods suitable to the Indian trade. Other parties take up supplies, as they may be required, to Walla-Walla, 250 miles above Vancouver ; to Colville, 600 miles above ; to the fort at the junction of Lewis River, 700 miles farther ; to the south, to Fort M’Roye, on the River Umpqua, in latitude $43^{\circ} 50'$ north ; and last year, chief trader M’Leod took up to the American rendezvous, in about latitude 43° north, a large supply of British manufactures. This assemblage of American trappers and hunters takes place annually on the western side of the Rocky Mountains, generally in the month of July, and amounts to from 450 to 500 men, who bring the results of their year’s labour to sell to the American fur-traders. These persons purchase their supplies at St. Louis ; and, of course, find it hard to contend with the British company’s agents, who have neither the same burden of duties on their goods, nor the same arduous journey.”

The earliest emigration from the United States for the purpose of settlement in this territory was in 1832. Three years afterward a small party went out by land, with Nathaniel Wyeth, of the Boston Fishing and Trading Company, under the direction of the Rev. Jason Lee and David Lee, who established a mission settlement among the Callapoewah Indians, on the Willamette River,* at about sixty miles from its discharge into the Columbia. This colony afterward received some small accessions, and in November, 1839, the Rev. Jason Lee sailed from the United States for the Columbia River, with a party of fifty persons, comprising, among others, six missionaries and a physician with their families. This party arrived safely out, and the annual report of the Missionary Society of the Methodist Episcopal Church in May, 1841, presents a favourable account of their labours among the Indians. Smaller parties of young men have started for the Columbia from states bordering on the Mississippi. The whole number directly attached to the mission is only sixty-eight, including men, women, and children. The few settlements along the river, according to Mr. Parker, who visited the country in 1835, consist of

* This name is sometimes confounded with Multnomah. "The name Multnomah," Mr. Parker says, "is given to a small section of this river, from the name of a tribe of Indians who once resided about six miles on both sides from its confluence with the Columbia to the branch which flows down the southern side of the Wâppatoo Island; above this section it is called the Willamette."—PARKER'S *Journal*, p. 161.

Canadian Frenchmen formerly in the employ of the Hudson's Bay Company.

Thus far the right of common occupancy has worked altogether in favour of the Hudson's Bay Company. Without seeking to found a colony of men drawn from the shores of Europe, they have created around their forts and trading-posts an image of civilized life. Their principal officers are men well suited to their station, where the powers of civilized men, few in number, are to encounter and control numerous surrounding savage tribes. They maintain a steady discipline over their own agents, and exercise a moral power over the Indians. Their influence is represented as being of a benign character; and no traveller recounts any instance of aggression towards the natives. Nor are these latter, in the neighbourhood of the Company's stations, chargeable with the pilferings, insolences, and outrages which were the annoyances of Lewis and his party, and subsequently of Hunt and his companions. The station at Vancouver is stated to be the very home of hospitality to the Christian teacher, and to the scientific or curious traveller; but the rival factor, trader, or hunter has a different tale to tell, though there has been no complaint of direct affront or injury. The influence of the Company over their subordinates is supreme; they have moulded to their interest and will the sentiments and inclinations of the surrounding Indians; and all that is required by the chiefs of the Company is passively to withhold aid, countenance, and favour from any

adventurous rival trader, and fairly starve him out of the country.

On taking a general survey of the territory embraced in the former Province of Louisiana, from the time of its cession to the United States, the first thing which strikes us is the unequal progress of settlement, civilization, and population in its different portions. The states and territories lying immediately west of the Mississippi, by the census of 1840, exhibit the following population: Missouri, whole number of inhabitants, 383,702; slaves, 58,240.. Arkansas Territory, 97,574; slaves, 19,835. Louisiana, 352,411; slaves, 168,452. Total inhabitants, 833,687.

The Indian Territory, so called, extends westward 200 miles, from the farther bounds of Missouri and Arkansas, and from the Red River on the south to the Puncah River on the north, a length of 600 miles. It contained in the year 1837 an Indian population of 103,560; which in 1839 had fallen off, according to the returns of the resident agents, to 94,196. There are many different tribes, the most numerous of which are the Creeks, amounting to 24,500 in the former year, and reduced to 21,500 in the latter; the Cherokees, to 25,900, reduced to 25,000; and the Pawnees, to 12,500, diminished to 10,000. Smallpox and fevers have been the chief causes of this great mortality. The Christian missionaries scattered over this region are of various denominations and thirty-nine in number, with thirty-six schools and 640 pupils.

The intermediate country, lying between the western line of the Indian Territory and the Rocky Mountains, and bounded on the north by the 49th parallel of latitude, is still the dwelling-place and hunting-grounds of the native tribes, and its plains and streams are the resorts of the hunters and trappers of the various fur companies and traders; while the country west of the mountains, and extending to the Pacific, presents no settlements of civilized man, except the forts and trading-posts of the Hudson's Bay Company, and the station of the Christian missionaries from the United States on the Willamette.

At the time that the History of the Expedition under Captains Lewis and Clarke was first prepared for the press, Mr. Jefferson favoured the publisher with a short memoir of the life of Captain Lewis, in which he shows that his thoughts had early turned upon such a project. While he was residing at Paris as American minister in 1787, John Ledyard arrived there, with the view of making some arrangements to carry on a trade in furs on the northwest coast of America. In this, however, he failed; and Mr. Jefferson then proposed to him an expedition by land through the north of Europe to Kamtschatka, and thence to the Pacific. Permission having been obtained from the Russian government, Ledyard set out on his journey, and took up his winter-quarters within 200 miles of Kamtschatka. But at this time some new consideration on the part of the Russian authorities put a stop to his progress, and he

was arrested and sent back out of their territories. The next year he started on his African expedition, and died in Egypt.

In 1792, Mr. Jefferson proposed to the American Philosophical Society a subscription to engage a competent person to proceed to the Northwest Coast by land; and Captain Meriwether Lewis, who was then stationed at Charlotteville, in Virginia, was engaged for the purpose. M. Michaux, a French botanist, was to be his companion. They had gone on their journey as far as Kentucky, when Michaux was recalled by the French minister, to pursue in other quarters his botanical researches, which put a stop to the enterprise.

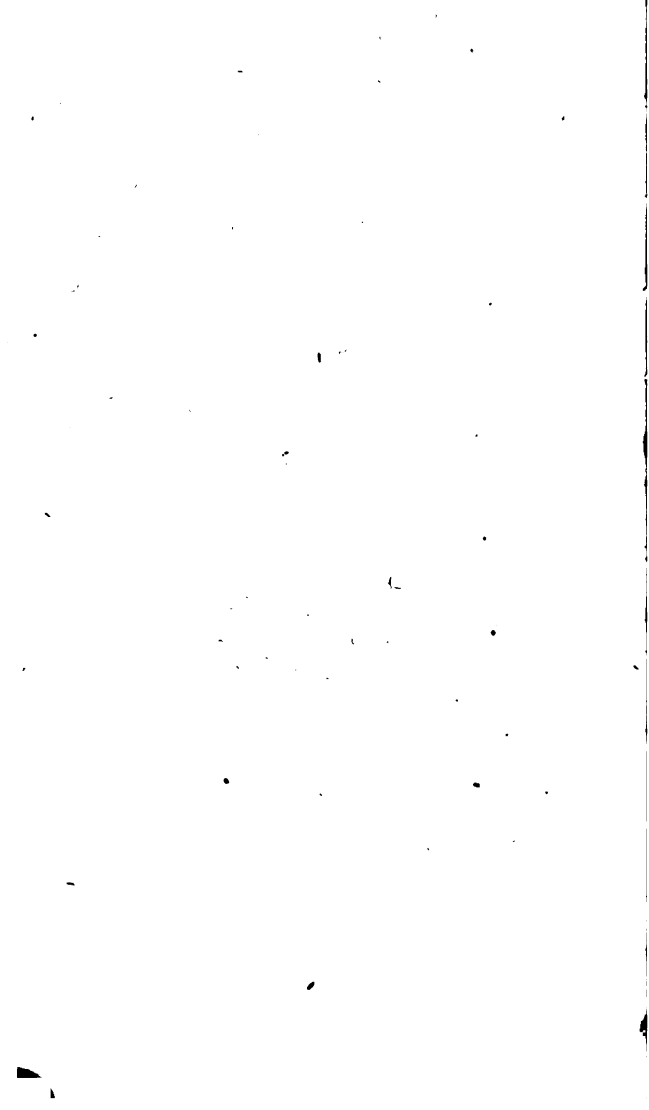
The Act for establishing trading-houses among the Indians being about to expire, Mr. Jefferson, in January, 1803, recommended to Congress, in a confidential message, an extension of its views to the Indians on the Mississippi. He also proposed that a party should be despatched to trace the Missouri to its source, cross the Rocky Mountains, and proceed to the Pacific Ocean. The plan was approved of; and Captain Lewis was, on his own application, appointed to lead the expedition. William Clarke, brother of General George Rogers Clarke, was afterward associated with him. Full instructions were given to Captain Lewis as to his route, and the various objects to which he should direct his inquiries, relating to the geography and character of the country; the different inhabitants, and their history, and all other matters worthy of being known.

While these preparations were making, negotiations had been pending between France and the United States in regard to Louisiana. This province had been recently ceded by Spain to France, and the latter power by treaty now ceded it to the United States.

A donation of lands was made by Congress to the members of Captain Lewis's party in 1807. Lewis was appointed Governor of Louisiana, and Clarke agent for Indian affairs.

Captain Lewis died in 1809, when on his way to Philadelphia to superintend the publication of his journals. After his death the journals passed into other hands, and finally, with other sources of information, were handed over to Mr. Paul Allen, who edited the History of the Expedition.*

* For farther information in relation to the discovery, history, and present state of the northwest portions of the American Continent, the reader may consult the memoir of Mr. Robert Greenhow, prepared and published in 1840, in obedience to a resolution of Congress.



LEWIS AND CLARKE'S
EXPEDITION
UP THE MISSOURI.

CHAPTER I.

Party composing the Expedition.—Their Departure.—Cave near Osage Woman River.—Grand Osage River.—Osage Indians.—Curious traditional Account of their Origin.—The Missouri.—Snake Bluffs.—Kansas River.—Kansas Indians.—The Nodawa River.—The Nemahaw, and Mounds on its Banks.—Party afflicted with Boils.—Platte River.

THE preparations for the expedition were completed, and the party selected before the close of 1803. Capt. Lewis designed to winter at La Charrette, the highest settlement on the Missouri; but the Spanish commandant of Louisiana not having received official notice of the transfer of the province to the United States, he wintered at the mouth of Wood River, on the east side of the Mississippi, without the jurisdiction of the Spanish authorities.

“The party consisted of nine young men from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers of the United States army, who volunteered their services, two French watermen (an interpreter and hunter), and a black servant belonging to Captain Clarke. All these, except the last, were enlisted to serve as privates during the expedition, and three sergeants appointed from among them by the captains. In addition to these were engaged a corporal and six soldiers, and nine watermen, to accompany the expedition as far as the Mandan nation, in order to assist in carrying

the stores or repelling an attack, which was most to be apprehended between Wood River and that tribe. The necessary stores were subdivided into seven bales and one box, containing a small portion of each article in case of accident. They consisted of a great variety of clothing, working utensils, locks, flints, powder, ball, and articles of the greatest use. To these were added fourteen bales and one box of Indian presents, distributed in the same manner, and composed of richly-laced coats and other articles of dress, medals, flags, knives, and tomahawks for the chiefs; ornaments of different kinds, particularly beads, looking-glasses, handkerchiefs, paints, and, generally, such articles as were deemed best calculated for the taste of the Indians. The party was to embark on board of three boats: the first was a keel-boat fifty-five feet long, drawing three feet water, carrying one large square-sail and twenty-two oars; a deck of ten feet in the bow and stern formed a forecastle and cabin, while the middle was covered by lockers, which might be raised so as to form a breastwork in case of attack. This was accompanied by two pirogues or open boats, one of six and the other of seven oars. Two horses were at the same time to be led along the banks of the river, for the purpose of bringing home game, or hunting in case of scarcity."

The party left their encampment at the mouth of Wood River on Monday, the 14th of May, 1804, and on the morning of the 16th reached St. Charles, a town 21 miles up the Missouri. Captain Lewis, who had been detained at St. Louis, joined them at this place, and on the 21st of May they proceeded on their voyage. Passing Osage Woman River on the 23d, about a mile and a half beyond its mouth, they saw "a large cave on the south side, at the foot of cliffs nearly three hundred feet high, overhanging the water, which becomes very swift at this place. The cave is one hundred and twenty feet

wide, forty feet deep, and twenty high : it is known by the name of the Tavern among the traders, who have written their names on the rock, and painted some images, which command the homage of the Indians and French."

On the 25th they stopped for the night at La Charrette Creek, 68 miles from the mouth of the Missouri, and near which was a small village of seven poor families, the last establishment of whites on that river. In the afternoon of the 31st of May they received information that the Indians had committed to the flames a letter announcing the cession of Louisiana, and that they would not believe the Americans had come in possession of the country. On the 1st of June the boats arrived at the mouth of the Grand Osage River, 133 miles up the Missouri, which is here 875 yards wide, and the breadth of the Osage 397 yards.

"The Osage River empties itself into the Missouri at one hundred and thirty-three miles' distance from the mouth of the latter river. It gives or owes its name to a nation inhabiting its banks at a considerable distance from this place. Their present name, however, seems to have originated from the French traders, for both among themselves and their neighbours they are called the Wasbashes. They number between twelve and thirteen hundred warriors, and consist of three tribes: the Great Osages, of about five hundred warriors, living in a village on the south bank of the river; the Little Osages, of nearly half that number, residing at the distance of six miles from them; and the Arkansaw band, a colony of Osages, of six hundred warriors, who left them some years ago, under the command of a chief called the Bigfoot, and settled on the Vermilion River, a branch of the Arkansaw. In person the Osages are among the largest and best-formed Indians, and are said to possess fine military capacities; but, residing as they do in villages, and hav-

ing made considerable advance in agriculture, they seem less addicted to war than their northern neighbours, to whom the use of rifles gives a great superiority. Among the peculiarities of this people, there is nothing more remarkable than the tradition relative to their origin. According to universal belief, the founder of the nation was a snail, passing a quiet existence along the banks of the Osage, till a high flood swept him down to the Missouri, and left him exposed on the shore. The heat of the sun at length ripened him into a man; but with the change of his nature he had not forgotten his native seats on the Osage, towards which he immediately bent his way. He was, however, soon overtaken by hunger and fatigue, when, happily, the Great Spirit appeared, and, giving him a bow and arrow, showed him how to kill and cook deer, and cover himself with the skin. He then proceeded to his original residence; but as he approached the river he was met by a beaver, who inquired haughtily who he was, and by what authority he came to disturb his possession. The Osage answered that the river was his own, for he had once lived on its borders. As they stood disputing, the daughter of the beaver came, and having, by her entreaties, reconciled her father to this young stranger, it was proposed that the Osage should marry the young beaver, and share with her family the enjoyment of the river. The Osage readily consented, and from this happy union there soon came the village and the nation of the Wasbasha, or Osages, who have ever since preserved a pious reverence for their ancestors, abstaining from the chase of the beaver, because in killing that animal they killed a brother of the Osage. Of late years, however, since the trade with the whites has rendered beaver-skins more valuable, the sanctity of these maternal relatives has been visibly reduced, and the poor animals have nearly lost all the privileges of kindred."

On the 3d of June they continued their voyage, and successively passed the Little and Big Manitou Creeks (on the latter of which they found some salt-licks), Good Woman River, and Mine River. "Little Manitou Creek takes its name from a strange figure resembling the bust of a man, with the horns of a stag, painted on a projecting rock, which may represent some spirit or deity." Canoes and rafts were occasionally met, descending with furs and buffalo tallow from distant points of the Missouri, Kansas, and Platte Rivers, under the guidance of hunters, who had sought their game in the neighbourhood of those streams. Captain Lewis was so fortunate as to engage one of them, a M. Durion, who had lived with the Sioux twenty years, to accompany him to that nation.

"On the 13th," continues the narrative, "we passed, at between four and five miles, a bend of the river, and two creeks on the north, called the Round Bend Creeks. Between these two creeks is the prairie in which once stood the ancient village of the Missouris. Of this village there remains no vestige, nor is there anything to recall this great and numerous nation, except a feeble remnant of about thirty families. They were driven from their original seats by the invasions of the Sauks and other Indians from the Mississippi (who destroyed at this village two hundred of them in one contest), and sought refuge near the Little Osage, on the other side of the river. The encroachment of the same enemies forced, about thirty years since, both these nations from the banks of the Missouri. A few retired with the Osages, and the remainder found an asylum on the River Platte, among the Ottoes, who are themselves declining. Opposite the plain there was an island and a French fort, but there is now no appearance of either, the successive inundations having probably washed them away, as the willow island, which is in the situation described by Du

Pratz, is small and of recent formation. Five miles from this place is the mouth of Grand River, where we encamped. This river follows a course nearly south or southeast, and is between eighty and a hundred yards wide where it enters the Missouri, near a delightful and rich plain." * * * "At the distance of eight miles we came to some high cliffs, called the Snake Bluffs, from the numbers of that animal in the neighbourhood, and immediately above these bluffs, Snake Creek, about eighteen yards wide, on which we encamped. One of our hunters, a half Indian, brought us an account of his having to-day passed a small lake, near which a number of deer were feeding; and in the pond he heard a snake making a guttural noise like a turkey. He fired his gun, but the noise became louder. He adds that he has heard the Indians mention this species of snake, and this story is confirmed by a Frenchman of our party." * * * "We passed several islands and one creek on the south side, and encamped on the north opposite a beautiful plain, which extends as far back as the Orange River, and some miles up the Missouri. In front of our encampment are the remains of an old village of the Little Osages, situated at some distance from the river, and at the foot of a small hill. About three miles above them, in view of our camp, is the situation of the old village of the Missouris after they fled from the Sauks. The inroads of the same tribe compelled the Little Osages to retire from the Missouri a few years ago, and establish themselves near the Great Osages." * * * "On the 17th we set out early, and, having come to a convenient place, at one mile's distance, for procuring timber and making oars, we occupied ourselves in that way on this and the following day. The country on the north of the river is rich and covered with timber; among which we procured the ash for oars. At two miles it changes into extensive prairies, and at seven or eight miles' distance becomes higher and wa-

ving. The prairie and high lands on the south commence more immediately on the river; the whole is well watered and provided with game, such as deer, elk, and bear. The hunters brought in a fat horse, which was probably lost by some war party, this being the crossing-place for the Sauks, Ayauways, and Sioux, in their excursions against the Osages."

On the 25th they passed a bank of stone coal, apparently very abundant, and the next day arrived at the mouth of the Kansas, 340 miles from the Mississippi; and here the party remained two days for rest and repairs. "The River Kansas takes its rise in the plains between the Arkansaw and Platte Rivers, and pursues a course generally east till its junction with the Missouri, which is in latitude $38^{\circ} 31' 13''$; here it is $340\frac{1}{4}$ yards wide, though it is wider a short distance above the mouth. The Missouri itself is about five hundred yards in width; the point of union is low and subject to inundations for two hundred and fifty yards; it then rises a little above high-water mark, and continues so as far back as the hills. On the south of the Kansas the hills or highlands come within one mile and a half of the river; on the north of the Missouri they do not approach nearer than several miles; but on all sides the country is fine. The comparative specific gravities of the two rivers are, for the Missouri seventy-eight, the Kansas seventy-two degrees; the waters of the latter have a very disagreeable taste. * * * On the banks of the Kansas reside the Indians of the same name, consisting of two villages, one at about twenty, the other forty leagues from its mouth, and amounting to about three hundred men. They once lived twenty-four leagues higher than the Kansas, on the south bank of the Missouri, and were then more numerous; but they have been reduced and banished by the Sauks and Ayauways, who, being better supplied with arms, have an advantage over

the Kansas, though the latter are not less fierce and warlike than themselves. This nation is now hunting in the plains for the buffalo, which our hunters have seen for the first time."

Departing on the 29th, they passed La Petite Rivière Platte, Turkey Creek, and Bear Medicine Island, a short distance from which they landed for the night on the 2d of July. In a valley opposite to their encampment "was situated an old village of the Kansas, between two high points of land, and on the bank of the river. About a mile in the rear of the village was a small fort, built by the French on an elevation. There are now no traces of the village, but the situation of the fort may be recognised by some remains of chimneys, and the general outline of the fortification, as well as by the fine spring which supplied it with water. The party who were stationed here were probably cut off by the Indians, as there are no accounts of them."

July 3d they passed the Isle des Vaches. The morning of the anniversary of the 4th of July was announced by the discharge of a gun, and its name was given to a creek which they passed during the day: it was also made memorable by one of the party being bitten by a snake, though the usual application of a poultice of bark and gunpowder soon cured the wound. On the 5th, near Independence Creek, they passed the ruins of another village of the Kansas, which, from the extent of its remains, must once have been a large town. Several bad sand-bars here presented themselves, and on the shores there were great quantities of summer and fall grapes, berries, and wild roses. Deer were not so abundant as usual, but there were numerous tracks of elk. On the 8th the party reached the River Nodawa, after passing Reevey's Prairie, so called from the name of a man who had been killed there, and the fine prairie of St. Michael's appearing as though it were divided into farms by the narrow strips of

woodland which border the small runs falling into the river. Below the mouth of the Nodawa, besides several smaller islands, is that of Great Nodawa, more than five miles in length, containing seven or eight thousand acres of high, rich land, rarely overflowed, and one of the largest islands in the Missouri. This river is navigable for boats for some distance.

On the 11th they landed on a sand island opposite to the River Nemahaw, where they remained a day for the purpose of taking lunar observations and refreshing the party. They had now ascended the Missouri to the distance of 480 miles. "The Nemahaw empties itself into the Missouri from the south, and is eighty yards wide at the confluence, which is in lat. $39^{\circ} 55' 56''$. Captain Clarke ascended it in the pirogue about two miles, to the mouth of a small creek on the lower side. On going ashore he found in the level plain several artificial mounds or graves, and on the adjoining hills others of a larger size. This appearance indicates sufficiently the former population of this country, the mounds being certainly intended as tombs, the Indians of the Missouri still preserving the custom of interring the dead on high ground. From the top of the highest mound a delightful prospect presented itself: the level and extensive meadows watered by the Nemahaw, and enlivened by the few trees and shrubs skirting the borders of the river and its tributary streams; the lowland of the Missouri covered with undulating grass, nearly five feet high, gradually rising into a second plain, where rich weeds and flowers are interspersed with copses of the Osage plum; farther back were seen small groves of trees; an abundance of grapes; the wild cherry of the Missouri, resembling our own, but larger, and growing on a small bush; and the chokecherry, which was observed for the first time. Some of the grapes gathered to-day were nearly ripe. On the south of the

Nemahaw, and about a quarter of a mile from its mouth, is a cliff of freestone, in which are various inscriptions and marks made by the Indians."

On the 14th elk were seen for the first time. They passed the Nishnahbatona and Little Nemahaw Rivers, and found the former to be only 300 yards from the Missouri, at the distance of twelve miles from its mouth. Farther on they reached an island to the north, near which the banks overflow; while on the south, hills project over the river in the form of high cliffs. At one point a part of the cliff, nearly three fourths of a mile in length and 200 feet in height, had fallen into the river. On the 20th they passed a creek called by the French *l'Eau qui Pleure*, or the Weeping Water, and here the narrative states, "for a month past the party have been troubled with boils, and occasionally with the dysentery. These boils were large tumours which broke out under the arms, on the legs, and, generally, in the parts most exposed to action, which sometimes became too painful to permit the men to work. After remaining some days, they disappeared without any assistance, except a poultice of the bark of the elm or of Indian meal. This disorder, which we ascribe to the mudiness of the river water, has not affected the general health of the party, which is quite as good, if not better, than that of the same number of men in any other situation."

They reached the great River Platte on the 21st, and it is thus described: "The highlands, which had accompanied us on the south for the last eight or ten miles, stopped at about three quarters of a mile from the entrance of the Platte. Captains Lewis and Clarke ascended the river in a pirogue for about one mile, and found the current very rapid, rolling over sands, and divided into a number of channels, none of which are deeper than five or six feet. One of our Frenchmen, who spent two winters on it, says that it spreads much more at

some distance from the mouth ; that its depth is generally not more than five or six feet ; that there are many small islands scattered through it ; and that, from its rapidity and the quantity of its sand, it cannot be navigated by boats or pirogues, though the Indians pass it in small flat canoes made of hides : that the Saline or Salt River, which in some seasons is too brackish to be drank, falls into it from the south, about thirty miles up ; and a little above it Elkhorn River from the north, running nearly parallel with the Missouri. The river is, in fact, much more rapid than the Missouri, the bed of which it fills with moving sands, and drives the current on the northern shore, on which it is constantly encroaching. At its junction the Platte is about six hundred yards wide, and the same number of miles from the Mississippi. With much difficulty we worked round the sand-bars near the mouth, and came to above the point, having made fifteen miles."

CHAPTER II.

Some Account of the Pawnees and other Tribes of Indians.—
Council held with the Ottoes and Missouri Indians.—Little
Sioux River.—Ravages of Smallpox among the Mahas.—
Council held with another Party of the Ottoes.—Death of
Sergeant Floyd.—Honour among the Indians.

THE next day, coming to a high and shaded spot on the north bank, ten miles above the Platte, Captain Lewis encamped there, in order to make the necessary observations, and to have an interview with the neighbouring tribes, that they might be informed of the recent change in the government, and of the desire of the United States to cultivate friendly relations with them. Captain Lewis thus continues his narrative :

“Our camp is by observation in latitude $41^{\circ} 3' 11''$. Immediately behind it is a plain about five miles wide, one half covered with wood, the other dry and elevated. The low grounds on the south, near the junction of the two rivers, are rich, but subject to be overflowed. Farther up the banks are higher, and opposite our camp the first hills approach the river, and are covered with timber, such as oak, walnut, and elm. The intermediate country is watered by the Papillon, or Butterfly Creek, of about 18 yards wide, and three miles from the Platte; on the north are high open plains and prairies, and at nine miles from the Platte, the Moschetto Creek and two or three small willow islands. We stayed here several days, during which we dried our provisions, made new oars, and prepared our despatches and maps of the country we had passed, for the President of the United States, to whom we intend to send them by a pirogue from this place. The hunters have found game scarce in this neighbourhood; they have seen deer, turkeys, and grouse; we have also an abundance of ripe grapes, and one of our men caught a white catfish, the eyes of which were small, and its tail resembling that of a dolphin.

“The present season is that in which the Indians go out into the prairies to hunt the buffalo; but as we discovered some hunters' tracks, and observed the plains on fire in the direction of their villages, we hoped that they might have returned to gather the green Indian corn, and therefore despatched two men to the Ottoes or Pawnee villages with a present of tobacco, and an invitation to the chiefs to visit us. They returned after two days' absence. Their first course was through an open prairie to the south, in which they crossed Butterfly Creek. They then reached a small beautiful river, called Corne de Cerf, or Elkhorn River, about 100 yards wide, with clear water and a gravelly channel. It empties a little below the Ottoe village into the Platte,

which they crossed, and arrived at the town about 45 miles from our camp. They found no Indians there, though they saw some fresh tracks of a small party. The Ottoes were once a powerful nation, and lived about 20 miles above the Platte, on the southern bank of the Missouri. Being reduced, they migrated to the neighbourhood of the Pawnees, under whose protection they now live. Their village is on the south side of the Platte, about 30 miles from its mouth; and their number is 200, including about 30 families of Missouri Indians, who are incorporated with them.

“Five leagues above them, on the same side of the river, resides the nation of Pawnees. This people were among the most numerous of the Missouri Indians, but have gradually been dispersed and broken, and even since the year 1797 have undergone some sensible changes. They now consist of four bands: the first is the one just mentioned, of about 500 men, to whom of late years has been added the second band, who are called Republican Pawnees, from their having lived on the Republican branch of the River Kansas, whence they immigrated to join the principal band of Pawnees. The Republican Pawnees amount to nearly 250 men. The third are the Pawnees Loups, or Wolf Pawnees, who reside on the Wolf fork of the Platte, about 90 miles from the principal Pawnees, and number 280 men. The fourth band originally resided on the Kansas and Arkansaw, but in their wars with the Osages they were so often defeated that they at last retired to their present position on the Red River, where they form a tribe of 400 men. All these tribes live in villages and raise corn; but during the intervals of culture rove in the plains in quest of buffalo.

“Beyond them on the river, and westward of the Black Mountains, are the Kaninaviesch, consisting of about 400 men. They are supposed to have em-

igrated originally from the Pawnees nation ; but they have degenerated from the improvements of the parent tribe, and no longer live in villages, but rove through the plains.

“Still farther to the westward are several tribes, who wander and hunt on the sources of the River Platte, and thence to Rock Mountain. These tribes, of which little more is known than the names and the population, are, first, the Staitan, or Kite Indians, a small tribe of one hundred men. They have acquired the name of Kites from their flying ; that is, their being always on horseback ; and the smallness of their numbers is to be attributed to their extreme ferocity : they are the most warlike of all the western Indians ; they never yield in battle ; they never spare their enemies ; and the retaliation of this barbarity has almost extinguished the nation. Then come the Wetapahato and Kiawa tribes, associated together, and amounting to two hundred men ; the Castahana, of three hundred men, to which are to be added the Cataka, of seventy-five men, and the Dotami. These wandering tribes are conjectured to be the remnants of the Great Padouca nation, who occupied the country between the upper parts of the River Platte and the River Kansas. They were visited by Bourgemont in 1724, and then lived on the Kansas River. The seats which he describes as their residence are now occupied by the Kansas nation ; and of the Padoucas there does not now exist even the name.”

Having completed the object of their stay, on the 27th of July they continued their voyage. “At ten and a half miles from our encampment,” says the journalist, “we saw and examined a curious collection of graves or mounds, on the south side of the river. Not far from a low piece of land and a pond is a tract of about two hundred acres in circumference, which is covered with mounds of different heights, shapes, and sizes : some of sand, and

some of both earth and sand; the largest being nearest the river. These mounds indicate the position of the ancient village of the Ottoes, before they retired to the protection of the Pawnees."

On the 29th they passed the spot where the Ayauway Indians, a branch of the Ottoes, once lived, and who had emigrated from this place to the River Des Moines. "Our hunter brought to us in the evening," continues the narrative, "a Missouri Indian, whom he had found, with two others, dressing an elk; they were perfectly friendly, gave him some of the meat, and one of them agreed to accompany him to the boat. He is one of the few remaining Missouris who live with the Ottoes: he belongs to a small party whose camp is four miles from the river; and he says that the body of the nation is now hunting buffalo in the plains. He appeared quite sprightly, and his language resembled the Osage, particularly in his calling a chief *inca*. We sent him back with one of our party the next morning, with an invitation to the Indians to meet us above on the river, and then proceeded."

* * * "July 30. We went early in the morning three and a quarter miles, and encamped on the south, in order to wait for the Ottoes. The land here consists of a plain, above the high-water level, the soil of which is fertile, and covered with a grass from five to eight feet high, interspersed with copses of large plums, and a currant like those of the United States." * * * "Back of this plain is a woody ridge about seventy feet above it, at the edge of which we formed our camp. This ridge separates the lower from a higher prairie, of a good quality, with grass of ten or twelve inches in height, and extending back about a mile to another elevation of eighty or ninety feet, beyond which is one continued plain. Near our camp we enjoy from the bluffs a most beautiful view of the river and the adjoining country. At a distance, varying from four to ten miles,

and of a height between seventy and three hundred feet, two parallel ranges of highland afford a passage to the Missouri, which enriches the low grounds between them. In its winding course it nourishes the willow islands, the scattered cottonwood, elm, sycamore, lynn, and ash, and the groves are interspersed with hickory, walnut, coffeenut, and oak.

"July 31. The meridian altitude of this day made the latitude of our camp $41^{\circ} 18' 1.4''$. One of our men brought in yesterday an animal, called by the Pawnees *chocartoosh*, and by the French *blaireau*, or badger.

"We waited with much anxiety the return of our messenger to the Ottos. The men whom we despatched to our last encampment returned without having seen any appearance of its having been visited. Our horses, too, had strayed; but we were so fortunate as to recover them at the distance of twelve miles. Our apprehensions were at length relieved by the arrival of a party of about fourteen Ottoe and Missouri Indians, who came at sunset, on the 2d of August, accompanied by a Frenchman who resided among them, and interpreted for us. Captains Lewis and Clarke went out to meet them, and told them that we would hold a council in the morning. In the mean time we sent them some roasted meat, pork, flour, and meal; in return for which, they made us a present of watermelons. We learned that our man Liberte had set out from their camp a day before them: we were in hopes that he had fatigued his horse, or lost himself in the woods, and would soon return; but we never saw him again.

The next morning the Indians, with their six chiefs, were all assembled under an awning formed with the mainsail, in presence of all our party, paraded for the occasion. A speech was then made, announcing to them the change in the government, our promises of protection, and advice as to their future conduct. All the six chiefs replied

to our speech, each in his turn, according to rank. They expressed their joy at the change in the government; their hopes that we would recommend them to their Great Father (the president), that they might obtain trade and necessaries: they wanted arms as well for hunting as for defence, and asked our mediation between them and the Mahas, with whom they are now at war. We promised to do so, and wished some of them to accompany us to that nation, which they declined, for fear of being killed by them. We then proceeded to distribute our presents. The grand chief of the nation not being of the party, we sent him a flag, a medal, and some ornaments for clothing. To the six chiefs who were present, we gave a medal of the second grade to one Ottoe chief and one Missouri chief; a medal of the third grade to two inferior chiefs of each nation; the customary mode of recognising a chief being to place a medal round his neck, which is considered among his tribe as a proof of his consideration abroad. Each of these medals was accompanied by a present of paint, garters, and cloth ornaments of dress; and to this we added a canister of powder, a bottle of whiskey, and a few presents to the whole, which appeared to make them perfectly satisfied. The air-gun, too, was fired, and astonished them greatly. The absent grand chief was an Ottoe, named Weahrushhah, which, in English, degenerates into Little Thief. The two principal chieftains present were Shongotongo, or Big Horse, and Wethea, or Hospitality; also Shosguscan, or White Horse, an Ottoe; the first an Ottoe, the second a Missouri. The incidents just related induced us to give to this place the name of the Council Bluffs: the situation of it is exceedingly favourable for a fort and trading factory, as the soil is well calculated for bricks, and there is an abundance of wood in the neighbourhood, and the air being pure and healthy. It is also central to the chief resorts of

the Indians : one day's journey to the Ottoes ; one and a half to the Great Pawnees ; two days from the Mahas ; two and a quarter from the Pawnee Loups' village ; convenient to the hunting grounds of the Sioux ; and twenty-five days' journey to Santa Fé. The ceremonies of the council being concluded, we set sail in the afternoon, and encamped at the distance of five miles, on the south side, where we found the moschetoës very troublesome."

The 5th of August they encamped on the north side of the river. "In the evening, Captain Clarke, in pursuing some game in an eastern direction, found himself, at the distance of three hundred and seventy yards from the camp, at a point of the river whence we had come twelve miles. When the water is high this peninsula is overflowed ; and, judging from the customary and notorious changes in the stream, a few years will be sufficient to force the main current of the river across, and leave the great bend dry. The whole lowland between the parallel range of hills seems formed of mud or ooze of the river, at some former period, mixed with sand and clay. The sand of the neighbouring banks accumulates with the aid of that brought down the stream, and forms sand-bars, projecting into the river ; these drive the channel to the opposite banks, the loose texture of which it undermines, and at length deserts its ancient bed for a new and shorter passage ; it is thus that the banks of the Missouri are constantly falling, and the river changing its bed."

On the 7th they despatched four men back, to the Ottoes village in quest of the man Liberte, and to apprehend one of the soldiers, who had left them on the 4th, under pretence of recovering a knife which he had dropped a short distance behind, and who, they feared, had deserted. They also sent small presents to the Ottoes and Missouris, and requested

that they would join them at the Maha village, where a peace might be concluded between them.

The fourth day after leaving Council Bluffs they arrived at the mouth of a river on the northern side, called by the Sioux Indians Eaneahwadepon, or Stone River, and by the French, Petite Rivière des Sioux, or Little Sioux River. At its confluence it is eighty yards wide. "Our interpreter, M. Durion," says the journalist, "who has been to the sources of it, and knows the adjoining country, says that it rises within about nine miles of the River Des Moines; that within fifteen leagues of that river it passes through a large lake nearly sixty miles in circumference, and divided into two parts by rocks, which approach each other very closely: its width is various; it contains many islands, and is known by the name of Lac d'Esprit. It is near the Dog Plains, and within four days' march of the Mahas. The country watered by it is open and undulating, and may be visited in boats up the river for some distance. The Des Moines, he adds, is about eighty yards wide where the Little Sioux River approaches it; it is shoally, and one of its principal branches is called Cat River. Two miles beyond this river is a long island, which we called Pelican Island, from the numbers of that animal which were feeding on it; one of these being killed, we poured into his bag five gallons of water. An elk, too, was shot; and we had again to remark that snakes are rare in this part of the Missouri. A meridian altitude, near the Little Sioux River, made the latitude $41^{\circ} 42' 34''$."

On the 10th they passed the first highland near the river since leaving Council Bluffs; and not far distant was the spot where Blackbird, one of the great chiefs of the Mahas, who died of the smallpox, had been buried four years before. "A hill of yellow soft sandstone rises from the river in bluffs of various heights, till it ends in a knowl about three hundred feet above the water: on the top of this a

mound, of twelve feet diameter at the base, and six feet high, is raised over the deceased king; a pole of about eight feet high is fixed in the centre, on which we placed a white flag, bordered with red, blue, and white. The Blackbird seems to have been a personage of great consideration; for ever since his death he is supplied with provisions, from time to time, by the superstitious regard of the Mahas. We descended to the river, and passed a small creek on the south, called by the Mahas Waucandipeeche (*Great Spirit is bad*). Near this creek and the adjoining hills the Mahas had a village, and lost four hundred of their nation by the dreadful malady which destroyed the Blackbird. The meridian altitude made the latitude $42^{\circ} 1' 3.8''$ north."

Since leaving the River Platte the Missouri had been found more winding. At one place the distance across, from one point of the stream to another, was only 974 yards, while the circuit of the river was eighteen and three fourth miles. On approaching a creek on which the Mahas had resided, a party was despatched to visit their village, with a flag and present, to induce them to come and hold a council. "After crossing a prairie covered with high grass, they reached the Maha Creek, along which they proceeded to its three forks, which join near the village: they crossed the north branch, and went along the south: the walk was very fatiguing, as they were forced to break their way through grass, sunflowers, and thistles, all above ten feet high, and interspersed with wild pea. Five miles from our camp they reached the position of the ancient Maha village: it had once consisted of three hundred cabins, but was burned about four years ago, soon after the smallpox had destroyed four hundred men, and a proportion of women and children. On a hill in the rear of the village are the graves of the nation, to the south of which runs the fork of the Maha Creek: this they crossed where it

was about ten yards wide, and followed its course to the Missouri, passing along a ridge of hill for one and a half miles, and a long pond between that and the Missouri : they then recrossed the Maha Creek, and arrived at the camp, having seen no tracks of Indians, nor any sign of recent cultivation." * * *

"The accounts we have had of the effects of the smallpox on that nation are most distressing : it is not known in what way it was first communicated to them, though probably by some war party. They had been a military and powerful people ; but when these warriors saw their strength wasting before a malady which they could not resist, their phrensy was extreme ; they burned their village, and many of them put to death their wives and children, to save them from so cruel an affliction, and that all might go together to some better country."

On the 16th two parties went out to fish on the Maha Creek, and were remarkably successful. "They made a drag with small willows and bark, and swept the creek : the first company brought three hundred and eighteen, the second upward of eight hundred, consisting of pike, bass, fish resembling salmon, trout, redhorse, buffalo, one rockfish, one flatback, perch, catfish, a small species of perch, called, on the Ohio, silver-fish, and a shrimp of the same size, shape, and flavour of those about New-Orleans and the lower part of the Mississippi."

"On the 17th, in the evening," says the narrative, "one of the party sent to the Ottoes returned, with the information that the rest were coming on with the deserter. They had also caught Liberte, but, by a trick, he made his escape : they were bringing three of the chiefs, in order to engage our assistance in making peace with the Mahas. This nation having left their village, that desirable purpose cannot be effected ; but, in order to bring in any neighbouring tribes, we set the surrounding prairies on fire. This is the customary signal made by traders

to apprise the Indians of their arrival : it is also used between different nations as an indication of any event which they have previously agreed to announce in that way, and, as soon as it is seen, collects the neighbouring tribes, unless they apprehend that it is made by their enemies.

" August 18. In the afternoon the party arrived with the Indians, consisting of the Little Thief and the Big Horse, whom we had seen on the third, together with six other chiefs, and a French interpreter. We met them under a shade, and, after they had finished a repast with which we supplied them, we inquired into the origin of the war between them and the Mahas, which they related with great frankness. It seems that two of the Missouris went to the Mahas to steal horses, but were detected and killed ; the Ottoes and Missouris thought themselves bound to avenge their companions, and the whole nations were at last obliged to share in the dispute : they are also in fear of a war from the Pawnees, whose village they entered this summer while the inhabitants were hunting, and stole their corn. This ingenuous confession did not make us the less desirous of negotiating a peace for them ; but no Indians have as yet been attracted by our fire. The evening was closed by a dance ; and the next day, the chiefs and warriors being assembled at ten o'clock, we explained the speech we had already sent from the Council Bluffs, and renewed our advice. They all replied in turn, and the presents were then distributed. We exchanged the small medal we had formerly given to the Big Horse for one of the same size with that of Little Thief : we also gave a small medal to a third chief, and a kind of certificate or letter of acknowledgment to five of the warriors, expressive of our favour and their good intentions. One of them, dissatisfied, returned us the certificate ; but the chief, fearful of our being offended, begged that it might be restored to him :

this we declined, and rebuked them severely for having in view mere traffic instead of peace with their neighbours. This displeased them at first; but they at length all petitioned that it should be given to the warrior, who then came forward and made an apology to us; we then delivered it to the chief to be given to the most worthy, and he bestowed it on the same warrior, whose name was Great Blue Eyes. After a more substantial present of small articles and tobacco, the council was ended with a dram to the Indians. In the evening we exhibited different objects of curiosity, and particularly the air-gun, which gave them great surprise. Those people are almost naked, having no covering except a sort of breech-cloth round the middle, with a loose blanket or buffalo robe, painted, thrown over them. The names of these warriors, besides those already mentioned, were Karkapaha, or *Crow's Head*, and Nenasawa, or *Black Cat*, Missouri; and Sananona, or *Iron Eyes*, Neswaunja, or *Big Ox*, Stageaunja, or *Big Blue Eyes*, and Wasashaco, or *Brave Man*, all Ottoes. These two tribes speak very nearly the same language: they all begged us to give them whiskey.

"The next morning, August 20, the Indians mounted their horses and left us, having received a canister of whiskey at parting. We then set sail, and, after passing two islands on the north, came to on that side under some bluffs—the first near the river since we left the Ayauway village. Here we had the misfortune to lose one of our sergeants, Charles Floyd. He was yesterday seized with a bilious colic, and all our care and attention were ineffectual to relieve him. A little before his death he said to Captain Clarke, 'I am going to leave you:' his strength failed him as he added, 'I want you to write me a letter;' but he died with a composure which justified the high opinion we had formed of his firmness and good conduct. He was buried on

the top of the bluff with the honours due to a brave soldier, and the place of his interment marked by a cedar post, on which his name and the day of his death were inscribed. About a mile beyond this place, to which we gave his name, is a small river about thirty yards wide, on the north, which we called Floyd's River, where we encamped. We had a breeze from the southeast, and made thirteen miles."

"On the 21st they passed the mouth of the great Sioux River, three miles beyond Floyd's. This river comes in from the north, and is about one hundred and ten yards wide. M. Durion, our Sioux interpreter," continues the narrative, "who is well acquainted with it, says that it is navigable upward of two hundred miles to the falls, and even beyond them: that its sources are near those of the St. Peter's. He also says, that below the falls a creek falls in from the eastward, after passing through cliffs of red rock. Of this the Indians make their pipes; and the necessity of procuring that article has introduced a sort of law of nations, by which the banks of the creek are sacred, and even tribes at war meet without hostility at these quarries, which possess a right of asylum. Thus we find, even among savages, certain principles deemed sacred, by which the rigours of their merciless system of warfare are mitigated. A sense of common danger, where stronger ties are wanting, gives all the binding force of more solemn obligations. The importance of preserving the known and settled rules of warfare among civilized nations, in all their integrity, becomes strikingly evident; since even savages, with their few precarious wants, cannot exist in a state of peace or war where this faith is once violated."

After ascending the Missouri some miles above the Great Sioux, the bluffs on the south bank were found to contain copperas, alum, cobalt, and other

mineral substances, which, affecting the water, had occasioned disorders of the stomach among the men; but, by removing the scum from the surface of the water and dipping deep, this effect was prevented. On an extensive and delightful prairie on the north side they killed the first buffalo, and hence they gave to it the name of that animal. Here, likewise, a deer and beaver were killed, and two elk were seen. Near this there was a bluff of blue clay, rising to an elevation of 180 or 190 feet on the south side, exhibiting marks of recent fire, and still so hot beneath the surface as not to be endured by the hand.

CHAPTER III.

Whimsical Instance of Superstition of the Sioux Indians.—Council held with the Sioux.—Character of that Tribe, their Manners, &c.—A ridiculous Instance of their Heroism.—Ancient Fortifications.—Vast Herds of Buffalo.—Account of the Petit Chien, or Little Dog.—Narrow Escape of George Shannon.—Surprising Fleetness of the Antelope.—Pass the River of the Sioux.—The Grand Detour, or Great Bend.—Encamp on the Teton River.

On the 25th of August, the party being encamped on the south side of the river, "Captains Lewis and Clarke, with ten men, went to see an object deemed very extraordinary among all the neighbouring Indians. They dropped down to the mouth of White-stone River, about thirty yards wide, where they left the boat, and at the distance of two hundred yards ascended a rising ground, from which a plain extended itself as far as the eye could discern. After walking four miles they crossed the creek where it is twenty-three yards wide, and waters an extensive valley. The heat was so oppressive that we were obliged to send back our dog to the creek, as he was

unable to bear the fatigue; and it was not till after four hours' march that we reached the object of our visit. This was a large mound in the midst of the plain about N. 20° W. from the mouth of White-stone River, from which it is nine miles distant. The base of the mound is a regular parallelogram, the longest side being about three hundred yards, the shorter sixty or seventy: from the longest side it rises with a steep ascent from the north and south to the height of sixty-five or seventy feet, leaving on the top a level plain of twelve feet in breadth and ninety in length. The north and south extremities are connected by two oval borders, which serve as new bases, and divide the whole side into three steep but regular gradations from the plain. The only thing characteristic in this hill is its extreme symmetry; and this, together with its being totally detached from the other hills, which are at the distance of eight or nine miles, would induce a belief that it was artificial; but, as the earth and the loose pebbles which compose it are arranged exactly like the steep grounds on the borders of the creek, we concluded from this similarity of texture that it might be natural. But the Indians have made it a great article of their superstition: it is called the Mountain of Little People, or Little Spirits; and they believe that it is the abode of little devils, in the human form, of about eighteen inches high, and with remarkably large heads; they are armed with sharp arrows, with which they are very skilful, and are always on the watch to kill those who should have the hardihood to approach their residence. The tradition is, that many have suffered from these little evil spirits, and, among others, three Maha Indians fell a sacrifice to them a few years since. This has inspired all the neighbouring nations, Sioux, Mahas, and Ottoes, with such terror, that no consideration could tempt them to visit the hill. We saw none of these wicked little spirits, nor any

place for them, except some small holes scattered over the top: we were happy enough to escape their vengeance, though we remained some time on the mound to enjoy the delightful prospect of the plain, which spreads itself out till the eye rests upon the northwest hills at a great distance, and those of the northeast, still farther off, enlivened by large herds of buffalo feeding at a distance.

"The soil of these plains is exceedingly fine: there is, however, no timber except on the Missouri, all the wood of the Whitestone River not being sufficient to cover thickly one hundred acres. The plain country which surrounds this mound has contributed not a little to its bad reputation: the wind, driving from every direction over the level ground, obliges the insects to seek shelter on its leeward side, or be driven against it. The small birds, whose food they are, resort there, of course, in great numbers in quest of subsistence; and the Indians always seem to consider an unusual assemblage of birds as produced by some supernatural cause. Among them we observed the brown martin employed in looking for insects, and so gentle that they did not fly until we got within a few feet of them. We have also distinguished among the numerous birds of the plain, the blackbird, the wren or prairie-bird, and a species of lark about the size of a partridge, with a short tail."

Rejoining the boats, on the morning of the 26th they proceeded on their route, and the next day passed the mouth of the Yankton, opposite which an Indian swam to the boat; and, on their landing, they were met by two others, who informed them that a large body of Sioux were encamped near them: they accompanied three men, who were sent with an invitation to the Sioux to meet them at a spot above the river. The third Indian remained behind: he was a Maha boy, and said that his nation had gone to the Pawnees to make peace with them.

On the 28th they reached Calumet Bluff, where, on a beautiful plain near it, they encamped, and awaited the arrival of the Sioux. One of the pirogues, by running against a log, had been rendered unfit for service: fine prairies were on either side of the river, and timber was more plentiful.

The Journal thus continues: "Wednesday, 29th. We had a violent storm of wind and rain last evening, and were engaged during the day in repairing the pirogue and other necessary occupations; when, at four o'clock in the afternoon, Sergeant Pryor and his party arrived on the opposite side, attended by five chiefs and about seventy men and boys. We sent a boat for them, and they joined us, as did also M. Durion, the son of our interpreter, who happened to be trading with the Sioux at this time. He returned with Sergeant Pryor to the Indians, with a present of tobacco, corn, and a few kettles, and told them that we would speak to their chiefs in the morning. Sergeant Pryor reported that, on reaching their village, which is at twelve miles' distance from our camp, he was met by a party with a buffalo robe, on which they desired to carry their visitors; an honour which they declined, informing the Indians that they were not the commanders of the boats. As a great mark of respect, they were then presented with a fat dog, already cooked, of which they partook heartily, and found it well flavoured. The camps of the Sioux are of a conical form, covered with buffalo robes, painted with various figures and colours, with an aperture in the top for the smoke to pass through. The lodges contain from ten to fifteen persons, and the interior arrangement is compact and handsome, each lodge having a place for cooking detached from it.

"August 30th. The fog was so thick that we could not see the Indian camp on the opposite side, but it cleared off about eight o'clock. We prepared a speech and some presents, and then sent for the

chiefs and warriors, whom we received at twelve o'clock under a large oak tree, near to which the flag of the United States was flying. Captain Lewis delivered a speech, with the usual advice and counsel for their future conduct. We then acknowledged their chiefs, by giving to the grand chief a flag, a medal, a certificate, with a string of wampum, to which we added a chief's coat; that is, a richly-laced uniform of the United States' artillery corps, and a cocked hat and red feather. One second chief and three inferior ones were made or recognised by medals, and a suitable present of tobacco and articles of clothing. We then smoked the pipe of peace, and the chiefs retired to a bower, formed of bushes by their young men, where they divided among each other the presents, and smoked and ate, and held a council on the answer which they were to make us on to-morrow. The young people exercised their bows and arrows in shooting at marks for beads, which we distributed to the best marksmen; and in the evening the whole party danced until a late hour: in the course of their amusement we threw among them some knives, tobacco, bells, tape, and binding, with which they were much pleased. Their musical instruments were the drum, and a sort of little bag made of buffalo hide, dressed white, with small shot or pebbles in it, and a bunch of hair tied to it. This produces a sort of rattling music, with which the party was annoyed by four musicians during the council this morning.

"August 31st. In the morning, after breakfast, the chiefs met and sat down in a row, with pipes of peace highly ornamented, and all pointed towards the seats intended for Captains Lewis and Clarke. When they arrived and were seated, the grand chief, whose Indian name, Weucha, is in English *Shake Hand*, and in French is called *Le Libérateur* (the Deliverer), rose and spoke at some length, approving what we had said, and promising to follow our advice :

" 'I see before me,' said he, ' my great father's two sons. You see me and the rest of our chiefs and warriors. We are very poor ; we have neither powder, nor ball, nor knives ; and our women and children at the village have no clothes. I wish that, as my brothers have given me a flag and a medal, they would give something to those poor people, or let them stop and trade with the first boat which comes up the river. I will bring the chiefs of the Pawnees and Mahas together, and make peace between them ; but it is better that I should do it than my great father's sons, for they will listen to me more readily. I will also take some chiefs to your country in the spring ; but before that time I cannot leave home. I went formerly to the English, and they gave me a medal and some clothes : when I went to the Spaniards they gave me a medal, but nothing to keep it from my skin : but now you give me a medal and clothes. But still we are poor ; and I wish, brothers, you would give us something for our squaws.' "

" When he sat down, Mahtoree, or White Crane, rose :

" 'I have listened,' said he, ' to what our father's words were yesterday ; and I am to-day glad to see how you have dressed our old chief. I am a young man, and do not wish to take much ; my fathers have made me a chief ; I had much sense before, but now I think I have more than ever. What the old chief has declared I will confirm, and do whatever he and you please ; but I wish that you would take pity on us, for we are very poor.' "

" Another chief, called Pawnawneahpahbe, then said :

" 'I am a young man, and know but little ; I cannot speak well, but I have listened to what you have told the old chief, and will do whatever you agree.' "

" The same sentiments were then repeated by Aweawechange.

" We were surprised at finding that the first of

these titles means Struck by the Pawnee, and was occasioned by some blow which the chief had received in battle from one of the Pawnee tribe. The second is in English Half Man, which seemed a singular name for a warrior, till it was explained to have its origin, probably, in the modesty of the chief, who, on being told of his exploits, would say, 'I am no warrior, I am only half a man.' The other chiefs spoke very little; but after they had finished, one of the warriors delivered a speech, in which he declared he would support them. They promised to make peace with the Ottoes and Missouris, the only nations with whom they are at war. All these harangues concluded by describing the distress of the nation: they begged us to have pity on them; to send them traders; that they wanted powder and ball; and seemed anxious that we should supply them with some of their great father's milk, the name by which they distinguish ardent spirits. We gave some tobacco to each of the chiefs, and a certificate to two of the warriors who attended the chief. We prevailed on M. Durion to remain here, and accompany as many of the Sioux chiefs as he could collect to the seat of government. We also gave his son a flag, some clothes, and provisions, with directions to bring about a peace between the surrounding tribes, and to convey some of their chiefs to see the president. In the evening they left us, and encamped on the opposite bank, by the two Durions. During the evening and night we had much rain, and observed that the river rises a little.

"The Indians who have just left us are the Yanktons, a tribe of the great nation of Sioux. These Yanktons are about two hundred men in number, and inhabit the Jacques, Des Moines, and Sioux Rivers. In person they are stout, well proportioned, and have a certain air of dignity and boldness. In their dress they differ nothing from the other bands

of the nation whom we saw, and will describe afterward: they are fond of decorations, and use paint, and porcupine-quills, and feathers. Some of them wore a kind of necklace of white bear's claws, three inches long, and closely strung together round their necks. They have only a few fowling-pieces, being generally armed with bows and arrows; in which, however, they do not appear as expert as the more northern Indians. What struck us most was an institution peculiar to them and to the Kite Indians, farther to the westward, from whom it is said to have been copied. It is an association of the most active and brave young men, who are bound to each other by attachment, secured by a vow never to retreat before any danger or give way to their enemies. In war they go forward without sheltering themselves behind trees, or aiding their natural valour by any artifice. This punctilious determination not to be turned from their course became heroic, or ridiculous, a short time since, when the Yanktons were crossing the Missouri on the ice. A hole lay immediately in their course, which might easily have been avoided by going round. This the foremost of the band disdained to do, but went straight forward, and was lost. The others would have followed his example, but were forcibly prevented by the rest of the tribe. These young men sit, and encamp, and dance together, distinct from the rest of the nation: they are generally about thirty or thirty-five years old; and such is the deference paid to courage, that their seats in council are superior to those of the chiefs, and their persons more respected. But, as may be supposed, such indiscreet bravery will soon diminish the numbers of those who practise it; so that the band is now reduced to four warriors, who were among our visitors. These were the remains of twenty-two, who composed the society not long ago; but, in a battle with the Kite Indians of the Black Mountains,

eighteen of them were killed, and these four were dragged from the field by their companions.

"While these Indians remained with us, we made very minute inquiries relative to their situation, and numbers, and trade, and manners. This we did very satisfactorily, by means of two different interpreters; and from their accounts, joined to our interviews with other bands of the same nation, and much intelligence acquired since, we were enabled to understand with some accuracy the condition of the Sioux, hitherto so little known.

"The Sioux, or Dacorta Indians, originally settled on the Mississippi, and called by Carver Madowesians, are now subdivided into tribes, as follow :

"First, the Yanktons : this tribe inhabits the Sioux, Des Moines, and Jacques Rivers, and numbers about two hundred warriors.

"Second, the Tetons of the Burned Woods : this tribe numbers about three hundred men, who rove on both sides of the Missouri, the White, and Teton Rivers.

"Third, the Tetons Okandandas : a tribe consisting of about one hundred and fifty men, who inhabit both sides of the Missouri below the Chayenne River.

"Fourth, Tetons Minnakenozzo : a nation inhabiting both sides of the Missouri above the Chayenne River, and containing about two hundred and fifty men.

"Fifth, Tetons Saone : these inhabit both sides of the Missouri below the Warreconne River, and consist of about three hundred men.

"Sixth, Yanktons of the Plains, or Big Devils ; who rove on the heads of the Sioux, Jacques, and Red Rivers : the most numerous of all the tribes, and number about five hundred men.

"Seventh, Wahpatone : a nation residing on the St. Peter's, just above the mouth of that river, and numbering two hundred men.

ARKE'S EXPEDITION.

erton, or proper *Dacorta*, or possess the original seat of early so denominated. They the Mississippi, about the and consist of three hundred

oota, or Leaf Beds: this na- of the River St. Peter's be- er, amounting to about one

this nation numbers two s at the head of the St. Pe- tribes more particular no- ber."*

ssed Calumet Bluffs, and on land the next day, Captain t fortification, which is thus sting object is on the south osite the upper extremity of

on in regard to the several tribes of of Council Bluffs was obtained by er, Indian agent among the Yank- number of 2000, on the Missouri,

The Yanktons, on the Vermilion outh of the Missouri, number from of L'Eau qui Court. The region Sioux River, and that on the south as the country of the Mandans, eneral head of the Sioux Country, ng bands of that nation: the Yank- ntas, Yanktonas, Tetons, Ogala- s, who course east and west from Hills, and sometimes as far south umber of all these bands cannot probably it is from 40,000 to 60,000. and they rely exclusively upon the r principal trade is in buffalo robes. Intercourse with them, and in gen- to the whites. The Mandans are ny other tribe in this region; but, at, they are beginning to grow sus- ence in white men.

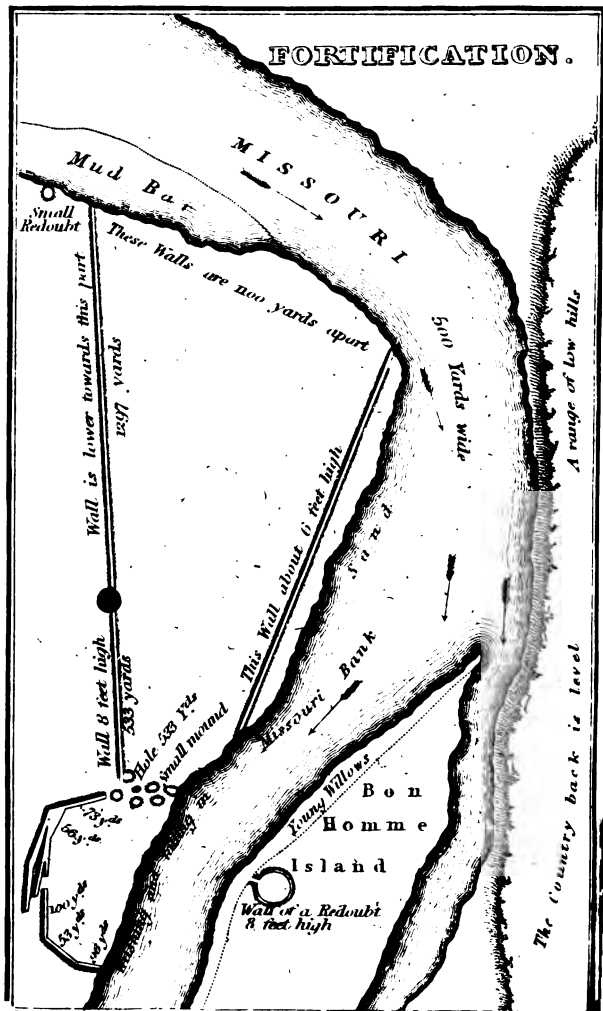
THE NEW
PUBLISHED

ARTICLE
THE NEW

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX & TILDEN FOUNDATION

FORTIFICATION.



Bonhomme Island, and in a low level plain, the hills being three miles from the river. It begins by a wall composed of earth, rising immediately from the bank of the river, and running in a direct course S. 74° W. ninety-six yards; the base of this wall or mound is seventy-five feet, and its height about eight. It then diverges in a course S. 84° W., and continues at the same height and depth to the distance of fifty-three yards, the angle being formed by a sloping descent; at the junction of these two is an appearance of a hornwork of the same height with the first angle. The same wall then pursues a course N. 69° W. for three hundred yards: near its western extremity is an opening or gateway at right angles to the wall, and projecting inward; this gateway is defended by two nearly semicircular walls placed before it, lower than the large walls; and from the gateway there seems to have been a covered way communicating with the interval between these two walls. Westward of the gate, the wall becomes much larger, being about one hundred and five feet at its base, and twelve feet high: at the end of this high ground the wall extends for fifty-six yards on a course N. 32° W.; it then turns N. 23° W. for seventy-three yards. These two walls seem to have had a double or covered way: they are from ten to fifteen feet eight inches in height, and from seventy-five to one hundred and five feet in width at the base; the descent inward being steep, while outward it forms a sort of glacis. At the distance of seventy-three yards the wall ends abruptly at a large hollow place much lower than the general level of the plain, and from which is some indication of a covered way to the water. The space between them is occupied by several mounds, scattered promiscuously through the gorge, in the centre of which is a deep round hole. From the extremity of the last wall, in a course N. 32° W., is a distance of ninety-six yards over the low ground, where the

wall recommences, and crosses the plain in a course N. 81° W., for eighteen hundred and thirty yards, to the bank of the Missouri. In this course its height is about eight feet, till it enters, at the distance of five hundred and thirty-three yards, a deep circular pond of seventy-three yards' diameter; after which it is gradually lower towards the river. It touches the river at a muddy bar, which bears every mark of being an encroachment of the water for a considerable distance; and a little above the junction is a small circular redoubt. Along the bank of the river, and at eleven hundred yards' distance in a straight line from this wall, is a second, about six feet high, and of considerable width: it rises abruptly from the bank of the Missouri, at a point where the river bends, and goes straight forward, forming an acute angle with the last wall, till it enters the river again not far from the mounds just described, towards which it is obviously tending. At the bend the Missouri is five hundred yards wide, the ground on the opposite side highlands, or low hills on the bank; and where the river passes between this fort and Bonhomme Island, all the distance from the bend, it is constantly washing the banks into the stream, a large sand-bank being already taken from the shore near the wall. During the whole course of this wall, or glacis, it is covered with trees, among which are many large cotton-trees, two or three feet in diameter. Immediately opposite the citadel, or the part most strongly fortified, on Bonhomme Island, is a small work in a circular form, with a wall surrounding it, about six feet in height. The young willows along the water, joined to the general appearance of the two shores, induce a belief that the bank of the island is encroaching, and the Missouri indemnifies itself by washing away the base of the fortification. The citadel contains about twenty acres, but the parts between the long walls must embrace nearly five hundred acres.

"These are the first remains of the kind which we have had an opportunity of examining; but our French interpreters assure us that there are great numbers of them on the Platte, the Kansas, the Jacques, &c.; and some of our party say that they observed two of those fortresses on the upper side of the Petit Arc Creek, not far from its mouth; that the wall was about six feet high, and the sides of the angles one hundred yards in length."

The following day they passed La Rivière qui Court, and the day after the Poncara, where was a village belonging to the Indians of that name, but which was found deserted, it being the hunting season. "This tribe of Poncaras, who are said to have once numbered four hundred men, are now reduced to about fifty, and have associated for mutual protection with the Mahas, who are about two hundred in number. These two nations are allied by a similarity of misfortune; they were once both numerous, both resided in villages, and cultivated Indian corn. Their common enemies, the Sioux and small-pox, drove them from their towns, which they visit only occasionally for the purposes of trade; and they now wander over the plains on the sources of the Wolf and Quicurre Rivers."

"Twenty miles farther on," continues the narrative, "we reached and encamped at the foot of a round mountain on the south, having passed two small islands. This mountain, which is about three hundred feet at the base, forms a cone at the top, resembling a dome at a distance, and seventy feet or more above the surrounding highlands. As we descended from this dome, we arrived at a spot on the gradual descent of the hill, nearly four acres in extent, and covered with small holes: these are the residence of a little animal, called by the French *petit chien* (little dog), which sit erect near the mouth, and make a whistling noise, but, when alarmed, take refuge in their holes. In order to bring them out,

we poured into one of the holes five barrels of water without filling it, but we dislodged and caught the owner. After digging down another of the holes for six feet, we found, on running a pole into it, that we had not yet dug half way to the bottom: we discovered, however, two frogs in the hole, and near it we killed a dark rattlesnake, which had swallowed a small prairie dog. We were also informed, though we never witnessed the fact, that a sort of lizard and a snake live habitually with these animals. The petit chien are justly named, as they resemble a small dog in some particulars, although they have also some points of similarity to the squirrel. The head resembles the squirrel in every respect, except that the ear is shorter; the tail like that of the ground squirrel; the toe nails are long, the fur is fine, and the long hair is gray."

The following days they saw large herds of buffalo, and the copses of timber appeared to contain elk and deer. "Just below Cedar Island," adds the Journal, "on a hill to the south, is the backbone of a fish, forty-five feet long, tapering towards the tail, and in a perfect state of petrification, fragments of which were collected and sent to Washington."

On the 11th they visited a village of barking squirrels, and succeeded in killing four of those animals, and they were rejoined by one of their missing companions, of which the following account is given:

"In the morning we observed a man riding on horseback down towards the boat, and we were much pleased to find that it was George Shannon, one of our party, for whose safety we had been very uneasy. Our two horses having strayed from us on the 26th of August, he was sent to search for them. After he had found them, he attempted to rejoin us; but, seeing some other tracks, which must have been those of Indians, and which he mistook for our own, he concluded that we were ahead, and had been for sixteen days following the bank of the river above

us. During the first four days he exhausted his bullets, and was then nearly starved, being obliged to subsist for twelve days on a few grapes, and a rabbit which he killed by making use of a hard piece of stick for a ball. One of his horses gave out, and was left behind; the other he kept as a last resource for food. Despairing of overtaking us, he was returning down the river in the hope of meeting some other boat, and was on the point of killing his horse, when he was so fortunate as to join us."

"September 14th. The hills, particularly on the south," says the Journal, "continue high, but the timber is confined to the islands and banks of the river. We had occasion here to observe the rapid undermining of these hills by the Missouri. The first attacks seem to be on the hills which overhang the river: as soon as the violence of the current destroys the grass at the foot of them, the whole texture appears loosened, and the ground dissolves and mixes with the water; the muddy mixture is then forced over the low grounds, which it covers sometimes to the depth of three inches, and gradually destroys the herbage; after which it can offer no resistance to the water, and becomes at last covered with sand."

The next day they passed the mouth of the White River, which has a bed of 300 yards in width, and at the confluence of which with the Missouri "is an excellent position for a town; the land rising by three gradual ascents, and the neighbourhood furnishing more timber than is usual in this country."

"September 16. Early in the morning," continues the narrative, "having reached a convenient spot on the south side, and at one mile and a quarter's distance, we encamped just above a small creek, which we called Corvus, having killed an animal of that genus near it. Finding that we could not proceed over the sand-bars as fast as we desired while the boat was so heavily loaded, we concluded not to

send back, as we originally intended, our third pirogue, but to detain the soldiers until spring, and in the mean time lighten the boat by loading the pirogue: this operation, added to that of drying all our wet articles, detained us during the day. Our camp is in a beautiful plain, with timber thinly scattered for three quarters of a mile, and consisting chiefly of elm, cottonwood, some ash of an indifferent quality, and a considerable quantity of a small species of white oak: this tree seldom rises higher than thirty feet, and branches very much; the bark is rough, thick, and of a light colour; the leaves small, deeply indented, and of a pale green; the cup which contains the acorn is fringed on the edges, and embraces it about one half; the acorn itself, which grows in great profusion, is of an excellent flavour, and has none of the roughness which most other acorns possess; they are now falling, and have probably attracted the number of deer which we saw at this place, as all the animals we have seen are fond of that food. The ground having been recently burned by the Indians, is covered with young green grass, and in the neighbourhood are great quantities of fine plums. We killed a few deer for the sake of their skins, which we wanted to cover the pirogues, the meat being too poor for food. The cold season coming on, a flannel shirt was given to each man, and fresh powder to those who had exhausted their supply.

"September 17. While some of the party were engaged in the same way as yesterday, others were employed in examining the surrounding country. About a quarter of a mile behind our camp, and at an elevation of twenty feet above it, a plain extends nearly three miles parallel to the river, and about a mile back to the hills, towards which it gradually ascends. Here we saw a grove of plum-trees loaded with fruit, now ripe, and differing in nothing from those of the Atlantic States, except that the tree is

smaller and more thickly set. The ground of the plain is occupied by the burrows of multitudes of barking squirrels, who entice hither the wolves of a small kind; hawks, and polecats, all of which animals we saw, and presumed that they fed on the squirrel. This plain is intersected, nearly in its whole extent, by deep ravines, and steep, irregular rising grounds, from one to two hundred feet. On ascending the range of hills which border the plain, we saw a second high level plain, stretching to the south as far as the eye could reach. To the westward, a high range of hills, about twenty miles distant, runs nearly north and south, but not to any great extent, as their rise and termination is embraced by one view, and they seemed covered with a verdure similar to that of the plains. The same view extended over the irregular hills which border the northern side of the Missouri. All around, the country had been recently burned, and a young green grass about four inches high covered the ground, which was enlivened by herds of antelopes and buffalo; the last of which were in such multitudes, that we cannot exaggerate in saying that at a single glance we saw three thousand of them before us. Of all the animals we had seen, the antelope seems to possess the most wonderful fleetness. Shy and timorous, they generally repose only on the ridges, which command a view of all the approaches of an enemy: the acuteness of their sight distinguishes the most distant danger; the delicate sensibility of their smell defeats the precautions of concealment; and, when alarmed, their rapid career seems more like the flight of birds than the movements of a quadruped. After many unsuccessful attempts, Captain Lewis at last, by winding around the ridges, approached a party of seven, which were on an eminence towards which the wind was unfortunately blowing. The only male of the party frequently encircled the summit of the hill, as if to announce

any danger to the females, which formed a group at the top. Although they did not see Captain Lewis, the smell alarmed them, and they fled when he was at the distance of two hundred yards: he immediately ran to the spot where they had been; a ravine concealed them from him; but the next moment they appeared on a second ridge, at the distance of three miles. He doubted whether they could be the same; but their number, and the extreme rapidity with which they continued their course, convinced him that they must have gone with a speed equal to that of the most distinguished race-horse. Among our acquisitions to-day were a mule-deer, a magpie, a common deer, and buffalo: Captain Lewis also saw a hare, and killed a rattlesnake near the burrows of the barking squirrels.

"September 18. Having everything in readiness, we proceeded, with the boat much lightened, but the wind being from the N.W. we made but little way. At one mile we reached an island in the middle of the river, nearly a mile in length, and covered with red cedar; at its extremity a small creek comes in from the north: we then met some sand-bars, and the wind being very high and ahead, we encamped on the south, having made only seven miles. In addition to the common deer, which were in great abundance, we saw goats, elk, buffalo, and the black-tailed deer; the large wolves, too, are very numerous, and have long hair with coarse fur, and are of a light colour. A small species of wolf, about the size of a gray fox, was also killed, and proved to be the animal which we had hitherto mistaken for a fox: there are also many porcupines, rabbits, and barking squirrels in the neighbourhood.

"September 19. We this day enjoyed a cool, clear morning, and a wind from the southeast. We reached at three miles a bluff on the south, and four miles farther the lower point of Prospect Island, about two and a half miles in length. Opposite to

this are high bluffs, about eighty feet above the water, beyond which are beautiful plains, gradually rising as they recede from the river: these are watered by three streams, which empty near each other; the first is about thirty-five yards wide, the ground on its sides high and rich, with some timber; the second about twelve yards wide, but with less timber; the third is nearly of the same size, and contains more water; but it scatters its waters over the large timbered plain, and empties itself into the river at three places. These rivers are called by the French *les Trois Rivières des Sioux*, the Three Sioux Rivers; and as the Sioux generally cross the Missouri at this place, it is called the Sioux Pass of the three rivers. These streams have the same right of asylum, though in a less degree than Pipestone Creek already mentioned."

On the 20th they arrived at the Grand Detour, or Great Bend, and two men were despatched with the only horse to hunt, and wait the arrival of the boats at the first creek beyond it. After proceeding twenty-seven and a half miles farther, they encamped on a sand-bar in the river. "Captain Clarke," continues the narrative, "who early this morning had crossed the neck of the bend, joined us in the evening. At the narrowest part, the gorge is composed of high and irregular hills of about one hundred and eighty or one hundred and ninety feet in elevation; from this descends an unbroken plain over the whole of the bend, and the country is separated from it by this ridge. Great numbers of buffalo, elk, and goats are wandering over these plains, accompanied by grouse and larks. Captain Clarke saw a hare, also, on the Great Bend. Of the goats killed to-day, one is a female, differing from the male in being smaller in size; its horns, too, are smaller and straighter, having one short prong, and no black about the neck: none of these goats have any beard, but are delicately formed, and very beautiful."

Shortly after midnight the sleepers were startled by the sergeant on guard crying out that the sand-bar was sinking, and the alarm was timely given; for scarcely had they got off with the boats before the bank under which they had been lying fell in; and by the time the opposite shore was reached, the ground on which they had been encamped sunk also. A man who was sent to step off the distance across the head of the bend, made it but 2000 yards, while its circuit is thirty miles. On the 22d they passed a creek and two islands, known by the name of the Three Sisters, where a beautiful plain extended on both sides of the river. "This is followed by an island on the north, called Cedar Island, about one mile and a half in length, and the same distance in breadth, and deriving its name from the quality of its timber. On the south side of this island is a fort and a large trading-house, built by a Mr. Loisel in order to trade with the Sioux, the remains of whose camps are in great numbers about this place. The establishment is sixty or seventy feet square, built with red cedar, and picketed in with the same materials."

The next day, in the evening, three boys of the Sioux nation swam across the river, and informed them that two parties of Sioux were encamped on the next river, one consisting of eighty, and the second of sixty lodges, at some distance above. After treating them kindly, they sent them back with a present of two carrots of tobacco to their chiefs, whom they invited to a conference in the morning.

September 24. At an island a few miles above Highwater Creek they were joined by one of their hunters, "who," proceeds the narrative, "procured four elk; but while he was in pursuit of the game the Indians had stolen his horse. We left the island, and soon overtook five Indians on the shore: we anchored, and told them from the boat we were friends, and wished to continue so, but were not

afraid of any Indians; that some of their young men had stolen the horse which their great father had sent for their great chief, and that we could not treat with them until he was restored. They said that they knew nothing of the horse, but if he had been taken he should be given up. We went on, and at thirteen and a half miles we anchored one hundred yards off the mouth of a river on the south side, where we were joined by both the pirogues, and encamped: two thirds of the party remained on board, and the rest went as a guard on shore, with the cooks and one pirogue; we have seen along the sides of the hills on the north a great deal of stone; besides the elk, we also observed a hare; the five Indians whom we had seen followed us, and slept with the guard on shore. Finding one of them was a chief, we smoked with him, and made him a present of tobacco. This river is about seventy yards wide, and has a considerable current. As the tribe of the Sioux which inhabit it are called Tetons, we gave it the name of Teton River."

CHAPTER IV.

Council held with the Tetons.—Their Manners, Dances, &c.—Chayenne River.—Council held with the Ricara Indians.—Their Manners and Habits.—Strange Instance of Ricara Idolatry.—Another Instance.—Cannonball River.—Arrival among the Mandans.—Character of the surrounding Country.

"SEPTEMBER 25. The morning was fine, and the wind continued from the southeast. We raised a flagstaff and an awning, under which we assembled at twelve o'clock, with all the party parading under arms. The chiefs and warriors, from the camp two miles up the river, met us, about fifty or sixty in number.

VOL. I.—I

ber, and after smoking we delivered them a speech; but as our Sioux interpreter, M. Durion, had been left with the Yanktons, we were obliged to make use of a Frenchman who could not speak fluently, and therefore we curtailed our harangue. After this we went through the ceremony of acknowledging the chiefs, by giving to the grand chief a medal, a flag of the United States, a laced uniform coat, a cocked hat and feather; to the two other chiefs, a medal and some small presents; and to two warriors of consideration, certificates. The name of the great chief is Untongasabaw, or Black Buffalo; the second, Tortohonga, or the Partisan; the third, Tartongawaka, or Buffalo Medicine; the name of one of the warriors was Wawzinggo; that of the second, Matocoquepa, or Second Bear. We then invited the chiefs on board, and showed them the boat, the air-gun, and such curiosities as we thought might amuse them. In this we succeeded too well; for, after giving them a quarter of a glass of whiskey, which they seemed to like very much, and sucked the bottle, it was with much difficulty that we could get rid of them. They at last accompanied Captain Clarke on shore, in a pirogue with five men; but it seems they had formed a design to stop us; for no sooner had the party landed than three of the Indians seized the cable of the pirogue, and one of the soldiers of the chief put his arms round the mast. The second chief, who affected intoxication, then said that we should not go on; that they had not received presents enough from us. Captain Clarke told him that he would not be prevented from going on; that we were not squaws, but warriors; that we were sent by our great father, who could in a moment exterminate them. The chief replied that he too had warriors, and was proceeding to offer personal violence to Captain Clarke, who immediately drew his sword, and made a signal to the boat to prepare for action. The Indians, who surrounded

him, drew their arrows from their quivers, and were bending their bows, when the swivel in the boat was instantly pointed towards them, and twelve of our most determined men jumped into the pirogue and joined Captain Clarke. This movement made an impression on them, for the grand chief ordered the young men away from the pirogue, and they withdrew and held a short council with the warriors. Being unwilling to irritate them, Captain Clarke then went forward, and offered his hand to the first and second chiefs, who refused to take it. He then turned from them and got into the pirogue; but he had not got more than ten paces, when both the chiefs and two of the warriors waded in after him, and he brought them on board. We then proceeded on for a mile, and anchored off a willow island, which, from the circumstances which had just occurred, we called Bad-humoured Island.

"September 26. Our conduct yesterday seemed to have inspired the Indians with fear of us; and as we were desirous of cultivating their acquaintance, we complied with their wish that we should give them an opportunity of treating us well, and also suffer their squaws and children to see us and our boat, which would be perfectly new to them. Accordingly, after passing, at one and a half miles, a small willow island and several sand-bars, we came to on the south side, where a crowd of men, women, and children were waiting to receive us. Captain Lewis went on shore, and remained several hours; and observing that their disposition was friendly, we resolved to remain during the night to a dance, which they were preparing for us. Captains Lewis and Clarke, who went on shore one after the other, were met on landing by ten well-dressed young men, who took them up in a robe, highly decorated, and carried them to a large council-house, where they were placed on a dressed buffalo skin by the side of the grand chief. The hall, or council-room, was in the

shape of three quarters of a circle, covered at the top and sides with skins well dressed and sewed together. Under this shelter sat about seventy men, forming a circle round the chief, before whom were placed a Spanish flag and the one we had given them yesterday. This left a vacant circle of about six feet diameter, in which the pipe of peace was raised on two forked sticks, about six or eight inches from the ground, and under it the down of the swan was scattered: a large fire, in which they were cooking provisions, stood near, and in the centre about four hundred pounds of excellent buffalo meat, as a present for us. As soon as we were seated an old man got up, and, after approving what we had done, begged us to take pity on their unfortunate situation. To this we replied with assurances of protection. After he had ceased, the great chief rose and delivered an harangue to the same effect; then, with great solemnity, he took some of the most delicate parts of the dog which was cooked for the festival, and held it to the flag by way of sacrifice; this done, he held up the pipe of peace, and first pointed it towards the heavens, then to the four quarters of the globe, and then to the earth, made a short speech, lighted the pipe, and presented it to us. We smoked, and he again harangued his people, after which the repast was served up to us. It consisted of the dog which they had just been cooking, this being a great dish among the Sioux, and used on all festivals; to this were added pemitigon, a dish made of buffalo meat, dried or jerked, and then pounded and mixed raw with grease and a kind of ground potato, dressed like the preparation of Indian corn called hommony, to which it is little inferior. Of all these luxuries, which were placed before us in platters with horn spoons, we took the pemitigon and the potato, which we found good, but we could as yet partake but sparingly of the dog.

"We ate and smoked for an hour, when it became

dark ; everything was then cleared away for the dance, a large fire being made in the centre of the house, giving at once light and warmth to the ball-room. The orchestra was composed of about ten men, who played on a sort of tambourine, formed of skin stretched across a hoop, and made a jingling noise with a long stick to which the hoofs of deer and goats were hung ; the third instrument was a small skin bag with pebbles in it : these, with five or six young men for the vocal part, made up the band. The women then came forward, highly decorated ; some with poles in their hands, on which were hung the scalps of their enemies ; others with guns, spears, or different trophies taken in war by their husbands, brothers, or connexions. Having arranged themselves in two columns, one on each side of the fire, as soon as the music began they danced towards each other till they met in the centre, when the rattles were shaken, and they all shouted and returned back to their places. They have no step, but shuffle along the ground ; nor does the music appear to be anything more than a confusion of noises, distinguished only by hard or gentle blows upon the buffalo skin : the song is perfectly extemporaneous. In the pauses of the dance, some man of the company comes forward and recites, in a sort of low guttural tone, some little story or incident, which is either martial or ludicrous, or, as was the case this evening, voluptuous and indecent ; this is taken up by the orchestra and the dancers, who repeat it in a higher strain, and dance to it. Sometimes they alternate ; the orchestra first performing, and when it ceases the women raise their voices, and make a music more agreeable, that is, less intolerable than that of the musicians. The dances of the men, which are always separate from those of the women, are conducted very nearly in the same way, except that the men jump up and down instead of shuffling ; and in the war dances the recitations are all of a military cast.

The harmony of the entertainment had nearly been disturbed by one of the musicians, who, thinking he had not received a due share of the tobacco we had distributed during the evening, put himself into a passion, broke one of the drums, threw two of them into the fire, and left the band. They were taken out of the fire : a buffalo robe, held in one hand and beaten with the other by several of the company, supplied the place of the lost drum or tambourine, and no notice was taken of the offensive conduct of the man. We stayed till twelve o'clock at night, when we informed the chiefs that they must be fatigued with all these attempts to amuse us, and retired, accompanied by four chiefs, two of whom spent the night with us on board.

" While on shore we saw twenty-five squaws and about the same number of children, who had been taken prisoners two weeks ago in a battle with their countrymen, the Mahas. In this engagement the Sioux destroyed forty lodges, killed seventy-five men, of whom we saw many of the scalps, and took these prisoners : their appearance is wretched and dejected ; the women, too, seem low in stature, coarse and ugly, though their present condition may diminish their beauty. We gave them a variety of small articles, such as awls and needles, and interceded for them with the chiefs, to whom we recommended to follow the advice of their great father, to restore the prisoners, and live in peace with the Mahas, which they promised to do.

" The tribe which we this day saw are a part of the great Sioux nation, and are known by the name of the Teton Okandandas : they are about two hundred men in number, and their chief residence is on both sides of the Missouri, between the Chayenne and Teton Rivers. In their persons they are rather ugly and ill-made, their legs and arms being too small, their cheek-bones high, and their eyes projecting. The females, with the same character of

form, are more handsome; and both sexes appear cheerful and sprightly; but in our intercourse with them we discovered that they were cunning and vicious.

"The men shave the hair off their heads, except a small tuft on the top, which they suffer to grow, and wear in plaits over the shoulders; to this they seem much attached, as the loss of it is the usual sacrifice at the death of near relations. In full dress, the men of consideration wear a hawk's feather, or calumet feather worked with porcupine quills, and fastened to the top of the head, from which it falls back. The face and body are generally painted with a mixture of grease and coal. Over the shoulders is a loose robe or mantle of buffalo skin dressed white, adorned with porcupine quills, loosely fixed, so as to make a jingling noise when in motion, and painted with various uncouth figures, unintelligible to us, but to them emblematic of military exploits or any other incident: the hair of the robe is worn next the skin in fair weather, but when it rains the hair is put outside, and the robe is either thrown over the arm or wrapped round the body, all of which it may cover. Under this, in the winter season, they wear a kind of shirt resembling ours, made either of skin or cloth, and covering the arms and body. Round the middle is fixed a girdle of cloth, or procured dressed elk-skin, about an inch in width, and closely tied to the body; to this is attached a piece of cloth, or blanket, or skin, about a foot wide, which passes between the legs, and is tucked under the girdle both before and behind. From the hip to the ankle is covered by leggins of dressed antelope skins, with seams at the sides two inches in width, and ornamented by little tufts of hair, the produce of the scalps they have made in war, which are scattered down the leg. The winter moccasins are of dressed buffalo skin, the hair being worn inward, and soled with thick elk-skin

parchment; those for summer are of deer or elk skin, dressed without the hair, and with soles of elk-skin. On great occasions, or whenever they are in full dress, the young men drag after them the entire skin of a polecat fixed to the heel of the moccasin. Another skin of the same animal is either tucked into the girdle, or carried in the hand, and serves as a pouch for their tobacco, or what the French traders call *bois roulé*: this is the inner bark of a species of red willow, which, being dried in the sun or over the fire, is rubbed between the hands and broken into small pieces, and is used alone, or mixed with tobacco. The pipe is generally of red earth, the stem made of ash, about three or four feet long, and highly decorated with feathers, hair, and porcupine quills.

"The hair of the women is suffered to grow long, and is parted from the forehead across the head, at the back of which it is either collected into a kind of bag, or hangs down over the shoulders. Their moccasins are like those of the men, as are also the leggins, which do not, however, reach beyond the knee, where they are met by a long loose shift of skin, which reaches nearly to the ancles; this is fastened over the shoulders by a string, and has no sleeves, but a few pieces of the skin hang a short distance round the arm. Sometimes a girdle fastens this skin round the waist, and over all is thrown a robe like that worn by the men. They seem fond of dress. Their lodges are very neatly constructed, in the same form as those of the Yanktons: they consist of about one hundred cabins (made of white buffalo hide dressed), with a larger one in the centre for holding councils and dances. They are built round with poles, about fifteen or twenty feet high, covered with white skins. These lodges may be taken to pieces, packed up, and carried with the nation wherever they go, by dogs which bear great burdens. The women are chiefly employed

in dressing buffalo skins : they seem perfectly well disposed, but are addicted to stealing anything which they can take without being observed. This nation, although it makes so many ravages among its neighbours, is badly supplied with guns. The water which they carry with them is contained chiefly in the paunches of deer and other animals, and they make use of wooden bowls. Some had their heads shaved, which we found was a species of mourning for their relations. Another usage on these occasions is to run arrows through the flesh, both above and below the elbow.

“ While on shore to-day, we witnessed a quarrel between two squaws, which appeared to be growing every moment more boisterous, when a man came forward, at whose approach every one seemed terrified and ran. He took the squaws, and without any ceremony whipped them severely. On inquiring into the nature of such summary justice, we learned that this man was an officer well known to this and many other tribes. His duty is to keep the peace ; and the whole interior police of the village is confided to two or three of these officers, who are named by the chief, and remain in power some days, at least till the chief appoints a successor : they seem to be a sort of constable or sentinel, since they are always on the watch to keep tranquillity during the day, and guarding the camp in the night. The short duration of their office is compensated by its authority. Their power is supreme, and in the suppression of any riot or disturbance no resistance to them is suffered ; their persons are sacred ; and if, in the execution of their duty, they strike even a chief of the second class, they cannot be punished for this salutary insolence. In general they accompany the person of the chief ; and when ordered to any duty, however dangerous, it is a point of honour rather to die than to refuse obedience. Thus, when they attempted to stop us yesterday, the chief

ordered one of these men to take possession of the boat; he immediately put his arms round the mast, and, as we understood, no force, except the command of the chief, would have induced him to release his hold. Like the other men, their bodies are blackened; but their distinguishing mark is a collection of two or three raven skins fastened to the girdle behind the back, in such a way that the tails stick out horizontally from the body. On his head, too, is a raven skin split into two parts, and tied so as to let the beak project from the forehead.

"September 27. We rose early, and the two chiefs took off, as a matter of course, and according to their custom, the blanket on which they had slept. To this we added a peck of corn, as a present to each. Captain Lewis and the chiefs went on shore to see a part of the nation that was expected, but did not come. He returned at two o'clock with four of the chiefs, and a warrior of distinction called Wadrappa (or On his Guard). They examined the boat, and admired whatever was strange during half an hour, when they left it with great reluctance. Captain Clarke accompanied them to the lodge of the grand chief, who invited them to a dance, where, being joined by Captain Lewis, they remained till a late hour. The dance was very similar to that of yesterday. About twelve we left them, taking the second chief and one principal warrior on board. As we came near the boat, the man who steered the pirogue by mistake brought her broadside against the boat's cable, and broke it. We called up all hands to their oars. But our noise alarmed the two Indians; they called out to their companions, and immediately the whole camp crowded to the shore; but after half an hour they returned, leaving about sixty men near us. The alarm given by the chiefs was said to be, that the Mahas had attacked us, and that they were desirous of assisting us to repel them. But we suspected that they were afraid we

meant to set sail, and intended to prevent us from doing so ; for in the night the Maha prisoners had told one of our men, who understood the language, that we were to be stopped. We therefore, without giving any indication of our suspicion, prepared everything for an attack, as the loss of our anchor obliged us to come near to a falling bank, very unfavourable for defence.

“ We were not mistaken in these opinions ; for when, in the morning, after dragging unsuccessfully for the anchor, we wished to set sail, it was with great difficulty that we could make the chiefs leave the boat. At length we got rid of all except the great chief, when, just as we were setting out, several of the chief's soldiers sat on the rope which held the boat to the shore. Irritated at this, we got everything ready to fire on them if they persisted ; but the great chief said that these were his soldiers, and only wanted some tobacco. We had already refused a flag and some tobacco to the second chief, who had demanded it with great importunity ; but, willing to leave them without going to extremities, we threw him a carrot of tobacco, saying to him, ‘ You have told us that you were a great man, and have influence ; now show your influence by taking the rope from those men, and we will then go on without any farther trouble.’ This appeal to his pride had the desired effect ; he went out of the boat, gave the soldiers the tobacco, and, pulling the rope out of their hands, delivered it on board, and we then set sail under a breeze from the southeast. After sailing about two miles, we observed the third chief beckoning to us : we took him on board, and he informed us that the rope had been held by the order of the second chief, who was a double-faced man. A little farther on we were joined by the son of the chief, who came on board to see his father. On his return we sent a speech to the nation, explaining what we had done, and advising them to

peace; but if they persisted in their attempts to stop us, we were willing and able to defend ourselves."

After spending four days in this manner with the Teton, they proceeded on their way. Stragglers of the unfriendly tribe they had just left appeared at times on the bank, and were disposed to be troublesome: at one place they saw an encampment of 400 of them. On the 1st of October they passed a river corruptly rendered Dog River, as if from the French "*chien*:" its true appellation is Chayenne, from the Indians of that name. The history of this tribe "is the short and melancholy relation of the calamities of almost all the Indians. They were a numerous people, and lived on the Chayenne, a branch of the Red River of Lake Winnipeg. The invasion of the Sioux drove them westward: in their progress they halted on the southern side of the Missouri, below the Warreconne, where their ancient fortifications still exist; but the same impulse again drove them to the heads of the Chayenne, where they now rove, and occasionally visit the Ricaras. They are now reduced, but still number three hundred men."

This river rises in the Black Mountains; and M. Vallé, one of three French traders whom they found here waiting for the Sioux coming down from the Ricaras, informed them that he had passed the last winter three hundred leagues up the Chayenne, under those mountains. "That river he represented as very rapid, liable to sudden swells, the bed and shores formed of coarse gravel, and difficult of ascent even for canoes. One hundred leagues from its mouth it divides into two branches, one coming from the south, the other, at forty leagues from the junction, entering the Black Mountains. The land which it waters, from the Missouri to the Black Mountains, resembles the country on the Missouri, except that the former has even less timber, and of

that the greater proportion is cedar. The Chayennes reside chiefly on the heads of the river, and steal horses from the Spanish settlement: a plundering excursion which they perform in a month's time. The Black Mountains, he observed, were very high, covered with great quantities of pine, and in some parts the snow remains during the summer. There are also great quantities of goats, white bear, prairie cocks, and a species of animal which, from his description, must resemble a small elk, with large circular horns."

They still continued to be annoyed at different times by the Tetons on the banks. The weather began to be very cold, with a white frost in the morning. On the 6th of October, they halted for dinner at a village which they supposed to have belonged to the Ricaras: "It is situated in a low plain on the river, and consists of about eighty lodges of an octagon form, neatly covered with earth, placed as close to each other as possible, and picketed round. The skin canoes, mats, buckets, and articles of furniture found in the lodges, led to the belief that it had been left in the spring."

The next day they passed the Sawawkawna; and just below its mouth was "another village or wintering camp of the Ricaras, composed of about sixty lodges, built in the same form as those passed the day before, with willow and straw mats, baskets, and buffalo-skin canoes remaining entire in the camp."

At a short distance above the Wetawhoo River they came to an island where was a village of the Ricaras, and which Captain Lewis went to see. "It is situated in the centre of the island, near the southern shore, under the foot of some high, bald, uneven hills, and contains about sixty lodges. The island itself is three miles long, and covered with fields in which the Indians raise corn, beans, and potatoes. Several Frenchmen, living among these

Indians as interpreters or traders, came back with Captain Lewis, and among them M. Gravelines, a man who has acquired the language."

"On the 9th," continues the narrative, "the wind was so cold and high last night, and during all the day, that we could not assemble the Indians in council; but some of the party went to the village. We received the visits of the three principal chiefs, with many others, to whom we gave some tobacco, and told them that we would speak to them to-morrow. The names of these chiefs were, first, Kaka-wissassa, or Lighting Crow; second chief, Pocasse, or Hay; third chief, Piahto, or Eagle's Feather. Notwithstanding the high waves, two or three squaws rowed to us in little canoes made of a single buffalo skin, stretched over a frame of boughs interwoven like a basket, and with the most perfect composure. The object which appeared to astonish the Indians most was Captain Clarke's servant York, a remarkably stout, strong negro. They had never seen a being of that colour, and therefore flocked round him to examine the extraordinary monster. By way of amusement, he told them that he had once been a wild animal, and been caught and tamed by his master; and to convince them, showed them feats of strength which, added to his looks, made him more terrible than we wished him to be."

The following morning, M. Gravelines, who had breakfasted with Captain Lewis, was sent to invite the Ricara chiefs to a conference. "They all assembled," says the Journal, "at one o'clock, and, after the usual ceremonies, we addressed them in the same way in which we had already spoken to the Ottoes and Sioux. We then made or acknowledged three chiefs, one for each of the three villages, giving to each a flag, a medal, a red coat, a cocked hat and feather, also some goods, paint, and tobacco, which they divided among themselves. After this the air-gun was exhibited, very much to their astonishment; nor were

they less surprised at the colour and manner of York. On our side, we were equally gratified at discovering that these Ricaras made use of no spirituous liquors of any kind; the example of the traders who bring it to them, so far from tempting, having in fact disgusted them. Supposing that it was as agreeable to them as to the other Indians, we had at first offered them whiskey; but they refused it with this sensible remark, *that they were surprised that their father should present to them a liquor which would make them fools.* On another occasion they observed to M. Tabeau, that no man could be a friend who tried to lead them into such follies. The council being over, they retired to consult on their answer.

"The next morning, at eleven o'clock, we again met in council at our camp. The grand chief made a short speech of thanks for the advice we had given, and promised to follow it; adding that the door was now open, and no one dare shut it, and that we might depart whenever we pleased, alluding to the treatment we had received from the Sioux. They also brought us some corn, beans, and dried squashes, and in return we gave them a steel mill, with which they were much pleased. At one o'clock we left our camp with the grand chief and his nephew on board, and at about two miles anchored below a creek on the south, separating the second and third village of the Ricaras, which are about half a mile distant from each other. We visited both the villages, and sat conversing with the chiefs for some time, during which they presented us with a bread made of corn and beans, also corn and beans boiled, and a large rich bean which they take from the mice of the prairie, who discover and collect it. These two villages are placed near each other in a high smooth prairie; a fine situation, except that, having no wood, the inhabitants are obliged to go for it across the river to a timbered lowland opposite to them. We told them that we would speak to them in the morning at their villages separately.

"Accordingly, after breakfast, we went on shore to the house of the chief of the second village, named Lassel, where we found his chiefs and warriors. They made us a present of about seven bushels of corn, a pair of leggins, a twist of their tobacco, and the seeds of two different species of tobacco. The chief then delivered a speech expressive of his gratitude for the presents and the good counsels which we had given him; his intention of visiting his great father but for fear of the Sioux; and requested us to take one of the Ricara chiefs up to the Mandans, and negotiate a peace between the two nations. To this we replied in a suitable way, and then repaired to the third village. Here we were addressed by the chief, in nearly the same terms as before, and entertained with a present of ten bushels of corn, some beans, dried pumpkins, and squashes. After we had answered, and explained the magnitude and power of the United States, the three chiefs came with us to the boat. We gave them some sugar, a little salt, and a sun-glass. Two of them then left us, and a chief of the third, by name Ahketahnasha, or Chief of the Town, accompanied us to the Mandans. At two o'clock we left the Indians, who crowded to the shore to take leave of us.

"The Ricaras were originally colonies of Pawnees, who established themselves on the Missouri, below the Chayenne, where the traders still remember that twenty years ago they occupied a number of villages. From that situation a part of the Ricaras emigrated to the neighbourhood of the Mandans, with whom they were then in alliance. The rest of the nation continued near the Chayenne till the year 1797, in the course of which, distressed by their wars with the Sioux, they joined their countrymen near the Mandans. Soon after a new war arose between the Ricaras and the Mandans, in consequence of which the former came down the river to their present position. In this migration, those

who had first gone to the Mandans kept together, and now live in the two lower villages, which may thence be considered as the Ricaras proper. The third village was composed of such remnants of the villages as had survived the wars; and as these were nine in number, a difference of pronunciation, and some difference of language may be observed between them and the Ricaras proper, who do not understand all the words of these wanderers. The villages are within the distance of four miles of each other, the two lower ones consisting of between one hundred and fifty and two hundred men each, the third of three hundred. The Ricaras are tall and well-proportioned, the women handsome and lively, and, as among other savages, to them falls all the drudgery of the field, and the labours of procuring subsistence, except that of hunting. Both sexes are poor, but kind and generous; and, although they receive with thankfulness what is given to them, do not beg as the Sioux did; though this praise should be qualified by mentioning that an axe was stolen last night from our cooks.

"The dress of the men is a simple pair of moccasins, leggins, and a cloth round the middle, over which a buffalo robe is occasionally thrown, with their hair, arms, and ears decorated with different ornaments. The women wear moccasins, leggins, a long shirt made of goats' skins, generally white and fringed, which is tied round the waist; to these they add, like the men, a buffalo robe without the hair in summer."

"* * * "The Ricara lodges are in a circular or octagonal form, and generally about thirty or forty feet in diameter. They are made by placing forked posts, about six feet high, round the circumference of the circle; these are joined by poles from one fork to another, which are supported also by other forked poles slanting from the ground. In the centre of the lodge are placed four higher forks, about

fifteen feet in length, connected together by beams; from these to the lower poles the rafters are extended so as to leave a vacancy in the middle for the smoke. The frame of the building is then covered with willow branches, with which is interwoven grass, and over this mud or clay; the aperture for the door is about four feet wide, and before it is a sort of entry, about ten feet from the lodge. They are very warm and compact.

"They cultivate maize or Indian corn, beans, pumpkins, watermelons, squashes, and a species of tobacco peculiar to themselves.

"Their commerce is chiefly with the traders, who supply them with goods in return for peltries, which they procure not only by their own hunting, but in exchange for corn from their less civilized neighbours. The object chiefly in demand seemed to be red paint; but they would give anything they had to spare for the most trifling article. One of the men to-day gave an Indian a hook made out of a pin, and he gave him in return a pair of moccasins.

"They express a disposition to keep at peace with all nations; but they are well-armed with fusils, and, being much under the influence of the Sioux, who exchange the goods which they get from the British for Ricara corn, their minds are sometimes poisoned, and they cannot be always depended on. At the present moment they are at war with the Mandans."

* * * "In the morning of the 13th our visitors left us, except the brother of the chief who accompanies us and one of the squaws. We passed at an early hour a camp of Sioux on the north bank, who merely looked at us without saying a word, and, from the character of the tribe, we did not solicit a conversation. At ten and a half miles we reached the mouth of a creek on the north, which takes its rise from some ponds a short distance to the northeast. To this stream we gave the name of Stone

Idol Creek ; for, after passing a willow and sand island just above its mouth, we discovered that, a few miles back from the Missouri, there are two stones resembling human figures, and a third like a dog, all which are objects of great veneration among the Ricaras. Their history would adorn the Metamorphoses of Ovid. A young man was deeply enamoured with a girl whose parents refused their consent to the marriage. The youth went out into the fields to mourn his misfortunes ; a sympathy of feeling led the lady to the same spot ; and the faithful dog would not cease to follow his master. After wandering together, and having nothing but grapes to subsist on, they were at last converted into stone, which, beginning at the feet, gradually invaded the nobler parts, leaving nothing unchanged but a bunch of grapes, which the female holds in her hands to this day. Whenever the Ricaras pass these sacred stones, they stop to make some offering of dress to propitiate these deities. Such is the account given by the Ricara chief, which we had no mode of examining, except that we found one part of the story very agreeably confirmed ; for on the river near where the said event is said to have occurred, we found a greater abundance of fine grapes than we had yet seen."

*** "Above the Ricara Island the Missouri becomes narrow and deeper, the sand-bars being generally confined to the points ; the current, too, is much more gentle ; the timber on the lowlands is also in much greater quantities, though the high grounds are still naked."

On their route the next day, corporeal punishment was inflicted on one of the soldiers. "This operation," says the journalist, "affected the Indian chief very sensibly, for he cried aloud during the punishment. We explained the offence and the reasons of it : he acknowledged that examples were necessary, and that he himself had given them by pun-

ishing with death; but his nation never whipped even children from their birth."

During their progress on the 16th they fell in with several small encampments of Ricaras, with whom the ordinary civilities were exchanged. "As we proceeded," continues the narrative, "there were great numbers of goats on the banks of the river, and we soon after saw large flocks of them in the water. They had been gradually driven into the river by the Indians, who now lined the shore so as to prevent their escape, and were firing on them; while sometimes boys went into the river and killed them with sticks. They seemed to be very successful, for we counted fifty-eight which they had killed. We ourselves killed some, and then passing the lodges to which these Indians belonged, encamped at the distance of half a mile on the south, having made fourteen and a half miles. We were soon visited by numbers of these Ricaras, who crossed the river hallooing and singing. Two of them then returned for some goats' flesh and buffalo meat dried and fresh, with which they made a feast that lasted till late at night, and caused much music and merriment."

Great numbers of goats were seen by them for several days, coming to the north bank of the river. "These animals," M. Gravelines stated, "spend the summer in the plains east of the Missouri, and return in the autumn to the Black Mountains, where they subsist on leaves and shrubbery during the winter, and resume their migrations in the spring."

At Le Boulet, or Cannonball River, so called from the number of large round stones on the shore, they met, on the 18th, with two Frenchmen in the employ of M. Gravelines, who had been robbed by the Mandans of their traps, furs, and other articles, and who were descending the river in a pirogue; but they turned back with the party in expectation of obtaining redress through their means.

As they proceeded on the 19th, the banks of the Missouri on both sides presented low grounds, much better timbered than those farther down the river. The hills were at one or two miles' distance from the shore, and the streams which flowed from them were brackish, the mineral salts appearing on the sides of the hills and edges of the runs. In walking along the shore they counted no less than fifty-two herds of buffalo, and three of elk, at a single view; also deer, pelicans, and wolves. They encamped opposite to the uppermost of a number of round hills, forming a cone at the top, one of them ninety feet in height. The chief who was with them stated that the calumet bird lived in the holes formed by the filtration of the water from the top of these hills through the sides. Near by, on the point of a hill ninety feet above the plain, were the remains of an old village, which was strong, and had been fortified. This, the chief informed them, was the remains of one of the Mandan villages; and they were the first ruins they had seen of that nation in ascending the Missouri.

The next day they came to the remains of another village of the Mandans, who, the Ricara chief said, once occupied a number of villages on either side of the river, till the Sioux forced them forty miles higher up; whence, after a few years' residence, they moved to their present position. "We have seen," continues the narrative, "great numbers of elk, deer, goats, and buffalo, and the usual attendants of these last, the wolves, who follow their movements, and feed upon those who die by accident, or who are too poor to keep pace with the herd: we also wounded a white bear, and saw some fresh tracks of those animals, which are twice as large as the track of a man."

Soon after starting on the 21st, they came to the Chisshetaw Creek, some distance up which, the Ricara chief stated, was "a large rock, which was held

in great veneration, and visited by parties who go to consult it as to their own or their nations' destinies, all of which they discern in some sort of figures or paintings with which it is covered. About two miles off from the mouth of the river, the party on shore saw another of the objects of Ricara superstition: it is a large oak-tree, standing alone in the open prairie; and as it, alone, has withstood the fire which has consumed everything around, the Indians naturally ascribe to it extraordinary powers. One of their ceremonies is to make a hole in the skin of their necks, through which a string is passed, and the other end tied to the body of the tree; and after remaining in this way for some time, they think they become braver."

The weather was now growing colder, with some snow; notwithstanding which, a party of the Sioux which they fell in with had on no other covering than a piece of cloth or of skin about the middle. Within the distance of twenty miles, they had passed the ruins of no less than nine villages of the Mandans. Nearly all that remained of them were the wall by which they were surrounded, the fallen heaps of earth which covered the houses, and occasionally human skulls, and the teeth and bones of men and of different animals, which were scattered on the surface of the ground.

On the 24th of October they came to a large island, on which they found one of the grand chiefs of the Mandans, who was on a hunting excursion. He met his enemy, the Ricara chief, with great ceremony and apparent cordiality, and smoked with him; and, after visiting his lodges, the grand chief and his brother came on board their boat for a short time. They encamped on the north side, below an old village of the Mandans and Ricaras. Here four Mandans came down from a camp above, and the Ricara chief returned with them to their camp, which was considered a favourable augury of their pacific views towards each other.

The weather continued cold, and after passing several deserted Indian villages the next day, parties of the Mandans, both on foot and horseback, came along the river to view them, and were very desirous that they should land and talk to them. But as they were unable to do this, on account of the sand-breaks on the shore, they sent their Ricara chief to them in a pirogue.

After putting the Ricara chief again on shore, on the 26th, to join the Mandans, who were in great numbers, they proceeded to the camp of the grand chiefs. "Here we met," says the Journal, "a Mr. M'Cracken, one of the Northwest or Hudson's Bay Company, who arrived with another person about nine days ago, to trade for horses and buffalo robes. Two of the chiefs came on board with some of their household furniture, such as earthen pots and a little corn, and went on with us: the rest of the Indians following on shore. At one mile beyond the camp we passed a small creek, and at three more a bluff of coal, of an inferior quality, on the south. After making eleven miles we reached an old field, where the Mandans had cultivated grain last summer, and encamped for the night on the south side, about half a mile below the first village of the Mandans." * * * * "As soon as we arrived, a crowd of men, women, and children came down to see us. Captain Lewis returned with the principal chiefs to the village, while the others remained with us during the evening. The object which seemed to surprise them most was a corn-mill fixed to the boat, which we had occasion to use, and which delighted them by the ease with which it reduced the grain to powder. Among others who visited us was the son of the grand chief of the Mandans, who had his two little fingers cut off at the second joint. On inquiring into this accident, we found that it was customary to express grief for the death of relations by some corporeal suffering, and that the usual mode was to lose two joints of the little finger, or sometimes the other fingers."

CHAPTER V.

Council held with the Mandans.—A Prairie on Fire, and a singular Instance of Preservation.—Peace established between the Mandans and Ricaras.—The Party encamp for the Winter.—Indian Mode of catching Goats.—Beautiful Appearance of Northern Lights.—Friendly Character of the Indians.—Some Account of the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetarees.—The Party acquire the Confidence of the Mandans by taking part in their Controversy with the Sioux.—Religion of the Mandans, and their singular Conception of the term *Medicine*.—Their Tradition.—The Sufferings of the Party from the Severity of the Season.—Indian Game of Billiards described.—Account of the Sioux.

“OCTOBER 27. At an early hour we proceeded, and anchored off the village. Captain Clarke went on shore, and, after smoking a pipe with the chiefs, was desired to remain and eat with them. He declined on account of his being unwell; but his refusal gave great offence to the Indians, who considered it disrespectful not to eat when invited, till the cause was explained to their satisfaction. We sent them some tobacco, and then proceeded to the second village on the north, passing by a bank containing coal, and a second village, and encamped at four miles on the north, opposite to a village of Ahnahaways. We here met with a Frenchman named Jesseaume, who lives among the Indians with his wife and children, and whom we take as an interpreter. The Indians had flocked to the bank to see us as we passed, and they visited in great numbers the camp, where some remained all night.

“We sent in the evening three young Indians with a present of tobacco for the chiefs of the three upper villages, inviting them to come down in the morning to a council with us. Accordingly, the

next day we were joined by many of the Minnetarees and Ahnahaways from above, but the wind was so violent from the southwest that the chiefs of the lower villages could not come up, and the council was deferred till to-morrow. In the mean while we entertained our visitors by showing them what was new to them in the boat; all which, as well as our black servant, they called Great Medicine, the meaning of which we afterward learned. We also consulted the grand chief of the Mandans, Black Cat, and M. Jessaume, as to the names, characters, &c., of the chiefs with whom we are to hold the council. In the course of the day we received several presents from the women, consisting of corn, boiled homony, and garden stuffs: in our turn, we gratified the wife of the great chief with the gift of a glazed earthen jar. Our hunter brought us two beaver. In the afternoon we sent the Minnetaree chiefs to smoke for us with the great chiefs of the Mandans, and told them we would speak in the morning.

“ Finding that we shall be obliged to pass the winter at this place, we went up the river about one and a half miles to-day, with a view of finding a convenient spot for a fort; but the timber was too scarce and small for our purposes.

“ October 29. The morning was fine, and we prepared our presents and speech for the council. After breakfast we were visited by an old chief of the Ahnahaways, who, finding himself growing old and weak, had transferred his power to his son, who is now at war against the Shoshonees. At ten o'clock the chiefs were all assembled under an awning of our sails, stretched so as to exclude the wind, which had become high. That the impression might be the more forcible, the men were all paraded, and the council opened by a discharge from the swivel of the boat. We then delivered a speech, which, like those we had already made, intermingled advice with assurances of friendship and trade.

While we were speaking the old Ahnahaway chief grew very restless, and observed that he could not wait long, as his camp was exposed to the hostilities of the Shoshonees. He was instantly rebuked with great dignity by one of the chiefs, for this violation of decorum at such a moment, and remained quiet during the rest of the council. Towards the end of our speech we introduced the subject of our Ricara chief, with whom we recommended a firm peace: to this they seemed well disposed, and all smoked with him very amicably. We all mentioned the goods which had been taken from the Frenchman, and expressed a wish that they should be restored. This being over, we proceeded to distribute the presents with great ceremony. One chief of each town was acknowledged by a gift of a flag, a medal with the likeness of the President of the United States, a uniform coat, hat, and feather. To the second chiefs we gave a medal representing some domestic animals, and a loom for weaving; to the third chiefs, medals with the impression of a farmer sowing grain. A variety of other presents were distributed, but none seemed to give them more satisfaction than an iron corn-mill, which we gave to the Mandans.

"The chiefs who were made to-day are Shaha-ka, or Big White, a first chief, and Kagohami, or Little Raven, a second chief of the lower village of the Mandans, called Matootonha. The other chiefs of an inferior quality who were recommended were, first, Ohheenaw, or Big Man, a Chayenne taken prisoner by the Mandans, who adopted him, and he now enjoys great consideration among the tribe; second, Shotahawrora, or Coal, of the second Mandan village, which is called Rooptahee. We made Poscopseah, or Black Cat, the first chief of the village, and the grand chief of the whole Mandan nation; his second chief is Kagonomokshe, or Raven Man Chief. Inferior chiefs of this village were, Tawnu-

heo, and Bellahsara, of which we did not learn the translation.

"In the third village, which is called Mahawha, and where the Arwacahwas reside, we made one first chief, Tetuckopinreha, or White Buffalo Robe Unfolded, and recognised two of an inferior order : Minnissurraree, or Neighing Horse, and Locongotiha, or Old Woman at a Distance.

"Of the fourth village, where the Minnetarees live, and which is called Metaharta, we made a first chief, Ompsehara, or Black Mocoasin; a second chief, Ohhaw, or Little Fox. Other distinguished chiefs of this village were, Mahnotah, or Big Thief, a man whom we did not see, as he is out fighting, and was killed soon after; and Mahserassa, or Tail of the Calumet Bird. In the fifth village we made a first chief, Eapanopa, or Red Shield; a second chief, Wankerassa, or Two-tailed Calumet Bird, both young chiefs. Other persons of distinction are, Shahakohopinnee, or Little Wolf's Medicine; Ahrattanamockshe, or Wolfman Chief, who is now at war, and is the son of the old chief we have mentioned, whose name is Caltahcota, or Cherry on a Bush.

"The presents intended for the grand chief of the Minnetarees, who was not at the council, were sent to him by the old chief Caltahcota; and we delivered to a young chief those intended for the chief of the lower village. The council was concluded by a shot from our swivel, and, after firing the air-gun for their amusement, they retired to deliberate on the answer which they are to give to-morrow.

"In the evening the prairie took fire, either by accident or design, and burned with great fury, the whole plain being enveloped in flames. So rapid was its progress that a man and a woman were burned to death before they could reach a place of safety; another man, with his wife and child, were much burned, and several other persons narrowly escaped

destruction. Among the rest, a boy of the half-white breed escaped unhurt in the midst of the flames; his safety was ascribed to the *great medicine spirit*, who had preserved him on account of his being white. But a much more natural cause was the presence of mind of his mother, who, seeing no hopes of carrying off her son, threw him on the ground, and, covering him with the fresh hide of a buffalo, escaped herself from the flames. As soon as the fire had passed, she returned and found him untouched, the skin having prevented the flame from reaching the grass on which he lay.

"October 30. We were this morning visited by two persons from the lower village: one, the Big White, the chief of the village; the other, the Chayenne, called the Big Man: they had been hunting, and did not return yesterday early enough to attend the council. At their request we repeated part of our speech of yesterday, and put the medal round the neck of the chief. Captain Clarke took a pirogue and went up the river in search of a good wintering-place, and returned after going seven miles to the lower point of an island on the north side, about one mile in length. He found the banks on the north side high, with coal occasionally, and the country fine on all sides; but the want of wood, and the scarcity of game up the river, induced us to decide on fixing ourselves lower down during the winter. In the evening our men danced among themselves, to the great amusement of the Indians.

"October 31. A second chief arrived this morning with an invitation from the grand chief of the Mandans to come to his village, where he wished to present some corn to us, and to speak with us. Captain Clarke walked down to his village. He was first seated with great ceremony on a robe by the side of the chief, who then threw over his shoulders another robe handsomely ornamented; the pipe was then smoked with several of the old men, who

were seated around the chief. After some time he began his discourse by observing that he believed what we had told him, and, that they should enjoy peace, which would gratify him as well as his people, because they could then hunt without fear of being attacked, and the women might work in the fields without looking every moment for the enemy, and at night put off their moccasins : a phrase by which is conveyed the idea of security, when the women could undress at night without fear of attack. As to the Ricaras, he continued, in order to show you that we wish peace with all men, that chief, pointing to his second chief, will go with some warriors back to the Ricaras with their chief now here, and smoke with that nation. When we heard of your coming, all the nations around returned from their hunting to see you, in hopes of receiving large presents ; all are disappointed, and some discontented ; for his part, he was not much so, though his village was. He added that he would go and see his great father the president. Two of the steel-traps stolen from the Frenchmen were then laid before Captain Clarke, and the women brought about twelve bushels of corn. After the chief had finished, Captain Clarke made an answer to the speech, and then returned to the boat, where he found the chief of the third village and Kagohami, the Little Raven, who smoked and talked about an hour. After they left the boat the grand chief of the Mandans came dressed in the clothes we had given him, with his two children, and begged to see the men dance, in which they willingly gratified him.

“ November 1. Mr. M’Cracken, the trader whom we found here, set out to-day on his return to the British fort and factory on the Assiniboin River, about one hundred and fifty miles from this place. He took a letter from Captain Lewis to the Northwest Company, enclosing a copy of the passport granted by the British minister in the United States.

At ten o'clock the chiefs of the lower village arrived; they requested that we would call at their village for some corn; said that they were willing to make peace with the Ricaras; that they had never provoked the war between them; but as the Ricaras had killed some of their chiefs, they had retaliated on them; that they had killed them like birds till they were tired of killing them, so that they would send a chief and some warriors to smoke with them. In the evening we dropped down to the lower village, where Captain Lewis went on shore, and Captain Clarke proceeded to a point of wood on the north side.

"November 2. He therefore went up to the village, where eleven bushels of corn were presented to him. In the mean time Captain Clarke went down with the boats three miles, and, having found a good position where there was plenty of timber, encamped, and began to fell trees to build our huts. Our Ricara chief set out with one Mandan chief, and several Minnetaree and Mandan warriors: the wind was from the southeast, and the weather being fine, a crowd of Indians came down to visit us.

"November 3. We now began the building of our cabins, and the Frenchmen who were to return to St. Louis are building a pirogue for the purpose. We sent six men in a pirogue to hunt down the river. We were also fortunate enough to engage in our service a Canadian Frenchman, who had been with the Chayenne Indians on the Black Mountains, and last summer descended thence by the Little Missouri. M. Jessaume, our interpreter, also came down with his squaw and children to live at our camp. In the evening we received a visit from Kaghomi, or Little Raven, whose wife accompanied him, bringing about sixty pounds' weight of dried meat, a robe, and a pot of meal. We gave him, in return, a piece of tobacco, to his wife an axe and a few small articles, and both of them spent the night at our camp. Two beavers were caught in traps this morning.

"November 4. We continued our labours: the timber which we employ is large and heavy, and consists chiefly of cottonwood and elm, with some ash of an inferior size. Great numbers of the Indians pass our camp on their hunting excursions: the day was clear and pleasant; but last night was very cold, and there was a white frost.

"November 5. The Indians are all out on their hunting parties: a camp of Mandaps caught within two days one hundred goats a short distance below us. Their mode of hunting them is to form a large strong pen or fold, from which a fence, made of bushes, gradually widens on each side: the animals are surrounded by the hunters, and gently driven towards this pen, in which they imperceptibly find themselves enclosed, and are then at the mercy of the hunters. The weather is cloudy, and the wind moderate from the northwest. Late at night we were awakened by the sergeant on guard, to see the beautiful phenomenon called the northern light. Along the northern sky was a large space, occupied by a light of a pale but brilliant white colour, which, rising from the horizon, extended itself to nearly twenty degrees above it. After glittering for some time, its colours would be overcast, and almost obscured, but again it would burst out with renewed beauty: the uniform colour was pale light, but its shapes were various and fantastic. At times the sky was lined with light-coloured streaks, rising perpendicularly from the horizon, and gradually expanding into a body of light, in which we could trace the floating columns sometimes advancing, sometimes retreating, and shaping into infinite forms the space in which they moved. It all faded away before the morning.

"November 6. M. Gravelines, and four others who came with us, returned to the Ricaras in a small pirogue: we gave him directions to accompany some of the Ricara chiefs to the seat of government in the spring.

"November 7. The day was temperate, but cloudy and foggy, and we were enabled to go on with our work with much expedition.

"November 8. The morning again cloudy: our huts advance very well, and we are visited by numbers of Indians, who come to let their horses graze near us. In the day the horses are let loose in quest of grass; in the night they are collected, and receive an armful of small boughs of the cottonwood, which, being very juicy, soft, and brittle, form nutritious and agreeable food. The frost this morning was very severe, the weather during the day cloudy, and the wind from the northwest. We procured from an Indian a weasel, perfectly white except the extremity of the tail, which was black. Great numbers of wild geese are passing to the south, but their flight is too high for us to procure any of them.

"November 10. We had again a raw day, a northwest wind, but rose early in the hope of finishing our work before the extreme cold begins. A chief, who is a half Pawnee, came to us and brought a present of half a buffalo, in return for which we gave him some small presents, and a few articles to his wife and son. He then crossed the river in a buffalo-skin canoe: his wife took the boat on her back, and carried it to the village, three miles off. Large flocks of geese and brant, and also a few ducks, are passing towards the south.

"November 11. The weather is cold. We received the visit of two squaws, prisoners from the Rock Mountains, and purchased by Chaboneau. The Mandans at this time are out hunting the buffalo.

"November 12. The last night has been cold, and this morning we had a very hard frost: the wind changeable during the day, and some ice appears on the edges of the rivers; swans, too, are passing to the south. The Big White came down to us, having packed on the back of his squaw about one hundred pounds of very fine meat, for which we gave

him, as well as the squaw, some presents, particularly an axe to the woman, with which she was very much pleased.

"November 13. We this morning unloaded the boat, and stowed away the contents in a storehouse which we have built. At half past ten ice began to flow down the river for the first time. In the course of the morning we were visited by the Black Cat, Poscapsahe, who brought an Assiniboin chief and seven warriors to see us. This man, whose name is Chechawk, is a chief of one out of three bands of Assiniboins, who wander over the plains between the Missouri and Assiniboin during the summer, and in the winter carry the spoils of their hunting to the traders on the Assiniboin River, and occasionally come to this place: the whole three bands consist of about eight hundred men. We gave him a twist of tobacco to smoke with his people, and a gold cord for himself: the Sioux also asked for whiskey, which we refused to give them. It snowed all day, and the air was very cold.

"November 14. The river rose last night half an inch, and is now filled with floating ice: this morning was cloudy, with some snow. About seventy lodges of Assiniboins and some Knistenaux are at the Mandan village; and, this being the day of adoption and exchange of property between them all, it is accompanied by a dance, which prevents our seeing more than two Indians to-day. These Knistenaux are a band of Chippeways, whose language they speak: they live on the Assiniboin and Saskatchewan Rivers, and are about two hundred and forty men. We sent a man down on horseback to see what had become of our hunters, and, as we apprehend a failure of provisions, we have recourse to our pork this evening. Two Frenchmen who had been below returned with twenty beaver, which they had caught in traps.

"November 15. The morning again cloudy, and

the ice running thicker than yesterday, the wind variable. The man came back with information that our hunters were about thirty miles below, and we immediately sent an order to them to make their way through the floating ice, to assist them in which we sent some tin for the bow of the pirogue, and a tow-rope. The ceremony of yesterday seems to continue still, for we were not visited by a single Indian. The swan are still passing to the south.

"November 16. We had a very hard white frost this morning; the trees are all covered with ice, and the weather cloudy. The men this day moved into the huts, although they are not finished. In the evening some horses were sent down to the woods near us, in order to prevent their being stolen by the Assiniboin, with whom some difficulty is now apprehended. An Indian came down with four buffalo robes and some corn, which he offered for a pistol, but was refused.

"November 17. Last night was very cold, and the ice in the river to-day is thicker than hitherto. We are totally occupied with our huts, but received visits from several Indians.

"November 18. To-day we had a cold windy morning: the Black Cat came to see us, and occupied us for a long time with questions on the usages of our country. He mentioned that a council had been held yesterday to deliberate on the state of their affairs. It seems that, not long ago, a party of Sioux fell in with some horses belonging to the Minetarees, and carried them off; but in their flight they were met by some Assiniboin, who killed the Sioux and kept the horses. A Frenchman, too, who had lived many years among the Mandans, was lately killed on his route to the British Factory on the Assiniboin: some smaller differences existed between the two nations, all of which being discussed, the council decided that they would not resent the recent insults from the Assiniboin and Knistenaux

until they had seen whether we had deceived them or not in our promises of furnishing them with arms and ammunition. They had been disappointed in their hopes of receiving them from Mr. Evans, and were afraid that we too, like him, might tell them what was not true. We advised them to continue at peace; that supplies of every kind would no doubt arrive for them, but that time was necessary to organize the trade. The fact is, that the Assiniboina treat the Mandans as the Sioux do the Ricaras: by their vicinity to the British they get all the supplies, which they withhold or give at pleasure to the remoter Indians; the consequence is, that, however badly treated, the Mandans and Ricaras are very slow to retaliate, lest they should lose their trade altogether.

"November 19. The ice continues to float in the river, the wind high from the northwest, and the weather cold. Our hunters arrived from their excursion below, and bring a very fine supply of thirty-two deer, eleven elk, and five buffaloes, all of which were hung in a smokehouse.

"November 20. We this day moved into our huts, which are now completed. This place, which we call Fort Mandan, is situated on a point of low ground on the north side of the Missouri, covered with tall and heavy cottonwood. The works consist of two rows of huts or sheds, forming an angle where they join each other; each row containing four rooms, of fourteen feet square and seven feet high, with plank ceiling, and the roof slanting so as to form a loft above the rooms, the highest part of which is eighteen feet from the ground. The backs of the huts form a wall of that height, and opposite the angle the place of the wall is supplied by picketing. In the area are two rooms for stores and provisions. The latitude, by observation, is $47^{\circ} 21' 47''$, and the computed distance from the mouth of the Missouri sixteen hundred miles.

"In the course of the day several Indians came down to partake of our fresh meat; among the rest, three chiefs of the second Mandan village. They inform us that the Sioux on the Missouri, above the Chayenne River, threaten to attack them this winter; that these Sioux are much irritated at the Ricaras for having made peace through our means with the Mandans, and have lately ill-treated three Ricaras, who carried the pipe of peace to them, by beating them, and taking away their horses. We gave them assurances that we would protect them from all their enemies.

"November 21. The weather was this day fine, the river clear of ice, and rising a little. We are now settled in our new winter habitation, and shall wait with much anxiety the first return of spring to continue our journey.

"The villages near which we are established are five in number, and are the residence of three distinct nations: the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minetarees. The history of the Mandans, as we received it from our interpreters and from the chiefs themselves, and as it is attested by existing monuments, illustrates, more than that of any other, the unsteady movements and the tottering fortunes of the American nations. Within the recollection of living witnesses, the Mandans were settled, forty years ago, in nine villages (the ruins of which we passed about eighty miles below), situated seven on the west and two on the east side of the Missouri. The two finding themselves wasting away before the smallpox and the Sioux, united into one village, and moved up the river opposite to the Ricaras. The same causes reduced the remaining seven to five villages, till at length they emigrated in a body to the Ricara nation, where they formed themselves into two villages, and joined those of their countrymen who had gone before them. In their new residence they were still insecure, and at length the

three villages ascended the Missouri to their present position. The two who had emigrated together settled in the two villages on the northwest side of the Missouri, while the single village took a position on the southeast side. In this situation they were found by those who visited them in 1796, since which the two villages have united into one. They are now in two villages, one on the southeast of the Missouri, the other on the opposite side, and at the distance of three miles across. The first, in an open plain, contains about forty or fifty lodges, built in the same way as those of the Ricaras; the second, the same number; and both may raise about three hundred and fifty men.

"On the same side of the river, and at the distance of four miles from the lower Mandan village, is another, called Mahaha. It is situated on a high plain, at the mouth of Knife River, and is the residence of the Ahnahaways. This nation, whose name indicates that they were "people whose village is on a hill," formerly resided on the Missouri, about thirty miles below where they now live. The Assiniboin and Sioux forced them to a spot five miles higher, where the greatest part of them were put to death, and the rest emigrated to their present situation, in order to obtain an asylum near the Minnetarees. They are called by the French, Soulier Noir, or Black Shoe Indians; by the Mandans, Wattasoons; and their whole force is about fifty men.

"On the south side of the same Knife River, half a mile above the Mahaha, and in the same open plain with it, is a village of the Minnetarees, surnamed Metaharta, who are about one hundred and fifty men in number. On the opposite side of Knife River, and one and a half miles above this village, is a second of Minnetarees, who may be considered as the proper Minnetaree nation. It is situated in a beautiful low plain, and contains four hundred and fifty warriors. The accounts which we received of

the Minnetarees were contradictory. The Mandans say that this people came out of the water to the East, and settled near them in their former establishment in nine villages; that they were very numerous, and fixed themselves in one village on the southern side of the Missouri. A quarrel about a buffalo divided the nation, of which two bands went into the plains, and were known by the name of Crow and Paunch Indians, and the rest moved to their present establishment. The Minnetarees proper assert, on the contrary, that they grew where they now live, and will never emigrate from the spot, the Great Spirit having declared that if they moved they would all die. They also say that the Minnetarees Metaharta, that is, Minnetarees of the Willows, whose language, with very little variation, is their own, came many years ago from the plains, and settled near them; and perhaps the two traditions may be reconciled by the natural presumption that these Minnetarees were the tribe known to the Mandans below, and that they ascended the river for the purpose of rejoining the Minnetarees proper. These Minnetarees are part of the great nation called Fall Indians, who occupy the intermediate country between the Missouri and the Saskashawan, and who are known by the name of Minnetarees of the Missouri and Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie; that is, residing near, or, rather, frequenting the establishment in the prairie on the Saskashawan. These Minnetarees, indeed, told us that they had relations on the Saskashawan, whom they had never known till they met them in war; and, having engaged in the night, were astonished at discovering that they were fighting with men who spoke their own language. The name of Gros Ventres, or Big Bellies, is given to these Minnetarees, as well as to all the Fall Indians. The inhabitants of these five villages, all of which are within the distance of six miles, live in harmony with each other. The Ah-

nahaways understand, in part, the language of the Minnetarees; the dialect of the Mandans differs widely from both; but their long residence together has insensibly blended their manners, and occasioned some approximation in language, particularly as to objects of daily occurrence, and obvious to the senses.

"November 22. The morning was fine and the day warm. We purchased from the Mandans a quantity of corn of a mixed colour, which they dug up in ears from holes made near the front of their lodges, in which it is buried during the winter. This morning the sentinel informed us that an Indian was about to kill his wife near the fort: we went down to the house of our interpreter, where we found the parties, and, after forbidding any violence, inquired into the cause of his intending to commit such an atrocity. It appeared that some days ago a quarrel had taken place between him and his wife, in consequence of which she had taken refuge in the house where the two squaws of our interpreter lived. By running away she forfeited her life, which might have been lawfully taken by the husband. About two days ago she had returned to the village, but the same evening came back to the fort, much beaten, and stabbed in three places; and the husband came now for the purpose of completing his revenge." * * * "We gave him a few presents, and tried to persuade him to take his wife home: the grand chief, too, happened to arrive at the same moment, and reproached him with his violence, till at length they went off together, but by no means in a state of much apparent love."

Nothing particularly interesting occurred for several days. Their huts were completed on the 25th, and it set in intensely cold immediately after. On the 27th, Captain Lewis, who had been absent on a visit to the Indian villages, "returned with two chiefs, Mahnotah, an Ahnahaway, and Minnessurra-

ree, a Minnetaree, and a third warrior. They explained to us," continues the narrative, "that the reason of their not having come to see us was, that the Mandans had told them that we meant to combine with the Sioux, and cut them off in the course of the winter: a suspicion increased by the strength of the fort, and the circumstance of our interpreters having both removed there with their families. These reports we did not fail to disprove to their entire satisfaction; and amused them by every attention, particularly by the dancing of the men, which diverted them highly. All the Indians whom Captain Lewis had visited were very well disposed, and received him with great kindness, except a principal chief of one of the upper villages, named Mahpahpapurapassatoo, or Horned Weasel, who made use of the *civilized indecorum of refusing to be seen*; and, when Captain Lewis called, he was told the chief *was not at home*. In the course of the day seven of the Northwest Company's traders arrived from the Assiniboin River, and one of their interpreters having undertaken to circulate among the Indians unfavourable reports, it became necessary to warn them of the consequences, if they did not desist from such proceedings. The river fell two inches to-day, and the weather became very cold.

"November 28. About eight o'clock last evening it began to snow, and continued till daybreak, after which it ceased till seven o'clock, but then resumed, and continued during the day, the weather being cold, and the river full of floating ice. About eight o'clock Poscopsahe came down to visit us, with some warriors: we gave them presents, and entertained them with all that might amuse their curiosity, and at parting we told them that we had heard of the British trader, M. Laroche, having attempted to distribute medals and flags among them, but that those medals could not be received from any other than the American nation without incurring the dis-

pleasure of their great father, the president. They left us much pleased with their treatment.

" November 29. The wind is again from the northwest, the weather cold, and the snow which fell yesterday and last night is thirteen inches in depth. The river closed during the night at the village above, and fell two feet ; but this afternoon it began to rise a little. M. Laroche, the principal of the seven traders, came with one of his men to see us. We told him that we should not permit him to give medals and flags to the Indians ; he declared that he had no such intention, and we then suffered him to make use of one of our interpreters, on his stipulating not to touch any subject but that of his traffic with them. An unfortunate accident occurred to Sergeant Pryor, who, in taking down the boat's mast, dislocated his shoulder ; nor was it till after four trials that we replaced it.

" November 30. About eight o'clock an Indian came to the opposite bank of the river, calling out that he had something important to communicate ; and, on sending for him, he told us that five Mandans had been met about eight leagues to the southwest by a party of Sioux, who had killed one of them, wounded two, and taken nine horses ; that four of the Wattasoons were missing, and that the Mandans expected an attack. We thought this an excellent opportunity to discountenance the injurious reports against us, and to fix the wavering confidence of the nation. Captain Clarke, therefore, instantly crossed the river with twenty-three men, strongly armed, and, circling the town, approached it from behind. His unexpected appearance surprised and alarmed the chiefs, who came out to meet him, and conducted him to the village. He then told them that, having heard of the outrage just committed, he had come to assist his dutiful children ; that if they would assemble their warriors and those of the nation, he would lead them against the Sioux, and

avenge the blood of their countrymen. After some minutes' conversation, Oheenaw, the Chayenne, arose: 'We now see,' he said, 'that what you have told us is true, since, as soon as our enemies threaten to attack us, you come to protect us, and are ready to chastise those who have spilled our blood. We did, indeed, listen to your good talk; for when you told us that the other nations were inclined to peace with us, we went out carelessly, in small parties, and some have been killed by the Sioux and Ricaras. But I knew that the Ricaras were liars, and I told their chief who accompanied you that his whole nation were liars and bad men; that we had several times made a peace with them, which they were the first to break; that, whenever we pleased, we might shoot them like buffalo, but that we had no wish to kill them; that we would not suffer them to kill us, nor steal our horses; and that, although we agreed to make peace with them because our two fathers desired it, yet we did not believe that they would be faithful long. Such, father, was my language to them in your presence, and you see that, instead of listening to your good counsels, they have spilled our blood. A few days ago two Ricaras came here, and told us that two of their villages were making moccasins; that the Sioux were stirring them up against us; and that we ought to take care of our horses. Yet these very Ricaras we sent home as soon as the news reached us to-day, lest our people should kill them in the first moment of grief for their murdered relatives. Four of the Watasoons, whom we expected back in sixteen days, have been absent twenty-four, and we fear have fallen. But, father, the snow is now deep, the weather cold, and our horses cannot travel through the plains: the murderers have gone off. If you will conduct us in the spring, when the snow has disappeared, we will assemble all the surrounding warriors, and follow you.'

"Captain Clarke replied that we were always willing and able to defend them; that he was sorry the snow prevented their marching to meet the Sioux, since he wished to show them that the warriors of their great father would chastise the enemies of his obedient children who opened their ears to his advice; that if some Ricaras had joined the Sioux, they should remember that there were bad men in every nation, and that they should not be offended at the Ricaras till they saw whether these ill-disposed men were countenanced by the whole tribe: that the Sioux possessed great influence over the Ricaras, whom they supplied with military stores, and sometimes led them astray, because they were afraid to oppose them; but that this should be the less offensive, since the Mandans themselves were under the same apprehensions from the Assiniboins and Knistenaux; and that, while they were thus dependant, both the Ricaras and Mandans ought to keep on terms with their powerful neighbours, whom they may afterward set at defiance, when we shall supply them with arms, and take them under our protection.

"After two hours' conversation Captain Clarke left the village. The chief repeatedly thanked him for the fatherly protection he had given them, observing that the whole village had been weeping all night and day for the brave young man who had been slain, but now they would wipe their eyes and weep no more, as they saw that their father would protect them. He then crossed the river on the ice, and returned on the north side to the fort. The day as well as the evening was cold, and the river rose to its former height.

"December 1. The wind was from the northwest, and the whole party engaged in picketing the fort. About ten o'clock, the half brother of the man who had been killed came to inform us that six Shashas, or Chayeane Indians, had arrived, bringing a

pipe of peace, and that their nation was three days' march behind them. Three Pawnees had accompanied the Sharhas; and the Mandans, being afraid of the Sharhas on account of their being at peace with the Sioux, wished to put both them and the three Pawnees to death; but the chiefs had forbidden it, as it would be contrary to our wishes. We gave him a present of tobacco; and although, from his connexion with the sufferer, he was more imbittered against the Pawnees than any other Mandan, yet he seemed perfectly well satisfied with our pacific counsels and advice. The Mandans, we observe, call all the Ricaras by the name of Pawnees; the name of Ricaras being that by which the nation distinguishes itself.

"In the evening we were visited by a Mr. Henderson, who came from the Hudson's Bay Company to trade with the Minnetarees. He had been about eight days on his route, in a direction nearly south, and brought with him tobacco, beads, and other merchandise, to trade for furs, and a few guns, which are to be exchanged for horses.

"December 2. The latter part of the evening was warm, and a thaw continued till the morning, when the wind shifted to the north. At eleven o'clock the chiefs of the lower village brought down four of the Sharhas. We explained to them our intentions, and advised them to remain at peace with each other: we also gave them a flag, some tobacco, and a speech for their nation. These were accompanied by a letter to Messrs. Tabeau and Gravelines at the Ricara village, requesting them to preserve peace if possible, and to declare the part which we should be forced to take if the Ricaras and Sioux made war on those whom we had adopted. After distributing a few presents to the Sharhas and Mandans, and showing them our curiosities, we dismissed them, apparently well pleased at their reception.

"December 3. The morning was fine, but in

the afternoon the weather became cold, with the wind from the northwest. The father of the Mandan who was killed brought us a present of dried pumpkins and some pemitigon, for which we gave him some small articles. Our offer of assistance to avenge the death of his son seemed to have produced a grateful respect from him, as well as from the brother of the deceased, which pleased us much.

"December 4. The wind continues from the northwest, the weather cloudy and raw, and the river rose one inch. Oscapsahe and two young chiefs pass the day with us. The whole religion of the Mandans consists in the belief of one Great Spirit presiding over their destinies. This being must be in the nature of a good genius, since it is associated with the healing art, and the great spirit is synonymous with great medicine, a name also applied to everything which they do not comprehend. Every individual selects for himself the particular object of his devotion, which is termed his medicine, and is either some invisible being, or, more commonly, some animal, which thenceforward becomes his protector, or his intercessor with the Great Spirit; to propitiate whom every attention is lavished, and every personal consideration is sacrificed. 'I was lately owner of seventeen horses,' said a Mandan to us one day, 'but I have offered them all up to my medicine, and am now poor.' He had, in reality, taken all his wealth—his horses—into the plain, and, turning them loose, committed them to the care of his medicine, and abandoned them forever." * * * "Their belief in a future state is connected with this tradition of their origin: The whole nation resided in one large village under ground, near a subterraneous lake. A grape-vine extended its roots down to their habitation, and gave them a view of the light. Some of the most adventurous climbed up the vine, and were delighted with the sight of the earth, which they found covered with buffalo, and rich with every kind

of fruits. Returning with the grapes they had gathered, their countrymen were so pleased with the taste of them, that the whole nation resolved to leave their dull residence for the charms of the upper region. Men, women, and children ascended by means of the vine; but when about half the nation had reached the surface of the earth, a corpulent woman, who was clambering up the vine, broke it with her weight, and closed upon herself and the rest of the nation the light of the sun. Those who were left on the earth made a village below, where we saw the nine villages; and when the Mandans die they expect to return to the original seats of their forefathers, the good reaching the ancient village by means of the lake, which the burden of the sins of the wicked will not enable them to cross."

The frost increased, the thermometer standing at ten degrees above zero. "On the 7th," the narrative continues, "Shahaka, the chief of the lower village, came to apprise us that the buffalo were near, and that his people were waiting for us to join them in the chase. Captain Clarke, with fifteen men, went out, and found the Indians engaged in killing the buffalo. The hunters, mounted on horseback, and armed with bows and arrows, encircle the herd, and gradually drive them into a plain, or an open place fit for the movements of horse. They then ride among them, and, singling out a buffalo, a female being preferred, go as close as possible, and wound her with arrows till they think they have given the mortal stroke; when they pursue another, till the quiver is exhausted. If, which rarely happens, the wounded buffalo attacks the hunter, he evades the blow by the agility of his horse, which is trained for the combat with great dexterity. When they have killed the requisite number, they collect the game, and the squaws and attendants come up from the rear, and skin and dress the animals. Captain Clarke killed ten buffalo, of which

five only were brought to the fort, the rest (which could not be conveyed home) being seized by the Indians; among whom the custom is, that whenever a buffalo is found dead, without any arrow or particular mark, he is the property of the finder; so that often a hunter secures scarcely any of the game he kills, if the arrow happens to fall off. Whatever is left out at night falls to the share of the wolves, who are the constant and numerous attendants of the buffalo. The river closed opposite the fort last night an inch and a half in thickness. In the morning the thermometer stood at one degree below zero. Three men were badly frostbitten in consequence of their exposure.

"December 8. The thermometer stood at twelve degrees below zero, that is, at forty-two degrees below the freezing point: the wind was from the northwest. Captain Lewis, with fifteen men, went out to hunt the buffalo, great numbers of which darkened the prairies for a considerable distance. They did not return till after dark, having killed eight buffalo and one deer. The hunt was, however, very fatiguing, as they were obliged to make a circuit to the distance of more than seven miles. The cold, too, was so excessive, that the air was filled with icy particles resembling a fog, and the snow was generally six or eight inches deep, and sometimes eighteen; in consequence of which, two of the party were hurt by falls, and several had their feet frostbitten.

"December 9. The wind was this day from the east, the thermometer at seven degrees above zero, and the sun shone clear: two chiefs visited us, one in a sleigh drawn by a dog, and loaded with meat.

"December 10. - Captain Clarke, who had gone out yesterday with eighteen men to bring in the meat we had killed the day before and to continue the hunt, came in at twelve o'clock. After killing nine buffalo, and preparing that already dead, he had spent a cold, disagreeable night on the snow, with no cov-

ering but a small blanket, sheltered by the hides of the buffalo they had killed. We observe large herds of buffalo crossing the river on the ice. The men who were frostbitten are recovering; but the weather is still exceedingly cold, the wind being from the north, and the thermometer at ten and eleven degrees below zero: the rise of the river is one inch and a half.

"December 11. The weather became so intensely cold, that we sent for all the hunters who had remained out with Captain Clarke's party, and they returned in the evening, several of them frostbitten. The wind was from the north, and the thermometer at sunrise stood at twenty-one below zero, the ice in the atmosphere being so thick as to render the weather hazy, and give the appearance of two suns reflecting each other. The river continues at a stand. Pocapsahe made us a visit to-day.

"December 12. The wind is still from the north, the thermometer being at sunrise thirty-eight degrees below zero. One of the Ahnahaways brought us down the half of an antelope killed near the fort. We had been informed that all these animals return to the Black Mountains; but there are great numbers of them about us at this season, which we might easily kill, but are unwilling to venture out before our constitutions are hardened gradually to the climate. We measured the river on the ice, and find it five hundred yards wide immediately opposite the fort." * * *

"December 14. The morning was fine, and the weather having moderated so far that the mercury stood at zero, Captain Lewis went down with a party to hunt. They proceeded about eighteen miles; but, the buffalo having left the banks of the river, they saw only two, which were so poor as not to be worth killing, and shot two deer. Notwithstanding the snow, we were visited by a large number of the Mandans." * * *

"December 16. The morning is clear and cold, the mereury at sunrise 22° below zero. A Mr. Haney, with two other persons from the British establishment on the Assiniboin, arrived in six days, with a letter from Mr. Charles Chabouilles, one of the company, who, with much politeness, offered to render us any service in his power.

"December 17. The weather to-day was colder than any we had yet experienced, the thermometer at sunrise being 45° below zero, and about eight o'clock it fell to 74° below the freezing point. From Mr. Haney, who is a very sensible, intelligent man, we obtained much geographical information with regard to the country between the Missouri and Mississippi, and the various tribes of Sioux who inhabit it.

"December 18. The thermometer at sunrise was 32° below zero. The Indians had invited us yesterday to join their chase to-day, but the seven men whom we sent returned in consequence of the cold, which was so severe last night that we were obliged to have the sentinel relieved every half hour. The Northwest traders, however, left us on their return home.

"December 19. The weather moderated, and the river rose a little, so that we were enabled to continue the picketing of the fort. Notwithstanding the extreme cold, we observed the Indians at the village engaged out in the open air, at a game which resembled billiards more than anything we had seen, and which, we were inclined to suspect, might have been acquired by ancient intercourse with the French of Canada. From the first to the second chief's lodge, a distance of about fifty yards was covered with timber, smoothed and joined so as to be as level as the floor of one of our houses, with a battery at the end to stop the rings. These rings were of clay-stone, and flat like the checkers for draughts; and the sticks were about four feet long, with two short pieces at one end in the form of a mace, so fixed

that the whole would slide along the board. Two men fix themselves at one end, each provided with a stick, and one of them with a ring: they then run along the board, and about half way slide the sticks after the ring.

"December 20. The wind was from the N.W., the weather moderate, the thermometer 24° above zero at sunrise. We availed ourselves of this change to picket the fort near the river.

"December 21. The day was fine and warm, the wind N.W. by W. The Indian who had been prevented a few days ago from killing his wife, came with both his wives to the fort, and was very desirous of reconciling our interpreter, a jealousy against whom, on account of his wife's taking refuge in his house, had been the cause of his animosity. A woman brought her child with an abscess in the lower part of the back, and offered as much corn as she could carry for some medicine: we administered to it, of course, very cheerfully.

"December 22. A number of squaws, and men dressed like squaws, brought corn to trade for small articles with the men. Among other things, we procured two horns of the animal called by the French the Rocky Mountain sheep, and known to the Mandans by the name of *ahsahta*. The animal itself is about the size of a small elk or large deer; the horns winding like those of a ram, which they resemble also in texture, though larger and thicker.

"December 23. The weather was fine and warm, like that of yesterday. We were again visited by crowds of Indians of all descriptions, who came either to trade or from mere curiosity. Among the rest, Kogahami, the Little Raven, brought his wife and son loaded with corn, and she then entertained us with a favourite Mandan dish, a mixture of pumpkins, beans, corn, and chokecherries with the stones, all boiled together in a kettle, and forming a composition by no means unpalatable.

“ December 24. The weather continued warm and pleasant, and the number of visitors became troublesome. As a present to three of the chiefs, we divided a fillet of sheepskin, which we had brought for sponging, into three pieces, each of two inches in width: they were delighted at the gift, which they deemed of equal value with a fine horse. We this day completed our fort, and the next morning, being Christmas,

“ December 25, we were awakened before day by a discharge of three platoons from the party. We had told the Indians not to visit us, as it was one of our great medicine days; so that the men remained at home, and amused themselves in various ways, particularly with dancing, in which they take great pleasure. The American flag was hoisted for the first time in the fort; the best provisions we had were brought out, and this, with a little brandy, enabled them to pass the day in great festivity.

“ December 26. The weather is again temperate, but no Indians have come to see us. One of the Northwest traders, who came down to request the aid of our Minnetaree interpreter, informs us that a party of Minnetarees, who had gone in pursuit of the Assiniboina who lately stole their horses, had just returned. As is their custom, they came back in small detachments, the last of which brought home eight horses, which they had captured or stolen from an Assiniboin camp on Mouse River.” * * *

“ We were fortunate enough to have among our men a good blacksmith, whom we set at work to make a variety of articles. His operations seemed to surprise the Indians who came to see us, but nothing could equal their astonishment at the bellows, which they considered as a very great medicine. Having heretofore promised a more particular account of the Sioux, the following may serve as a general outline of their history:

“ Almost the whole of that vast tract of country

comprised between the Mississippi, the Red River of Lake Winnipeg, the Saskashawan, and the Missouri, is loosely occupied by a great nation, whose primitive name is Darcota, but who are called Sioux by the French, Sues by the English. Their original seats were on the Mississippi, but they have gradually spread themselves abroad, and become subdivided into numerous tribes. Of these, what may be considered as the Darcotas are the Mindawarcarton, or Minowakanton, known to the French by the name of the *Gens du Lac*, or People of the Lake. Their residence is on both sides of the Mississippi, near the Falls of St. Anthony, and the probable number of their warriors about three hundred. Above them, on the River St. Peter's, is the Wahpatone, a smaller band of nearly two hundred men; and still farther up the same river, below Yellow Wood River, are the Wahpatootas, or *Gens de Feuilles*, an inferior band of not more than one hundred men; while the sources of the St. Peter's are occupied by the Sisatootones, a band consisting of about two hundred warriors.

"These bands rarely, if ever, approach the Missouri, which is occupied by their kinsmen the Yanktons and the Teton. The Yanktons are of two tribes: those of the plains, or, rather, of the north—a wandering race of about five hundred men, who roam over the plains at the heads of the Jacques, the Sioux, and the Red Rivers; and those of the south, who possess the country between the Jacques and Sioux Rivers and the Des Moines. But the bands of Sioux most known on the Missouri are the Teton. The first who are met on ascending the Missouri are the tribe called by the French the Teton of the *Bois Brulé*, or Burnedwood, who reside on both sides of the Missouri, about White and Teton Rivers, and number two hundred warriors. Above them, on the Missouri, are the Teton Okandandas, a band of one hundred men, living below the Chayenne

River, between which and the Wetarhoo River is a third band, called Teton Minnakenozzo, of nearly two hundred and fifty men; and below the Warreconne is the fourth and last tribe of Tetons, of about three hundred men, and called Teton Saone. Northward of these, between the Assiniboin and the Missouri, are two bands of Assiniboins, one on Mouse River, of about two hundred men, and called Assiniboin Menatopa, the other residing on both sides of White River, called by the French *Gens de Feuilles*, and amounting to two hundred and fifty men. Beyond these, a band of Assiniboins of four hundred and fifty men, and called the Big Devils, wander on the heads of Milk, Porcupine, and Martha's Rivers; while still farther to the north are seen two bands of the same nation, one of five hundred, and the other of two hundred, roving on the Saskashawan. Those Assiniboins are recognised by a similarity of language, and by tradition, as descendants or seceders from the Sioux; though often at war, are still acknowledged as relations. The Sioux themselves, though scattered, meet annually on the Jacques, those on the Missouri trading with those on the Mississippi."

The weather was cold for the remainder of the month, with the thermometer at from ten to twenty degrees below zero. The Indians continued their visits for the purposes of traffic, and on these occasions were for the most part honest, though they would occasionally pilfer when they had a good opportunity of so doing.

CHAPTER VI.

The Party increase in Favour.—A Buffalo Dance.—Medicine Dance.—The Fortitude with which the Indian bears the Severity of the Season.—Distress of the Party for Want of Provisions.—The great Importance of the Blacksmith in procuring it.—Depredations of the Sioux.—The Homage paid to the Medicine Stone.—Summary Act of Justice among the Minnetarees.—The Process by which the Mandans and Ricaras make Beads.—Character of the Missouri and of the surrounding Country.

“JANUARY 1, 1805. The new year was welcomed by two shots from the swivel, and a round of small arms. The weather was cloudy, but moderate; the mercury, which at sunrise was at 18° , in the course of the day rose to 34° above zero: towards evening it began to rain, and at night we had snow, the temperature for which is about zero. In the morning we permitted sixteen men, with their music, to go up to the first village, where they delighted the whole tribe with their dances, particularly with the movements of one of the Frenchmen, who danced on his head.* In return, they presented the dancers with several buffalo robes and quantities of corn. We were desirous of showing this attention to the village, because they had received an impression that we had been wanting in regard for them, and because they had, in consequence, circulated invidious comparisons between us and the northern traders: all these, however, they declared to Captain Clarke, who visited them in the course of the morning, were made in jest. As Captain Clarke was about leaving the village, two of their chiefs returned from a mission to the Gros Ventres, or wandering Minnetarees.

* Probably on his hands, with his head downward.

These people were encamped about ten miles above, and while there one of the Ahnahaways had stolen a Minnetaree girl. The whole nation immediately espoused the quarrel, and one hundred and fifty of their warriors were marching down to revenge the insult on the Ahnahaways. The chief of that nation took the girl from the ravisher, and, giving her to the Mandans, requested their intercession. The messengers went out to meet the warriors, and delivered the young damsel into the hands of her countrymen, smoked the pipe of peace with them, and were fortunate enough to avert their indignation and induce them to return. In the evening some of the men came to the fort, and the rest slept in the village. Pocapsahe also visited us, and brought some meat on his wife's back.

"January 2. It snowed last night, and during this day the same scene of gayety was renewed at the second village, and all the men returned in the evening.

"January 3. Last night it became very cold, and this morning we had some snow. Our hunters were sent out for buffalo, but the game had been frightened from the river by the Indians, so that they obtained only one; they, however, killed a hare and a wolf. Among the Indians who visited us was a Minnetaree, who came to seek his wife: she had been much abused, and came here for protection, but returned with him, as we had no authority to separate those whom even the Mandan rites had united.

"January 4. The morning was cloudy and warm, the mercury being 28° above zero; but towards evening the wind changed to northwest, and the weather became cold. We sent some hunters down the river, but they killed only one buffalo and a wolf. We received the visit of Kagohami, who is very friendly, and to whom we gave a handkerchief and two files.

"January 5. We had high and boisterous winds

last night and this morning. The Indians continue to purchase repairs with grain of different kinds. In the first village there has been a Buffalo dance for the last three nights, which has put them all into commotion." * * * "When buffalo become scarce, they send a man to harangue the village, declaring that the game is far off, and that a feast is necessary to bring it back; and, if the village be disposed, a day and place is named for the celebration of it." Besides this, there is another called the Medicine dance, which is given by any person desirous of doing honour to his medicine or genius. He announces that on such a day he will sacrifice his horses or other property, and invites the girls of the village to assist in rendering homage to his medicine. All the inhabitants may join in the celebration, which is performed in the open plain, and by daylight; but the dance is reserved altogether for the young unmarried females. The ceremony commences with devoting the goods of the master of the feast to his medicine, which is represented by a head of the animal to be offered, or by a medicine bag, if the deity be an invisible being. The dance follows; which, as well as that of the buffalo, consists of little more than an exhibition of the most foul and revolting indecencies.*

* In the account of Major Long's expedition to the Rocky Mountains in 1819-20, there is a description of the Dog dance, performed by the Kansas for the entertainment of their guests; and of a still more striking exhibition of the Beggar's dance, at a council held at Council Bluffs by Major O'Fallon with about 100 Ottos and a deputation of Ioways, which Shongatonga, the Big Horse, opened with these words: "My father: Your children have come to dance before your tent, agreeably to our council of honouring brave and distinguished men." After a reply made by Major O'Fallon, a succession of dancers came forward; and in the intervals a warrior would step forward and strike a temporary flagstaff, erected for the purpose, with a stick or some weapon, recounting at the same time his martial deeds. This is called striking the post.—Vol. i., p. 153.

* Annually in the month of July, the Minnetarces celebrate

"January 9. The thermometer at sunrise was 21 degrees below zero. Kagohami breakfasted with us, and Captain Clarke, with three or four men, accompanied him and a party of Indians to hunt, in which they were so fortunate as to kill a number of buffalo; but they were incommoded by snow, by high and squally winds, and by extreme cold. Several of the Indians came to the fort nearly frozen, others are missing, and we are uneasy for one of our men, who was separated from the rest during the chase, and has not returned. In the morning, however, he came back just as we were sending out five men in search of him. The night had been excessively cold, and this morning, January 10th, at sunrise the mercury stood at 40 degrees below zero, or 72 below the freezing point. He had, however, made a fire, and kept himself tolerably warm. A young Indian, about thirteen years of age, also came in soon after. His father, who came last night to inquire after him very anxiously, had sent him in the afternoon to the fort. He was over-

their great Medicine dance, or dance of penitence, which may well be compared with the currach-pooja, or expiatory tortures of the Hindus, so often celebrated at Calcutta. On this occasion a considerable quantity of food is prepared, which is well cooked, and served up in the best manner. The devotees then dance and sing to their music at intervals, for three or four days together, in full view of the victuals, without attempting to taste of them: if a stranger enters he is invited to eat, though no one partakes with him. On the third or fourth day the severer expiatory tortures are commenced, to which the preceding ceremonies are but preludes." These tortures consist in one after another successively presenting himself, and having pieces of flesh or portions of skin cut from the fleshy parts, or in having cords passed through holes pierced in the shoulders, and dragging a buffalo skull to the lodge, or leading a horse to water, &c.—Vol. i., p. 276.

In this narrative we also find an account of human victims offered to Venus, or the Great Star. This horrible sacrifice was offered annually among the Pawnee Loups, the victims being selected from prisoners taken in war; and the dreadful ceremony has been but lately abolished.—Vol. i., p. 375.

taken by the night, and was obliged to sleep on the snow, with no covering except a pair of antelope-skin moccasins and leggins, and a buffalo robe: his feet being frozen, we put them into cold water, and gave him every attention in our power. About the same time, an Indian who had also been missing returned to the fort; and, although his dress was very thin, and he had slept on the snow without a fire, he had not suffered the slightest inconvenience. We have, indeed, observed that these Indians support the rigours of the season in a way which we had hitherto thought impossible. A more pleasing reflection occurred at seeing the warm interest which the situation of these two persons had excited in the village. The boy had been a prisoner, and adopted from charity; yet the distress of the father proved that he felt for him the tenderest affection. The man was a person of no distinction, yet the whole village was full of anxiety for his safety; and, when they came to us, borrowed a sleigh to bring them home with ease if they had survived, or to carry their bodies if they had perished."

The cold was at this time intense, the thermometer ranging from 20° to 38° below zero.

"January 13. Nearly one half of the Mandan nation passed down the river to hunt for several days. In these excursions, men, women, and children, with their dogs, all leave the village together, and, after discovering a spot convenient for the game, fix their tents; all the family bear their part in the labour, and the game is equally divided among the families of the tribe. When a single hunter returns from the chase with more than is necessary for his own immediate consumption, the neighbours are entitled by custom to a share of it: they do not, however, ask for it, but send a squaw, who, without saying anything, sits down by the door of the lodge till the master understands the hint, and gives her gratui-

tously a part for her family. Chaboneau and another man, who had gone to some lodges of Minnetarees near the Turtle Mountain, returned with their faces much frostbitten. They had been about ninety miles distant, and procured from the inhabitants some meat and grease, with which they loaded the horses. He informed us that the agent of the Hudson's Bay Company at that place had been endeavouring to make unfavourable impressions with regard to us on the mind of the great chief, and that the Northwest Company intended building a fort there. The great chief had, in consequence, spoken slightly of the Americans; but said that, if we would give him our great flag, he would come and see us.

"January 14. The Mandans continued to pass down the river on their hunting-party, and were joined by six of our men. One of those sent on Thursday returned with information that one of his companions had his feet so badly frostbitten that he could not walk home. In their excursion they had killed a buffalo, a wolf, two porcupines, and a white hare. The weather was more moderate to-day, the mercury being at 16° below zero, and the wind from the southeast; we had, however, some snow, after which it remained cloudy.

"January 15. The morning is much warmer than yesterday, and the snow begins to melt, though the wind, after being for some time from the southeast, suddenly shifted to northwest. Between twelve and three o'clock A.M., there was a total eclipse of the moon, from which we obtained a part of the observation necessary for ascertaining the longitude.

"We were visited by four of the most distinguished men of the Minnetarees, to whom we showed marked attentions, as we knew that they had been taught to entertain strong prejudices against us. These we succeeded so well in removing, that when, in the morning,

"January 16, about thirty Mandans, among whom

six were chiefs, came to see us, the Minnetarees reproached them with their falsehoods, declaring that they were bad men, and ought to hide themselves. They had told the Minnetarees that we would kill them if they came to the fort; yet, on the contrary, they had spent a night there, and been treated with kindness by the whites, who had smoked with them, and danced for their amusement. Kagohami visited us, and brought us a little corn; and soon afterward one of the chiefs of the Minnetarees came, accompanied by his squaw, a handsome woman. He favoured us with a very acceptable present, a draught of the Missouri, in his manner; and informed us of his intention to go to war in the spring against the Snake Indians. We advised him to reflect seriously before he committed the peace of his nation to the hazards of war; to look back on the numerous nations whom war had destroyed; that, if he wished his nation to be happy, he should cultivate peace and intercourse with all his neighbours, by which means they would procure more horses and increase in numbers; and that, if he went to war, he would displease his great father the president, and forfeit his protection. We added, that we had spoken thus to all the tribes whom we had met; that they had all opened their ears; and that the president would compel those who did not voluntarily listen to his advice. Although a young man of only twenty-six years of age, this discourse seemed to strike him. He observed that, if it would be displeasing to us, he would not go to war, since he had horses enough; and that he would advise all the nation to remain at home until we had seen the Snake Indians, and discovered whether their intentions were pacific."

The weather during the remainder of the month was variable, and not as cold as it had been. Several attempts were made to disengage the boats from the ice, but they were unsuccessful. On the 18th they were visited by Messrs. Laroche and

M^rKenzie, two of the Northwest Company's traders, accompanied by some of the Minnetarees. The neighbouring Indians made frequent visits to the encampment, bringing their household utensils to be repaired, and corn to pay for it.

"February 1. Our hunters returned, having killed only one deer. One of the Minnetaree war-chiefs, a young man named Maubuksheahokeah, or Seeing Snake, came to see us, and procure a war-hatchet. He also requested that we would suffer him to go to war against the Sioux and Ricaras, who had killed a Mandan some time ago ; this we refused, for reasons which we explained to him. He acknowledged that we were right, and promised to open his ears to our counsels."

*** "February 4. The morning fair and cold, the mercury at sunrise being 18° below zero, and the wind from the northwest. The stock of meat which we had procured in November and December being now nearly exhausted; it became necessary to renew our supply. Captain Clarke, therefore, took eighteen men, and, with two sleighs and three horses, descended the river for the purpose of hunting, as the buffalo has disappeared from our neighbourhood, and the Indians are themselves suffering for want of meat. Two deer were killed to-day, but they were very lean.

"February 5. A pleasant, fair morning, with the wind from the northwest. A number of the Indians came with corn for the blacksmith, who, being now provided with coal, has become one of our greatest resources for procuring grain. They seem to be particularly attached to a battle-axe of a very inconvenient figure. It is made wholly of iron, the blade extremely thin, and from seven to nine inches long ; it is sharp at the point, and five or six inches on each side, whence it converges towards the eye, which is circular, and about an inch in diameter, the blade itself being not more than an inch wide. The

handle is straight, and twelve or fifteen inches long, the whole weighing about a pound. By way of ornament, the blade is perforated with several circular holes. The length of the blade, compared with the shortness of the handle, renders it a weapon of very little strength, particularly as it is always used on horseback. There is still, however, another form which is even worse, the same sort of handle being fixed to a blade resembling a spontoon.

"February 6. The morning was fair and pleasant, the wind northwest. A number of Indian chiefs visited us, and withdrew after we had smoked with them, contrary to their custom; for, after being once introduced into our apartment, they are fond of lounging about during the remainder of the day. One of the men killed three antelopes. Our blacksmith has his time completely occupied, so great is the demand for utensils of different kinds. The Indians are particularly fond of sheet-iron, out of which they form points for arrows, and instruments for scraping hides; and, when the blacksmith cut up an old cambouse of that metal, we obtained, for every piece of four inches square, seven or eight gallons of corn from the Indians, who were delighted at the exchange.

"February 7. The morning was fair, and much warmer than for some days, the thermometer being at 18° above zero, and the wind from the southeast. A number of Indians continue to visit us; but, learning that the interpreter's squaws had been accustomed to unbar the gate during the night, we ordered a lock to be put on it, and that no Indian should remain in the fort all night, nor any person be admitted during the hours when the gate is closed, that is, from sunset to sunrise.

"February 8. A fair, pleasant morning, with southeast winds. Pocopsahe came down to the fort with a bow, and apologized for his not having finished a shield which he had promised Captain Lewis, and

which the weather had prevented him from completing. This chief possesses more firmness, intelligence, and integrity than any Indian of this country, and he might be rendered highly serviceable in our attempts to civilize the nation. He mentioned that the Mandans are very much in want of meat, and that he himself had not tasted any for several days. To this distress they are often reduced by their own improvidence, or by their unhappy situation. Their principal article of food is buffalo meat, their beans, corn, and other grain being reserved for summer, or as a last resource against what they constantly dread, an attack from the Sioux, who drive off the game, and confine them to their villages. The same fear, too, prevents their going out to hunt in small parties to relieve their occasional wants, so that the buffalo is generally obtained in large quantities, and wasted by carelessness."

The next day they were visited by Mr. M'Kenzie, from the Northwest Company's establishment. Information was received that their horses were below, loaded with meat, but unable to cross the ice from not being shod. The weather for several days continued moderate.

"February 12. The morning," continues the narrative, "is fair, though cold, the mercury being 14° below zero, the wind from the southeast. About four o'clock the horses were brought in much fatigued; on giving them meal-bran moistened with water, they would not eat it, but preferred the bark of the cottonwood, which, as has been already observed, forms their principal food during the winter. The horses of the Mandans are so often stolen by the Sioux, Ricaras, and Assiniboins, that the invariable rule now is, to put the horses every night in the same lodge with the family. In the summer they ramble in the plains in the vicinity of the camp, and feed on the grass; but during cold weather the squaws cut down the cottonwood-trees as they are

wanted, and the horses feed on the boughs and bark of the tender branches, which are also brought into the lodges at night and placed near them. These animals are very severely treated; for whole days they are pursuing the buffalo, or burdened with the fruits of the chase, during which they scarcely ever taste food, and at night return to a scanty allowance of wood; yet the spirit of this valuable animal sustains him through all these difficulties, and he is rarely deficient either in flesh or vigour.

"February 13. The morning was cloudy; the thermometer at 2° below zero; the wind from the southeast. Captain Clarke returned last evening with all his hunting party. During their excursion they had killed forty deer, three buffalo, and sixteen elk; but most of the game was too lean for use, and the wolves, which regard whatever lies out at night as their own, had appropriated a large part of it. When he left the fort on the 4th instant, he descended on the ice twenty-two miles to New-Mandan Island, near some of their old villages, and encamped forty-four miles from the fort, on a sand-point near the mouth of a creek on the southwest side, which they called Hunting Creek, and during this and the following day hunted through all the adjoining plains with much success, having killed a number of deer and elk. On the 8th, the best of the meat was sent with the horses to the fort; and such parts of the remainder as were fit for use were brought to a point of the river three miles below, and, after the bones were taken out, secured in pens built of logs, so as to keep off the wolves, ravens, and magpies, which are very numerous, and constantly disappoint the hunter of his prey. They then went to the low grounds near the Chisshetaw River, where they encamped, but saw nothing except some wolves on the hills, and a number of buffalo too poor to be worth hunting. The next morning, the 9th, as there was no game, and it would have been incon-

venient to send it back sixty miles to the fort, they returned up the river, and for three days hunted along the banks and plains, and reached the fort in the evening of the 12th, much fatigued, having walked thirty miles that day on the ice and through the snow, in many places knee deep, their moccasins, too, being nearly worn out. The only game which they saw, besides what is mentioned, were some grouse on the sand-bars in the river.

"February 14. Last night the snow fell three inches deep, but the day was fine. Four men were despatched with sleds and three horses, to bring up the meat which had been collected by the hunters. They returned, however, with intelligence that, about twenty-one miles below the fort, a party of upward of one hundred men, whom they supposed to be Sioux, rushed on them, cut the traces of the sleds, and carried off two of the horses, the third being given up by the intercession of an Indian who seemed to possess some authority over them; they also took away two of the men's knives and a tomahawk, which last, however, they returned. We sent up to the Mandans to inform them of it, and to know whether any of them would join a party which intended to pursue the robbers in the morning. About twelve o'clock two of their chiefs came down, and said that all their young men were out hunting, and that there were few guns in the village. Several Indians, however, armed, some with bows and arrows, some with spears and battle-axes, and two with fusils, accompanied Captain Lewis, who set out on the 15th, at sunrise, with twenty-four men. The morning was fine and cool, the thermometer being at 16° below zero. In the course of the day, one of the Mandan chiefs returned from Captain Lewis's party, his eyesight having become so bad that he could not proceed. At this season of the year, the reflection from the ice and snow is so intense as to occasion almost total blindness.

This complaint is very common, and the general remedy is to sweat the part affected by holding the face over a hot stone, and receiving the fumes from snow thrown on it."

The weather became milder, and on the 16th the mercury rose to 32° above zero. Their stock of meat being exhausted, they were obliged to live on vegetable diet, in which they suffered but little inconvenience, as the Indians supplied them plentifully with corn.

"February 20. The day was delightfully fine," continues the Journal, "the mercury being at sunrise 2°, and in the course of the day 23° above zero, the wind southerly. Kagohami came down to see us early. His village is afflicted by the death of one of their oldest men, who, from his account to us, must have seen one hundred and twenty winters. Just as he was dying, he requested his grandchildren to dress him in his best robe when he was dead, and then carry him to a hill and seat him on a stone, with his face down the river towards their old villages, that he might go straight to his brother, who had passed before him to the ancient village under ground. We have seen a number of Mandans who have lived to a great age; chiefly, however, the men, whose robust exercises fortify the body, while the laborious occupations of the women shorten their existence.

"February 21. We had a continuation of the same pleasant weather. Oheenaw and Shahaka came down to see us, and mentioned that several of their countrymen had gone to consult their *medicine stone* as to the prospects of the following year. This medicine stone is the great oracle of the Mandans, and whatever it announces is believed with implicit confidence. Every spring, and, on some occasions, during the summer, a deputation visits the sacred spot, where there is a thick, porous stone twenty feet in circumference, with a smooth sur-

face. Having reached the place, the ceremony of smoking to it is performed by the deputies, who alternately take a whiff themselves, and then present the pipe to the stone; after this they retire to an adjoining wood for the night, during which it may be safely presumed that all the embassy do not sleep, and in the morning they read the destinies of the nation in the white marks on the stone, which those who made them are at no loss to decipher. The Minnetarees have a stone of a similar kind, which has the same qualities, and the same influence over the nation.

“Captain Lewis returned from his excursion in pursuit of the Indians. On reaching the place where the Sioux had stolen our horses, they found only one sled and several pairs of moccasins, which were recognised to be those of the Sioux. The party then followed the Indian tracks till they reached two old lodges, where they slept, and the next morning pursued the course of the river till they reached some Indian camps, where Captain Clarke passed the night some time ago, and which the Sioux had now set on fire, leaving a little corn near the place, in order to induce a belief that they were Ricaras. From this point the Sioux’ tracks left the river abruptly and crossed into the plains; but, perceiving that there was no chance of overtaking them, Captain Lewis went down to the pen where Captain Clarke had left some meat, which he found untouched by the Indians, and then hunted in the low grounds on the river, till he returned with about three thousand pounds of meat (some drawn in a sled by fifteen of the men, and the rest brought on horseback), having killed thirty-six deer, fourteen elk, and one wolf.”

The weather was now mild and pleasant, and the ice in the river so far thawed that they were enabled to extricate their boats, and draw them up on the bank. They were all busily engaged in preparing

the necessary tools for building boats of a smaller size, in which to continue their voyage up the Missouri. "On the 28th of February," says the Journal, "sixteen men were sent out to examine the country for trees suitable for boats, and were successful in finding them. Two of the Northwest Company's traders arrived with letters. They had likewise a root which is used for the cure of persons bitten by mad dogs, snakes, and other venomous animals: it is found on high grounds and the sides of hills, and the mode of using it is to scarify the wound, and apply to it an inch or more of the chewed or pounded root, which is to be renewed twice a day; the patient must not, however, chew or swallow any of the root, as an inward application might be rather injurious than beneficial.

"M. Gravelines, with two Frenchmen and two Indians, arrived from the Ricara nation, with letters from Mr. Anthony Tabeau. This last gentlemen informs us that the Ricaras express their determination to follow our advice, and to remain at peace with the Mandans and Minnetarees, whom they are desirous of visiting: they also wish to know whether these nations would permit the Ricaras to settle near them, and form a league against their common enemies, the Sioux. On mentioning this to the Mandans, they agreed to it; observing that they always desired to cultivate friendship with the Ricaras, and that the Annahaways and Minnetarees have the same friendly views.

"M. Gravelines states that the band of Tetons whom we had seen was well disposed to us, owing to the influence of their chief, the Black Buffalo; but that the three upper bands of Tetons, with the Sisatoons, and the Yanktons of the north, mean soon to attack the Indians in this quarter, with a resolution to put to death every white man they encounter. Moreover, that Mr. Cameron, of St. Peter's, has lately armed the Sioux against the Chippeways, who

have recently put to death three of his men. The men who had stolen our horses we found to be all Sioux, who, after committing the outrage, went to the Ricara villages, where they said that they had hesitated about killing our men who were with the horses, but that in future they would put to death any of us they could, as we were bad medicines, and deserved to be killed. The Ricaras were displeased at their conduct, and refused to give them anything to eat, which is deemed the greatest act of hostility short of actual violence."

The party were employed in building their new boats, in making ropes, preparing charcoal, and manufacturing battle-axes to exchange for corn. The weather was mild and agreeable.

"March 6. The day was cloudy and smoky," says the Journal, "in consequence of the burning of the plains by the Minnetarees. They have set all the neighbouring country on fire, in order to obtain an early crop of grass which may answer for the consumption of their horses, and also as an inducement for the buffalo and other game to visit it. Some horses stolen two days ago by the Assiniboins have been returned to the Minnetarees. Oh-haw, second chief of the lower Minnetaree village, came to see us. The river rose a little, and overran the ice, so as to render the crossing difficult." * * *

"March 9. The morning cloudy and cool, the wind from the north. The grand chief of the Minnetarees, who is called by the French Le Borgne, from his having but one eye, came down for the first time to the fort. He was received with much attention, two guns were fired in honour of his arrival, the curiosities were exhibited to him, and, as he said that he had not received the presents which we had sent to him on his arrival, we again gave him a flag, medal, shirt, arm-braces, and the usual presents on such occasions, with all which he was much pleased. In the course of the conversation, the

chief observed that some foolish young men of the nation had told him there was a person among us who was quite black, and he wished to know if it could be true. We assured him that it was true, and sent for York: The Borgne was very much surprised at his appearance, examined him closely, and spit on his finger and rubbed the skin, in order to wash off the paint; nor was it until the negro uncovered his head, and showed his short hair, that he could be persuaded that he was not a painted white man.

"March 10. A cold, windy day. Tetuckopiareha, chief of the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetaree chief Ompschara, passed the day with us, and the former remained during the night. We had opportunity to see an instance of the summary justice of the Indians. A young Minnetaree had carried off the daughter of Cagonomokshe, the Raven Man, second chief of the upper village of the Mandans: the father went to the village and found his daughter, whom he brought home, and took with him a horse belonging to the offender. This reprisal satisfied the vengeance of the father and of the nation, as the young man would not dare to reclaim his horse, which from that time became the property of the injured party. The stealing of young women is one of the most common offences against the police of the village, and the punishment of it is always measured by the power or the passions of the kindred of the female. A voluntary elopement is, of course, more rigorously chastised. One of the wives of The Borgne deserted him in favour of a man who had been her lover before the marriage, and who, after some time, left her, so that she was obliged to return to her father's house. As soon as he heard it, The Borgne walked there, and found her sitting near the fire. Without noticing his wife, he began to smoke with the father, when they were joined by the old men of the village, who, knowing his tem-

per, had followed in hopes of appeasing him. He continued to smoke quietly with them till rising to return, when he took his wife by the hair, led her as far as the door, and with a single stroke of his tomahawk put her to death before her father's eyes : then, turning fiercely upon the spectators, he said that, if any of her relations wished to avenge her, they might always find him at his lodge ; but the fate of the woman had not sufficient interest to excite the vengeance of the family. The caprice or the generosity of the same chief gave a very different result to a similar incident which occurred some time afterward. Another of his wives eloped with a young man, who, not being able to support her as she wished, they both returned to the village, and she presented herself before the husband, supplicating his pardon for her conduct. The Borgne sent for the lover : at the moment when the youth expected that he would be put to death, the chief mildly asked them if they still preserved their affection for each other ; and on their declaring that want, and not a change of affection, had induced them to return, he gave up his wife to her lover, with the liberal present of three horses, and restored them both to his favour."

On the 13th they received a visit from Mr. M'Kenzie. The smiths had as much as they could do in making battle-axes, which the Indians eagerly sought for, and for which they paid liberally in corn.

" March 16. The weather," continues the narrative, " is cloudy, the wind from the southeast. A Mr. Garrow, a Frenchman, who has resided a long time among the Ricaras and Mandans, explained to us the mode in which they make their large beads : an art which they are said to have derived from some prisoners of the Snake Indian nation, and the knowledge of which is a secret even now confined to a few among the Mandans and Ricaras. The process is as follows : glass of different colours is first

pounded fine and washed, till each kind, which is kept separate, ceases to stain the water thrown over it. Some well-seasoned clay, mixed with a sufficient quantity of sand to prevent its becoming very hard when exposed to heat, and reduced by water to the consistency of dough, is then rolled on the palm of the hand till it becomes of the thickness wanted for the hole in the bead: these sticks of clay are placed upright, each on a little pedestal or ball of the same material, about an ounce in weight, and distributed over a small earthen platter, which is laid on the fire for a few minutes, when they are taken off to cool. With a little paddle or shovel three or four inches long, and sharpened at the end of the handle, the wet pounded glass is placed in the palm of the hand: the beads are made of an oblong shape, wrapped in a cylindrical form round the stick of clay, which is laid crosswise over it, and gently rolled backward and forward till it becomes perfectly smooth. If it be desired to introduce any other colour, the surface of the bead is perforated with the pointed end of the paddle, and the cavity filled with pounded glass of that colour. The sticks, with the strings of beads, are then replaced on their pedestals, and the platter deposited on burning coals or hot embers. Over the platter, an earthen pot, containing about three gallons, with a mouth large enough to cover the platter, is reversed, being completely closed except a small aperture at the top, through which are watched the beads: a quantity of old dried wood, formed into a sort of dough or paste, is placed round the pot, so as almost to cover it, and afterward set on fire. The manufacturer then looks through the small hole in the pot till he sees the beads assume a deep red colour, to which succeeds a paler or whitish red, or they become pointed at the upper extremity; on which the fire is removed, and the pot suffered to cool gradually: at length it is removed, the beads taken out, the clay in the hol-

low of them picked out with an awl or needle, and they are then fit for use. The beads thus formed are in great demand among the Indians, and used as pendants to their ears and hair, and are sometimes worn round the neck.

"March 17. A windy, but clear and pleasant day, the river rising a little, and open in several places. Our Minnetaree interpreter, Chaboneau, whom we intended taking with us to the Pacific, had some days ago been worked upon by the British traders, and appeared unwilling to accompany us, except on certain terms; such as his not being subject to our orders, and to do duty or to return whenever he chose. As we saw clearly the source of his hesitation, and knew that it was intended as an obstacle to our views, we told him that the terms were inadmissible, and that we could dispense with his services: he had accordingly left us with some displeasure. Since then he had made an advance towards joining us, which we showed no anxiety to meet; but this morning he sent an apology for his improper conduct, and agreed to go with us, and perform the same duties as the rest of the corps; we therefore took him again into our service."

Information was received that the Sioux had lately attacked a party of the Assiniboins and Knistenaux, and killed fifty of them. There was every appearance of an approaching war, two parties of the Minnetarees having already gone out, and a third was preparing to follow them. The canoes were now finished, and "four of them," says the Journal, "were carried down to the river, at the distance of a mile and a half from where they were constructed. On the 21st the remaining pirogues were hauled to the same place, and all the men except three, who were left to watch them, returned to the fort. On his way down, which was about six miles, Captain Clarke passed along the points of the high hills, where he saw large quantities of pumice-stone on

the foot, sides, and tops of the hills, which had every appearance of having been at some period on fire. He collected specimens of the stone itself, the pumice-stone, and the hard earth; and on being put into the furnace, the hard earth melted and glazed, the pumice-stone melted, and the hard stone became a pumice-stone glazed."

CHAPTER VII.

Indian Method of attacking the Buffalo on the Ice.—Presents sent to the President of the United States.—Visit from a Ricara Chief.—They leave their Encampment, and proceed on their Journey.—Description of the Little Missouri.—Some Account of the Assiniboins.—Their Mode of burying the Dead.—Whiteearth River.—Great Quantity of Salt discovered on its Banks.—Yellowstone River.—Account of the Country at the Confluence of the Yellowstone and Missouri.—Description of the Missouri and the surrounding Country.

THE remainder of the month was mild and fair, and the party were actively engaged in completing their preparations for departure. The canoes were carefully caulked and pitched, and the barge was made ready for such as were to return from this point down the Missouri. The ice began to break up and pass off as the water rose, and they only waited for the river to be clear of this obstruction to resume their journey. "On the 29th," says the journalist, "the ice came down in great quantities, the river having fallen eleven inches in the course of the last twenty-four hours. We have had few Indians at the fort for the last three or four days, as they are now busy in catching the floating buffaloes. Every spring, as the river is breaking up, the surrounding plains are set on fire, and the buffaloes are tempted to cross the river in search of the fresh

grass which immediately succeeds to the burning. On their way they are often insulated on a large cake or mass of ice, which floats down the river. The Indians now select the most favourable points for attack, and, as the buffalo approaches, dart with astonishing agility across the trembling ice, sometimes pressing lightly a cake of not more than two feet square. The animal is of course unsteady, and his footsteps insecure on this new element, so that he can make but little resistance; and the hunter, who has given him his death-wound, paddles his icy boat to the shore, and secures his prey." * * *

"April 1. This morning there was a thunder-storm, accompanied with large hail, to which succeeded rain for about half an hour. We availed ourselves of this interval to get all the boats in the water. At four o'clock P.M. it began to rain a second time, and continued till twelve at night. With the exception of a few drops at two or three different times, this is the first rain we have had since the 15th of October last."

On the 3d they were engaged in packing up their baggage and merchandise. Several elk had been killed the day before by the Mandans, but they were so poor as to be of little use.

"April 4. The day is clear and pleasant," continues the narrative, "though the wind is high from the N.W. We now packed up, in different boxes, a variety of articles for the president, which we shall send in the barge. They consist of a stuffed male and female antelope, with their skeletons, a weasel, three squirrels from the Rocky Mountains, the skeleton of a prairie wolf, those of a white and gray hare, a male and female *blaireau*, or burrowing dog of the prairie, with a skeleton of the female, two burrowing squirrels, a white weasel, and the skin of the *louservia*, the horns of a mountain ram, or bighorn, a pair of large elk horns, the horns and tail of a black-tailed deer, and a variety of skins, such as

those of the red fox, white hare, marten, yellow bear, obtained from the Sioux; also a number of articles of Indian dress, among which was a buffalo robe representing a battle fought about eight years since between the Sioux and Ricaras against the Mandans and Minnetarees, in which the combatants are represented on horseback." * * * "Such sketches, rude and imperfect as they are, delineate the predominant character of the savage nations. If they are peaceable and inoffensive, the drawings usually consist of local scenery and their favourite diversions. If the band are rude and ferocious, we observe tomahawks, scalping-knives, bows and arrows, and all the engines of destruction.—A Mandan bow, and quiver of arrows; also some Ricara tobacco-seed, and an ear of Mandan corn: to these were added a box of plants, another of insects, and three cases containing a burrowing squirrel, a prairie hen, and four magpies, all alive." * * *

"April 6. Another fine day, with a gentle breeze from the south. The Mandans continued to come to the fort, and in the course of the day informed us of the arrival of a party of Ricaras on the other side of the river. We sent our interpreter to inquire into their reason for coming; and in the morning,

"April 7, he returned with a Ricara chief and three of his nation. The chief, whose name is Kagohweto, or Brave Raven, brought a letter from M. Tabeau, mentioning the wish of the grand chiefs of the Ricaras to visit the president, and requesting permission for himself and four men to join our boat when it descends; to which we consented, as it will then be manned with fifteen hands, and be able to defend itself against the Sioux. After presenting the letter, he told us that he was sent with ten warriors by his nation to arrange their settling near the Mandans and Minnetarees, whom they wished to join; that he considered all the neighbouring nations friendly except the Sioux, whose

persecution they could no longer withstand, and whom they hoped to repel by uniting with the tribes in this quarter: he added that the Ricaras intended to follow our advice, and live in peace with all nations, and requested that we would speak in their favour to the Assiniboin Indians. This we willingly promised to do, and assured them that their great father would protect them, and no longer suffer the Sioux to have good guns or to injure his dutiful children. We then gave him a small medal, a certificate of his good conduct, a carrot of tobacco, and some wampum, with which he departed for the Mandan village, well satisfied with his reception. Having made all our arrangements, we left the fort about five o'clock in the afternoon. The party now consisted of thirty-two persons. Besides ourselves were sergeants John Ordway, Nathaniel Pryor, and Patrick Gass; the privates were William Bratton, John Colter, John Collins, Peter Crusatte, Robert Frazier, Reuben Fields, Joseph Fields, George Gibson, Silas Goodrich, Hugh Hall, Thomas P. Howard, Baptiste Lapage, Francis Labiche, Hugh M'Neal, John Potts, John Shields, George Shannon, John B. Thompson, William Werner, Alexander Willard, Richard Windsor, Joseph Whitehouse, Peter Wiser, and Captain Clarke's black servant York. The two interpreters were George Drewyer and Tous-saint Chaboneau. The wife of Chaboneau also accompanied us with her young child, and we hope may be useful as an interpreter among the Snake Indians. She was herself one of that tribe; but, having been taken in war by the Minnetarees, was sold as a slave to Chaboneau, who brought her up, and afterward married her. One of the Mandans likewise embarked with us, in order to go to the Snake Indians and obtain a peace with them for his countrymen. All this party, with the baggage, was stowed in six small canoes and two large pirogues. We left the fort with fair, pleasant weather, though

the northwest wind was high; and, after making about four miles, encamped on the north side of the Missouri, nearly opposite the first Mandan village. At the same time that we took our departure, our barge, manned with seven soldiers, two Frenchmen, and M. Gravelines as pilot, sailed for the United States, loaded with our presents and despatches."

On the 9th they reached a hunting-camp of the Minnetarees, and a few miles beyond it they met with a hunting-party of the same nation, who had constructed an enclosure for the purpose of taking the antelope in their migrations from the Black Mountains to the north side of the Missouri. "The bluffs we passed to-day," continues the Journal, "are upward of one hundred feet high, composed of a mixture of yellow clay and sand, with many horizontal strata of carbonated wood, resembling pit-coal, from one to five feet in depth, and scattered through the bluff at different elevations, some as high as eighty feet above the water. The hills along the river are broken, and present every appearance of having been burned at some former period; great quantities of pumice-stone and lava, or, rather, earth which seems to have been boiled and then hardened by exposure, being seen in many parts of these hills, where they are broken and washed down into gulleys by the rain and melting snow." * * * "We saw, but could not procure, an animal that burrows in the ground, and similar in every respect to the burrowing squirrel, except that it is only one third of its size. This may be the animal whose works we have often seen in the plains and prairies. They resemble the labours of the salamander in the sand-hills of South Carolina and Georgia, and, like him, the animals rarely come above ground. These works consist of little hillocks of ten or twelve pounds of loose ground, which look as though they had been reversed from a pot, though no aperture is seen through which the earth could have

been thrown. On removing gently the earth, you discover that the soil has been broken in a circle of about an inch and a half diameter, where the ground is looser, though still no opening is perceptible. When we stopped for dinner the squaw went out, and, after penetrating with a sharp stick the holes of the mice near some driftwood, brought to us a quantity of wild artichokes, which the mice collect and hoard in large numbers. The root is white, of an ovate form, from one to three inches long, and generally of the size of a man's finger; and two, four, and sometimes six roots are attached to a single stalk. Its flavour, and the stalk which issues from it, resemble those of the Jerusalem artichoke, except that the latter is much larger."

The following day they passed a bluff on the south side of the river, which was in several places on fire, and threw out quantities of smoke with a strong sulphurous smell; the character of the bluff, as to coal, &c., being similar to those they had seen the day before. They saw the track of a large white bear; a herd of antelopes, and geese and swan in considerable numbers, feeding on the young grass in the low prairies; and they shot a prairie-hen, also a bald eagle, many nests of which were in the tall cottonwood-trees. Their old companions the moschetoos renewed their visits, to the no small annoyance of the party.

The weather the next day became very warm. The country was much the same as that passed the day before; but on the sides of the hills, and even on the banks of the rivers, as well as on the sand-bars, there was a white substance in considerable quantities on the surface of the earth, which tasted like a mixture of common salt with glauber salts. Many of the streams coming from the foot of the hills were so strongly impregnated with it, that the water had an unpleasant taste and a purgative effect. They killed two geese, and saw some cranes, the

largest bird of that kind common to the Missouri and Mississippi, and which is perfectly white, except the large feathers on the two first joints of the wing, which are black.

"April 12. We set off early," says the narrative, "and passed a high range of hills on the south side, our pirogues being obliged to go over to the south, in order to avoid a sand-bank which was rapidly falling in. At six miles we came to at the lower side of the entrance of the Little Missouri, where we remained during the day, for the purpose of making celestial observations. This river empties itself on the south side of the Missouri, one thousand six hundred and ninety-three miles from its confluence with the Mississippi. It rises to the west of the Black Mountains, across the northern extremity of which it finds a narrow, rapid passage along high perpendicular banks, and then seeks the Missouri in a northeastern direction." * * * "In its course it passes near the northwest side of the Turtle Mountain, which is said to be only twelve or fifteen miles from its mouth, in a straight line a little to the south of west; so that both the Little Missouri and Knife Rivers have been laid down too far southwest. It enters the Missouri with a bold current, and is one hundred and thirty-four yards wide; but its greatest depth is two feet and a half, and this, joined to its rapidity and its sand-bars, make the navigation difficult except for canoes, which may ascend it for a considerable distance." * * *

"We found this day great quantities of small onions, which grow single, the bulb of an oval form, white, about the size of a bullet, and with a leaf resembling that of the chive. On the side of a hill there was a species of dwarf cedar. It spreads its limbs along the surface of the earth, which they almost conceal by their closeness and thickness, having always a number of roots on the under side, while on the upper are a quantity of shoots, which

with their leaves seldom rise higher than six or eight inches. It is an evergreen, its leaf more delicate than that of the common cedar, though the taste and smell are the same."

On the 13th they passed a small stream, which they called Onion Creek, from that vegetable growing in great abundance on the plains near it. "The Missouri itself," proceeds the Journal, "widens very remarkably just above its junction with the Little Missouri. Immediately at the entrance of the latter it is not more than two hundred yards wide, and so shallow that it may be passed in canoes with setting poles, while a few miles above it is upward of a mile in width. Ten miles beyond Onion Creek we came to another, discharging itself on the north, in the centre of a deep bend; on ascending which for about a mile and a half, we found it to be the discharge of a pond or small lake, which seemed to have been once the bed of the Missouri. Near this lake were the remains of forty-three temporary lodges, which seem to belong to the Assiniboins, who are now on the river of the same name. A great number of swan and geese were also in it, and from this circumstance we named the creek Goose Creek, and the lake by the same name: these geese, we observed, do not build their nests on the ground or in sand-bars, but in the tops of lofty cottonwood-trees. We saw some elk and buffalo to-day, but at too great a distance to obtain any of them, though a number of the carcasses of the latter animal were strewn along the shore, having fallen through the ice, and been swept along when the river broke up. More bald eagles were seen on this part of the Missouri than we had previously met with; the small or common hawk, common in most parts of the United States, were also found here. Great quantities of geese were feeding in the prairies, and one flock of white brant, or geese with black wings, and some gray brant with them, passed

up the river, and from their flight they seemed to proceed much farther to the northwest." * * *

"April 14. We set off early, with pleasant and fair weather: a dog joined us, which we supposed had strayed from the Assiniboin camp on the lake. At two and a half miles we passed low timbered grounds and a small creek. In these low grounds are several uninhabited lodges, built with the boughs of the elm, and the remains of two recent encampments, which, from the hoops of small kegs found in them, we judged could belong to Assiniboins only, as they are the only Missouri Indians who use spirituous liquors. Of these they are so passionately fond, that it forms their chief inducement to visit the British on the Assiniboin, to whom they barter for kegs of rum their dried and pounded meat, their grease, and the skins of large and small wolves, and small foxes: the dangerous exchange is transported to their camps, with their friends and relations, and soon exhausted in brutal intoxication. So far from considering drunkenness as disgraceful, the women and children are permitted and invited to share in these excesses with their husbands and fathers, who boast how often their skill and industry as hunters have supplied them with the means of intoxication: in this, as in their other habits and customs, they resemble the Sioux, from whom they are descended. The trade with the Assiniboins and Knistenaux is encouraged by the British, because it procures provision for their *engagés* on their return from Rainy Lake to the English River and the Athabasky country, where they winter; these men being obliged, during their voyage, to pass rapidly through a country but scantily supplied with game. We halted for dinner near a large village of burrowing squirrels, who, we observe, generally select a southeasterly exposure, though they are sometimes found in the plains. At ten and a quarter miles we came to the lower point of an island, which, from the day of our

arrival there, we called Sunday Island. Here the river washes the bases of the hills on both sides, and above the island, which, with its sand-bar, extends a mile and a half, two small creeks fall in from the south; the uppermost of these, which is the largest, we called Chaboneau's Creek, after our interpreter, who once encamped on it several weeks with a party of Indians. Beyond this no white man had ever been, except two Frenchmen, one of whom, Lapage, is with us; and who, having lost their way, straggled a few miles farther, though to what point we could not ascertain. About a mile and a half beyond this island, we encamped on a point of woodland on the north, having made in all fourteen miles.

"The Assiniboina have so recently left the river that game is scarce and shy. One of the hunters shot at an otter last evening; a buffalo, too, was killed, and an elk, both so poor as to be almost unfit for use; two white bears were also seen, and a muskrat swimming across the river. The river continues wide, and of about the same rapidity as the ordinary current of the Ohio. The low grounds are wide, the moister parts containing timber, the upland extremely broken, without wood, and in some places seem as if they had slipped down in masses of several acres in surface. The mineral appearances of salts, coal, and sulphur, with the burned hill and pumice-stone, continue, and a bituminous water, about the colour of strong ley, with the taste of glauber salts and a slight tincture of alum. Many geese were feeding in the prairies, and a number of magpies, who build their nests much like those of the blackbird, in trees, and composed of small sticks, leaves, and grass, open at top: the egg is of a bluish-brown colour, freckled with reddish-brown spots. We also killed a large hooting-owl, resembling that of the United States, except that it was more booted and clad with feathers. On the hills are many aromatic herbs, resembling in taste, smell, and appear-

ance the sage, hyssop, wormwood, southernwood, juniper, and dwarf cedar; a plant, also, about two or three feet high, similar to the camphor in smell and taste; and another plant of the same size, with a long, narrow, smooth, soft leaf, of an agreeable smell and flavour, which is a favourite food of the antelope, whose necks are often perfumed by rubbing against it.

"April 15. We proceeded with a fine breeze from the south; and clear, pleasant weather. At seven miles we reached the lower point of an island in a bend to the south, which is two miles in length. Captain Clarke, who went about nine miles northward from the river, reached the high grounds, which, like those we have seen, are level plains without timber: here he observed a number of drains, which, descending from the hills, pursue a northeast course, and probably empty into the Mouse River, a branch of the Assiniboin, which, from Indian accounts, approaches very near to the Missouri at this place. Like all the rivulets of this neighbourhood, these drains are so strongly impregnated with mineral salts that they are not fit to drink. He saw, also, the remains of several camps of Assiniboins: the low grounds on both sides of the river are extensive, rich, and level. In a little pond on the north, we heard, for the first time this season, the croaking of frogs, which exactly resembled that of the small frogs in the United States. There were also in these plains great quantities of geese, and many of the grouse, or prairie-hen, as they are called by the Northwest Company's traders. The note of the male of the latter, as far as words can represent it, is *cook, cook, cook, coo, coo, coo*, the first part of which both male and female use when flying: the male, too, drums with his wings when he flies, in the same way, though not so loud, as the pheasant: they appeared to be mating. Some deer, elk, and goats were in the low grounds, and buffalo on

the sand-beaches, but they were uncommonly shy ; we also saw a black bear, and two white ones." * * *

"April 16. The morning was clear, the wind light from the southeast. The country presents the same appearance of low plains and meadows on the river, bounded a few miles back by broken hills, which end in high, level, fertile lands : the quantity of timber is, however, increasing. The appearance of minerals continues as usual, and to-day we found several stones which seemed to have been wood, first carbonated, and then petrified by the water of the Missouri, which has the same effect on many vegetable substances. There is, indeed, reason to believe that the strata of coal in the hills cause the fire, and the appearance which they exhibit of being burned. Whenever these marks present themselves in the bluffs on the river, the coal is seldom seen ; and when found in the neighbourhood of the strata of burned earth, the coal, with the sand and sulphurous matter usually accompanying it, is precisely at the same height, and nearly of the same thickness with those strata." * * *

"April 17. We travelled this day twenty-six miles through a country similar to that of yesterday, except that there were greater appearances of burned hills, furnishing large quantities of lava and pumice-stone, of the last of which we observed some pieces floating down the river, as we had previously done as low as the Little Missouri. In all the copses of wood are the remains of the Assiniboin encampments. Around us are great quantities of game, such as herds of buffalo, elk, antelope, some deer and wolves, and the tracks of bears : a curlew was also seen, and we obtained three beaver, the flesh of which is more relished by the men than any other food we have. Just before we encamped we saw some tracks of Indians, who had passed twenty-four hours before, and left four rafts, and whom we supposed to be a band of Assiniboins on their return

from war against the Indians on the Rocky Mountains." * * *

"April 18. We encamped about dark on a woody bank, having made thirteen miles. The country presented the usual variety of highlands interspersed with rich plains. In one of these we observed a species of pea, bearing a yellow flower, being now in blossom, the leaf and stalk resembling the common pea: it seldom rises higher than six inches, and the root is perennial. On the rose-bushes we also saw a quantity of the hair of the buffalo, which had become perfectly white by exposure, and resembled the wool of sheep, except that it was much finer, and more soft and silky. A buffalo which we killed yesterday had shed his long hair, and that which remained was about two inches long, thick and fine, and would have furnished five pounds of wool, of which we have no doubt an excellent cloth might be made. Our game to-day were a beaver, a deer, an elk, and some geese." * * * "The beaver on this part of the Missouri are in greater quantities, larger and fatter, and their fur is more abundant, and of a darker colour than any we had hitherto seen: their favourite food seems to be the bark of the cottonwood and willow, as we have seen no other species of tree that has been touched by them, and these they gnaw to the ground through a diameter of twenty inches."

On the 19th the wind was so high from the north-west that they could not proceed; but, being less violent the following day, "We set off," says the Journal, "about seven o'clock, and had nearly lost one of the canoes as we left the shore by the falling in of a large part of the bank. The wind, too, became again so strong that we could scarcely make one mile an hour, and the sudden squalls so dangerous to the small boats that we stopped for the night among some willows on the north, not being able to advance more than six and a half miles. In walk-

ing through the neighbouring plains we found a fertile soil covered with cottonwood, some box, alder, ash, red elm, and an undergrowth of willow, rose-bushes, honeysuckle, red willow, gooseberry, currant, and service-berries, and along the foot of the hills great quantities of hyssop. Our hunters procured elk and deer, which are now lean, and six beaver, which are fatter and more palatable. Along the plain there were also some Indian camps. Near one of these was a scaffold about seven feet high, on which were two sleds with their harness, and under it the body of a female, carefully wrapped in several dressed buffalo skins: near it lay a bag made of buffalo skin, containing a pair of moccasins, some red and blue paint, beaver's nails, scrapers for dressing hides, some dried roots, several plaits of sweet grass, and a small quantity of Mandan tobacco. These things, as well as the body itself, had probably fallen down by accident, as the custom is to place them on the scaffold. At a little distance was the body of a dog not yet decayed, who had met this reward for having dragged thus far in the sled the corpse of his mistress, to whom, according to the Indian usage, he had been sacrificed.

"April 21. Last night there was a hard white frost, and this morning the weather was cold, but clear and pleasant. The country was of the same description as within the few last days. We saw immense quantities of buffalo, elk, deer, antelope, geese, and some swan and ducks, out of which we procured three deer, four buffalo calves, which last are equal in flavour to the most delicious veal, also two beaver, and an otter. We passed one large and two small creeks on the south side, and reached at sixteen miles the mouth of Whiteearth River, coming in from the north. This river, before it reaches the low grounds near the Missouri, is a fine, bold stream, sixty yards wide, and is deep and navigable; but it is so much choked up at the entrance by the

mud of the Missouri that its mouth is not more than ten yards wide." * * *

"April 22. The day clear and cold. We passed a high bluff on the north, and plains on the south, in which were large herds of buffalo, till breakfast, when the wind became so strong ahead that we proceeded with difficulty even with the aid of the towline. Some of the party now walked across to the Whiteearth River, which here, at the distance of four miles from its mouth, approaches very near to the Missouri. It contains more water than is usual in streams of the same size at this season, with steep banks about ten or twelve feet high, and the water is much clearer than that of the Missouri. The salts, which have been mentioned as common on the banks of the Missouri, are here so abundant that in many places the ground appears perfectly white, and from this circumstance it may have derived its name. It waters an open country, and is navigable almost to its source, which is not far from the Saskashawan; and, judging from its size and course, it is probable that it extends as far as the fiftieth degree of latitude. After much delay in consequence of the high wind, we succeeded in making eleven miles, and encamped in a low ground on the south, covered with cottonwood and rabbit-berries. The hills of the Missouri, near this place, exhibit large, irregular broken masses of rocks and stones, some of which, although two hundred feet above the water, seem at some remote period to have been subject to its influence, being apparently worn smooth by the agitation of the water. These rocks and stones consist of white and gray granite, a brittle black rock, flint, limestone, freestone, some small specimens of an excellent pebble, and occasionally broken strata of a black-coloured stone, like petrified wood, which make good whetstones. The usual appearances of coal, or carbonated wood, and pumice-stone, still continue; the coal being of a better

quality, and, when burned, affording a hot and lasting fire, emitting very little smoke or flame. There are large herds of deer, elk, buffalo, and antelope in view of us. The buffalo are not so shy as the rest, for they suffer us to approach within one hundred yards before they run, and then stop and resume their pasture at a very short distance. The wolves to-day pursued a herd of them, and at length caught a calf that was unable to keep up with the rest; the mothers on these occasions defend their young as long as they can retreat as fast as the herd, but seldom return any distance to seek for them."

The two following days the wind was so violent that they made but little progress. The party were much afflicted with sore eyes, which they supposed to be occasioned by the quantities of sand which were driven from the sand-bars in such clouds as often to hide from them the view of the opposite bank. "The particles of this sand," says the Journal, "are so fine and light, that it floats for miles in the air like a column of thick smoke, and is so penetrating that nothing can be kept free from it; and we are compelled to eat, drink, and breathe it very copiously. To the same cause we attribute the disorder of one of our watches, although its cases are double and tight; since, without any defect in its works that we can discover, it will not run for more than a few minutes without stopping.

"April 25. The wind moderated this morning, but was still high: we therefore set out early, the weather being so cold that the water froze on the oars as we rowed, and about ten o'clock the wind increased so much that we were obliged to stop. This detention by the wind, and the reports from our hunters of the crookedness of the river, induced us to believe that we were at no great distance from the Yellowstone River. In order, therefore, to prevent delay as much as possible, Captain Lewis determined to go on by land in search of that

river, and make the necessary observations, so as to be enabled to proceed immediately after the boats should join him. He accordingly landed, about eleven o'clock, on the south side, accompanied by four men: the boats were prevented from going until five in the afternoon, when they went on a few miles farther, and encamped for the night at the distance of fourteen and a half miles.

"April 26. We continued our voyage in the morning, and by twelve o'clock encamped at eight miles' distance, at the junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers, where we were soon joined by Captain Lewis." * * *

"This latter river, known to the French as the *Roche Jaune*, or, as we have called it, the Yellowstone, rises, according to Indian information, in the Rocky Mountains. Its sources are near those of the Missouri and the Platte, and it may be navigated in canoes almost to its head. It runs first through a mountainous country, but which in many parts is fertile and well timbered: it then waters a rich, delightful land, broken into valleys and meadows, and well supplied with wood and water, till it reaches, near the Missouri, open meadows and low grounds, which are sufficiently timbered on its borders." * * *

"Just above the confluence we measured the two rivers, and found the bed of the Missouri five hundred and twenty yards wide, the water occupying only three hundred and thirty, and the channel deep; while the Yellowstone, including its sand-bar, occupied eight hundred and fifty-eight yards, with two hundred and ninety-seven yards of water: the deepest part of the channel was twelve feet, but the river is now falling, and seems to be nearly at its summer height.

"April 27. We left the mouth of the Yellowstone. From the point of junction a wood occupies the space between the two rivers, which, at the distance of a mile, come within two hundred and fifty yards.

of each other. There a beautiful low plain commences, and, widening as the rivers recede, extends along each of them for several miles, rising about half a mile from the Missouri into a level twelve feet higher than the river. The low plain is a few inches above high-water mark, and where it joins the higher plain there is a channel of sixty or seventy yards in width, through which a part of the Missouri, when at its greatest height, passes into the Yellowstone. At two and a half miles above the junction, and between the high and low plain, is a small lake two hundred yards wide, extending for a mile parallel with the Missouri, along the edge of the upper plain. At the lower extremity of this lake, about four hundred yards from the Missouri, and twice that distance from the Yellowstone, is a situation highly eligible for a trading establishment: it is in the high plain, which extends back three miles in width, and seven or eight miles in length, along the Yellowstone, where it is bordered by an extensive body of woodland, and along the Missouri with less breadth, till three miles above it is circumscribed by the hills within a space four yards in width. A sufficient quantity of limestone for building may easily be procured near the junction of the rivers: it does not lie in regular strata, but is in large irregular masses, of a light colour, and apparently of an excellent quality. Game, too, is very abundant, and as yet quite gentle: above all, its elevation recommends it as preferable to the land at the confluence of the rivers, which their variable channels may render very insecure. The northwest wind rose so high at eleven o'clock that we were obliged to stop till about four in the afternoon, when we proceeded till dusk. On the south a beautiful plain separates the two rivers, till at about six miles there is a piece of low timbered ground, and a little above it bluffs, where the country rises gradually from the river: the situations on the north are more

high and open. We encamped on that side, the wind, the sand which it raised, and the rapidity of the current having prevented our advancing more than eight miles; during the latter part of the day the river became wider, and crowded with sand-bars. The game was in such plenty that we killed only what was necessary for our subsistence. For several days past we have seen great numbers of buffalo lying dead along the shore, some of them partly devoured by the wolves. They have either sunk through the ice during the winter, or been drowned in attempting to cross; or else, after crossing to some high bluff, have found themselves too much exhausted either to ascend or swim back again, and perished for want of food: in this situation we found several small parties of them. There are geese, too, in abundance, and more bald eagles than we have hitherto observed; the nests of these last being always accompanied by those of two or three magpies, who are their inseparable attendants."

CHAPTER VIII.

Usual Appearance of Salt.—The formidable Character of the White Bear.—Porcupine River described.—Beautiful Appearance of the surrounding Country.—Immense Quantities of Game.—Milk River described.—Big Dry River.—An Instance of uncommon Tenacity of Life in a White Bear.—Narrow Escape of one of the Party from that Animal.—A still more remarkable Instance.—Muscleshell River.

As they advanced the country on both sides was much broken, the elevations approaching nearer the river, and forming bluffs, some of a white, others of a red colour, exhibiting the usual appearances of minerals, and there were some burned hills, though without any pumice-stone: the salts were in greater

quantities than usual, and the banks and sand-bars were covered with a white incrustation like frost. The beaver had committed great devastation among the trees, one of which, nearly three feet in diameter, had been gnawed through by them.

"April 29. We proceeded early," continues the Journal, "with a moderate wind. Captain Lewis, who was on shore with one hunter, met about eight o'clock two white bears. Of the strength and ferocity of this animal the Indians had given us dreadful accounts; they never attack him but in parties of six or eight persons, and even then are often defeated, with the loss of one or more of the party. Having no weapons but bows and arrows, and the bad guns with which the traders supply them, they are obliged to approach very near to the bear; and as no wound except through the head or heart is mortal, they frequently fall a sacrifice if they miss their aim. He rather attacks than avoids man; and such is the terror he has inspired, that the Indians who go in quest of him paint themselves, and perform all the superstitious rites customary when they make war on a neighbouring nation. Hitherto, those we had seen did not appear desirous of encountering us; but, although to a skilful rifleman the danger is very much diminished, the white bear is still a terrible animal. On approaching these two, both Captain Lewis and the hunter fired, and each wounded a bear. One of them made his escape; the other turned upon Captain Lewis, and pursued him for seventy or eighty yards; but, being badly wounded, he could not run so fast as to prevent him from reloading his piece, which he again aimed at him, and a third shot from the hunter brought him to the ground. It was a male, not quite full grown, and weighed about three hundred pounds: the legs were somewhat longer than those of the black bear, and the claws and tusks much larger and longer. Its colour was a yellowish brown, the eyes small, black, and

piercing. The front of the fore legs of the animal, near the feet, is usually black, and the fur is finer, thicker, and deeper than that of the black bear; added to which, it is a more furious animal, and very remarkable for the wounds which it will bear without dying.*

"We are surrounded with deer, elk, buffalo, antelope, and their companions the wolves, who have become more numerous, and make great ravages among them: the hills are here much more rough and high, and almost overhang the banks of the river. There are greater appearances of coal than we have hitherto seen, the strata of it being in some places six feet thick, and there are also strata of burned earth, which are always on the same level with those of the coal."

The next day they passed a fertile country, with but little timber, and saw some Indian lodges, which did not appear to have been recently inhabited. "The game," says the journalist, "continues abundant. We killed the largest male elk we have yet seen: on placing it in its natural erect position, we found that it measured five feet three inches from the point of the hoof to the top of the shoulder. The an-

* As an instance of the astonishing strength of this animal, the Rev. Mr. Parker, in his Tour to the Rocky Mountains, states that Lieutenant Stein, of the Dragoons, told him that he once saw some buffaloes passing near bushes where a grizzly bear lay concealed: the bear, with one stroke of his paw, tore three ribs from one of the buffaloes, and laid it dead.

The ribs of the buffalo are not so invulnerable as the forehead. Townsend, at page 97, relates that he himself, to try the effect of a ball aimed directly at the forehead of a bull buffalo, cautiously approached to within ten feet of the animal, and discharged one of the barrels of his double rifle, which carried balls twenty to the pound. "The animal shook his head, pawed up the ground with his hoofs, and making a sudden spring, accompanied by a terrific roar, turned to make his escape." A shot from the second barrel in a vital part brought him down. On examination, the first ball was found flattened against the skull, without having produced the smallest fracture.

telopes are yet lean, and the females are with young. These fleet and quick-sighted animals are generally the victims of their curiosity. When they first see the hunters, they run with great velocity: if he lies down on the ground, and lifts up his arm, his hat, or his foot, they return with a light trot to look at the object, and sometimes go and return two or three times, till they approach within reach of the rifle. So, too, they sometimes leave their flock to go and look at the wolves, which crouch down, and, if the antelope is frightened at first, repeat the same manœuvre, and sometimes relieve each other, till they decoy it from the party, when they seize it. But, generally, the wolves take them as they are crossing the rivers; for, although swift on foot, they are not good swimmers."

May opened with cold weather and high winds, which greatly retarded their progress. On the 2d snow fell so as to cover the ground to the depth of an inch, contrasting strangely with the advanced vegetation. "Our game to-day," proceeds the Journal, "were deer, elk, and buffalo: we also procured three beaver. They were here quite gentle, as they have not been hunted; but when the hunters are in pursuit, they never leave their huts during the day. This animal we esteem a great delicacy, particularly the tail, which, when boiled, resembles in flavour the fresh tongues and sounds of the codfish, and is generally so large as to afford a plentiful meal for two men. One of the hunters, in passing near an old Indian camp, found several yards of scarlet cloth suspended on the bough of a tree, as a sacrifice to the Deity, by the Assiniboins; the custom of making these offerings being common among that people, as, indeed, among all the Indians on the Missouri. The air was sharp this evening; the water froze on the oars as we rowed.

"May 3. The weather was quite cold, the ice a quarter of an inch thick in the kettle, and the snow

still remained on the hills, though it had melted from the plains. The wind, too, continued high from the west, but not so violently as to prevent our going on. At two miles from our encampment we passed a curious collection of bushes, about thirty feet high, and ten or twelve in diameter, tied in the form of a fascine, and standing on end in the middle of the low ground: this, too, we supposed to have been left by the Indians as a religious sacrifice. The low grounds on the river are much wider than common, sometimes extending from five to nine miles to the highlands, which are much lower than heretofore, not being more than fifty or sixty feet above the lower plain. Through all this valley traces of the ancient bed of the river are everywhere visible; and, since the hills have become lower, the strata of coal, burned earth, and pumice-stone have in a great measure ceased, there being, in fact, none to-day. At the distance of fourteen miles we reached the mouth of a river on the north, which, from the unusual number of porcupines near it, we called Porcupine River. This is a bold and beautiful stream, one hundred and twelve yards wide, though the water is only forty yards at its entrance." * * * "The water of this river is transparent, and is the only one that is so of all those that fall into the Missouri. From the quantity of water which it contains, its direction, and the nature of the country through which it passes, it is not improbable that its sources may be near the main body of the Saskashawan; and, as in high water it can be no doubt navigated to a considerable distance, it may be rendered the means of intercourse with the Athabasky country, from which the Northwest Company derive so many of their valuable furs."

* * * "We saw vast quantities of buffalo, elk, deer, principally of the long-tailed kind, antelope, beaver, geese, ducks, brant, and some swan. The porcupines, too, are numerous, and so careless and

clumsy that we can approach very near without disturbing them as they are feeding on the young willows. Towards evening we also found, for the first time, the nest of a goose among some driftwood, all that we have hitherto seen being on the tops of broken trees, on the forks, and invariably from fifteen to twenty feet or more in height."

* * * "May 4. There are, as usual, vast quantities of game, and extremely gentle; the male buffalo, particularly, will scarcely give way to us, and, as we approach, will merely look at us for a moment as something new, and then quietly resume their feeding. In the course of the day we passed some old Indian hunting-camps, one of which consisted of two large lodges fortified with a circular fence twenty or thirty feet in diameter, and made of timber laid horizontally, the beams overlaying each other to the height of five feet, and covered with the trunks and limbs of trees that have drifted down the river. The lodges themselves are formed by three or more strong sticks, about the size of a man's leg or arm, and twelve feet long, which are attached at the top by a withe of small willows, and spread out so as to form at the base a circle of from ten to fourteen feet in diameter: against these are placed pieces of driftwood and fallen timber, usually in three ranges, one on the other, and the interstices are covered with leaves, bark, and straw, so as to form a conical figure about ten feet high, with a small aperture in one side for the door. It is, however, at best, a very imperfect shelter against the inclemencies of the seasons.

"May 5. We had a fine morning, and, the wind being from the east, we used our sails. At the distance of five miles we came to a small island, and twelve miles farther encamped on the north, at the distance of seventeen miles. The country, like that of yesterday, is beautiful in the extreme. Among the vast quantities of game around us, we distin-

guish a small species of goose, differing considerably from the common Canadian goose; its neck, head, and beak being much thicker, larger, and stronger in proportion to its size, which is nearly a third smaller; its noise, too, resembling more that of the brant, or of a young goose that has not yet fully acquired its note. In other respects—its colour, habits, and the number of feathers in the tail, the two species correspond: this species also associates in flocks with the large geese, but we have not seen it pair off with them. The white brant is about the size of the common brown brant, or two thirds that of the common goose, than which it is also six inches shorter from the extremity of the wings, though the beak, head, and neck are larger and stronger. The body and wings are of a beautiful pure white, except the black feathers of the first and second joints of the wings; the beak and legs are of a reddish or flesh-coloured white; the eye of a moderate size, the pupil of a deep sea-green, encircled with a ring of yellowish brown; the tail consists of sixteen feathers equally long; the flesh is dark, and, as well as its note, differs but little from that of the common brant, which in form and habits it resembles, and with which it sometimes unites in a common flock. The white brant also associate by themselves in large flocks; but, as they do not seem to be mated or paired off, it is doubtful whether they reside here during the summer for the purpose of rearing their young.

"The wolves are also very abundant, and are of two species. First, the small wolf, or burrowing-dog of the prairies, which are found in almost all the open plains: it is of an intermediate size between the fox and dog, very delicately formed, fleet, and active; the ears are large, erect, and pointed; the head long and pointed, like that of the fox; the tail long and bushy; the hair and fur of a pale reddish-brown colour, though much coarser than that of the

fox; the eye of a deep sea-green colour, small and piercing: the claws rather longer than those of the wolf of the Atlantic States, which animal, as far as we can perceive, is not to be found on this side of the River Platte. These wolves usually associate in bands of ten or twelve, and are rarely, if ever, seen alone, not being powerful enough singly to attack a deer or antelope. They live and rear their young in burrows, which they fix near some pass or spot much frequented by game, and sally out in a body against any animal which they can overpower, but on the slightest alarm retire to their burrows, making a noise exactly like that of a small dog.

“The second species is lower, shorter in the legs, and thicker than the Atlantic wolf. Their colour, which is not affected by the seasons, is of every variety of shade, from a gray or blackish brown to a cream-coloured white. They do not burrow, nor do they bark, but howl; they frequent the woods and plains, and skulk along the skirts of the buffalo herds, in order to attack the weary or wounded.

“Captain Clarke and one of the hunters met this evening the largest brown bear we have seen. As they fired he did not attempt to attack, but fled with a most tremendous roar; and such was his extraordinary tenacity of life, that, although he had five balls passed through his lungs, and five other wounds, he swam more than half across the river to a sand-bar, and survived twenty minutes. He weighed between five and six hundred pounds at least, and measured eight feet seven inches and a half from the nose to the extremity of the hind feet, five feet ten inches and a half round the breast, three feet eleven inches round the neck, one foot eleven inches round the middle of the fore leg, and his claws, five on each foot, were four inches and three eighths in length. This animal differs from the common black bear in having his claws much longer and more blunt; his tail shorter; his hair of a red-

dish or bay brown, longer, finer, and more abundant; his liver, lungs, and heart much larger even in proportion to his size, the heart particularly, being equal to that of a large ox; and his maw ten times larger. Besides fish and flesh, he feeds on roots and every kind of wild fruit."

* * * "May 6. The morning being fair, and the wind favourable, we set sail, and proceeded very well the greater part of the day. The country continues level, rich, and beautiful; the low grounds wide, and, comparatively with the other parts of the Missouri, well supplied with wood. The appearances of coal, pumice-stone, and burned earth have ceased, though the salts of tartar or vegetable salts continue on the banks and sand-bars, and sometimes in the little ravines at the base of the hills."

They this day passed three streams, or, more properly, beds of streams (for, though they contained some water in standing pools, they discharged none), the first being twenty-five yards wide, the second fifty, and the last no less than two hundred, and to which they gave the names of Little Dry and Big Dry Creeks, and Big Dry River.

The party proceeded up the river at the rate of about twenty miles a day, through beautiful and fertile plains, which rose gradually from the low grounds bordering its banks to the height of fifty feet, and extended a perfect level, at that elevation, as far in places as the eye could reach. On the 8th they passed a considerable stream, which, from the whitish colour of its water, they called Milk River; and on the following day the bed of a river, which, though as wide as that of the Missouri, like those passed a few days before, contained no running water.

"The game," says the Journal, "is now in great quantities, particularly the elk and buffalo, which last are so gentle that the men are obliged to drive them out of the way with sticks and stones. The

ravages of the beaver are very apparent. In one place the timber was entirely prostrated for a space of three acres in front on the river, and one in depth, and a great part of it removed, though the trees were numerous, and some of them as thick as the body of a man." * * * "For several days past the river has been as wide as it generally is near its mouth; but, as it is much shallower, crowded with sand-bars, and the colour of the water has become much clearer, we do not yet despair of reaching the Rocky Mountains, for which we are very anxious."

The party were much troubled with boils and imposthumes, and also with sore eyes: for the former they made use of emollient poultices, and an application of two grains of white vitriol, and one of sugar of lead, dissolved in an ounce of water, for the eyes.

"May 11: The wind," continues the Journal, "blew very hard in the night; but, having abated this morning, we went on very well, till in the afternoon it became more violent, and retarded our progress: the current, too, was strong, the river very crooked, and the banks, as usual, constantly precipitating themselves in large masses into the water. The highlands are broken, and approach nearer the river than they do below. The soil, however, of both hills and low grounds appears as fertile as that farther down the river: it consists of a black-looking loam, with a small portion of sand, which covers the hills and bluffs to the depth of twenty or thirty feet, and, when thrown into water, dissolves as readily as loaf-sugar, and effervesces like marl. There are also numerous appearances of quartz and mineral salts: the first is most commonly seen in the faces of the bluffs; the second is found on the hills as well as the low grounds, and in the gulleys which come down from the hills; it lies in a crust of two or three inches in depth, and may be swept up with a feather in large quantities. There

is no longer any appearance of coal, burned earth, or pumice-stone. We saw and visited some high hills on the north side, about three miles from the river, whose tops were covered with the pitch-pine. This is the first pine we have seen on the Missouri, and it is like that of Virginia, except that the leaves are somewhat longer. Among this pine is also a dwarf cedar, sometimes between three or four feet high, but generally spreading itself like a vine along the surface of the earth, which it covers very closely, putting out roots from the under side. The fruit and smell resemble those of the common red cedar, but the leaf is finer and more delicate. The tops of the hills where these plants grow have a soil quite different from that just described: the basis of it is usually yellow or white clay, and the general appearance light-coloured, sandy, and barren, some scattering tufts of sedge being almost its only herbage. About five in the afternoon, one of our men, who had been afflicted with boils, being suffered to walk on shore, came running to the boats with loud cries, and every symptom of terror and distress. For some time after we had taken him on board, he was so much out of breath as to be unable to describe the cause of his anxiety; but he at length told us that about a mile and a half below he had shot a brown bear, which immediately turned, and was in close pursuit of him; though, being badly wounded, he could not overtake him. Captain Lewis, with seven men, immediately went in search of him; and, having found his track, followed him by the blood for a mile, found him concealed in some thick brushwood, and shot him with two balls through the scull. Though somewhat smaller than that killed a few days ago, he was a monstrous animal, and a most terrible enemy. Our man had shot him through the centre of the lungs; yet he had pursued him furiously for half a mile, then returned more than twice that distance, and with his paws

had prepared himself a bed in the earth two feet deep and five feet long, and was perfectly alive when they found him, which was at least two hours after he received the wound. The wonderful power of life which these animals possess renders them dreadful: their very track in the mud or sand, which we have sometimes found eleven inches long, and seven and a quarter wide, exclusive of the claws, is alarming; and we had rather encounter two Indians than meet a single brown bear. There is no chance of killing them by a single shot unless the ball goes through the brains, and this is very difficult on account of two large muscles which cover the side of the forehead, and the sharp projection of the centre of the frontal bone, which is also thick. The fleece and skin of this bear were a heavy burden for two men, and the oil amounted to eight gallons.

"May 12. The weather being clear and calm, we set out early. On both sides of the river the country is rough and broken, the low grounds becoming narrower. The soil of the hills has now altered its texture considerably; their base, like that of the river plains, is, as usual, a rich black loam, while from the middle to the summits they are composed of a light brown-coloured earth, poor and steril, and intermixed with a coarse white sand."

The character of the country continued much the same the two following days, but the current of the river became stronger, and its waters clearer, as they advanced. Game was, as usual, in great abundance. "Towards evening (on the 14th) the men in the hindmost canoes discovered a large brown bear lying in the open grounds, about three hundred paces from the river. Six of them, all good hunters, immediately went to attack him, and, concealing themselves by a small eminence, came unperceived within forty paces of him. Four of the hunters now fired, and each lodged a ball in his body, two of them directly through the lungs. The furious

animal sprang up and ran open-mouthed upon them. As he came near, the two hunters who had reserved their fire gave him two wounds, one of which, breaking his shoulder, retarded his motion for a moment; but before they could reload he was so near that they were obliged to run to the river, and before they had reached it he had almost overtaken them. Two jumped into the canoe; the other four separated, and, concealing themselves in the willows, fired as fast as they could reload. They struck him several times, but, instead of weakening the monster, each shot seemed only to direct him towards the hunters, till at last he pursued two of them so closely that they threw aside their guns and pouches, and jumped down a perpendicular bank of twenty feet into the river: the bear sprang after them, and was within a few feet of the hindmost, when one of the hunters on shore shot him in the head, and finally killed him. They dragged him to the shore, and found that eight balls had passed through him in different directions. The bear was old, and the meat tough, so that they took the skin only, and rejoined us at camp, where we had been as much terrified by an accident of a different kind.

"This was the narrow escape of one of our canoes, containing all our papers, instruments, medicine, and almost every article indispensable for the success of our enterprise. The canoe being under sail, a sudden squall of wind struck her obliquely and turned her considerably. The man at the helm, who was unluckily the worst steersman of the party, became alarmed, and, instead of putting her before the wind, luffed her up into it. The wind was so high that it forced the brace of the squaresail out of the hand of the man who was attending it, and instantly upset the canoe, which would have been turned bottom upward but for the resistance made by the awning. Such was the confusion on board, and the waves ran so high, that it was half a minute

before she righted, and then nearly full of water, but by bailing her out she was kept from sinking until they rowed ashore. Besides the loss of the lives of three men, who, not being able to swim, would probably have perished, we should have been deprived of nearly everything necessary for our purposes, at a distance of between two and three thousand miles from any place where we could supply the deficiency."

Fortunately, the only loss sustained by this accident, which threatened to be so serious, was that of some of their medicines, which were spoiled by being wet. Nothing special occurred the two following days.

"May 17. We set out early," continues the Journal, "and proceeded on very well. The banks being firm, and the shore bold, we were enabled to use the towline, which, whenever the banks will permit it, is the safest and most expeditious mode of ascending the river, except under a sail with a steady breeze." * * * "The country in general is rugged, the hills high, with their summits and sides partially covered with pine and cedar, and their bases on both sides washed by the river. Like those already mentioned, the lower part of these hills is a dark rich loam, while the upper region, for one hundred and fifty feet, consists of a whitish brown sand, so hard as in many places to resemble stone, though in fact very little stone or rock of any kind is to be seen on the hills. The bed of the Missouri is much narrower than usual, being not more than between two and three hundred yards in width, with an uncommonly large proportion of gravel; but the sand-bars, and low points covered with willows, have almost entirely disappeared: the timber on the river consists of scarcely anything more than a few scattered cottonwood-trees. The saline incrustations along the banks and the foot of the hills are more abundant than usual. The game is in great quantities, but the

buffalo are not so numerous as they were some days ago. Two rattlesnakes were seen to-day, and one of them we killed: it resembles those of the middle Atlantic states, being about two feet six inches long, of a yellowish brown on the back and sides, variegated with a row of oval dark brown spots, lying transversely on the back from the neck to the tail, and having two other rows of circular spots of the same colour on the sides along the edge of the scuta: there are one hundred and seventy-six scuta on the belly, and seventeen on the tail."

* * * "Late at night we were roused by the sergeant of the guard, in consequence of fire having communicated to a tree overhanging our camp. The wind was so high, that we had not removed the camp more than a few minutes when a large part of the tree fell, precisely on the spot it had occupied, and would have crushed us if we had not been alarmed in time."

The character of the country was fast changing: the willow had for the most part disappeared, and the cottonwood, almost the only timber remaining, was becoming scarce.

"May 19. The last night," continues the narrative, "was disagreeably cold; and in the morning there was a very heavy fog, which obscured the river so much as to prevent our seeing the way. This is the first fog of any degree of density which we have experienced. There was also, last evening, a fall of dew, the second which we have observed since entering this extensive open country. About eight o'clock the fog dispersed, and we proceeded with the aid of the towline. The country resembles that of yesterday, high hills closely bordering the river. In the afternoon the river became crooked, and contained more sawyers or floating timber than we have seen in the same space since leaving the Platte. Our game consisted of deer, beaver, and elk: we also killed a brown bear, which, although

shot through the heart, ran at their usual pace nearly a quarter of a mile before he fell."

On the 20th they reached the mouth of a large river on the south, and encamped for the day at the upper point of its junction with the Missouri. "This stream," says the Journal, "which we suppose to be that called by the Minnetarees the Muscleshell River, empties into the Missouri two thousand two hundred and seventy miles above the mouth of the latter river, and in latitude $47^{\circ} 24'$ north. It is one hundred and ten yards wide, and contains more water than streams of that size usually do in this country." Among the game killed this day were two large owls, with long feathers on the sides of the head resembling ears, and which they took to be the hooting owls, though they were much larger, and their colours brighter than those common in the United States.

"May 21. The morning being very fine, we were able to employ the rope, and made twenty miles. In its course the Missouri makes a sudden and extensive bend towards the south, to receive the waters of the Muscleshell. The neck of land thus formed, though itself high, is lower than the surrounding country; and makes a waving valley, extending for a great distance to the northward, with a fertile soil, which, though without wood, produces a fine turf of low grass, some herbs, and vast quantities of prickly pear. The country on the south is high, broken, and crowned with some pine and dwarf cedar; the leaf of this pine is longer than that of the common pitch or red pine of Virginia, the cone is longer and narrower, the imbrications wider and thicker, and the whole frequently covered with rosin."

* * * "May 22. The river continues about two hundred and fifty yards wide, with fewer sand-bars, and the current more gentle and regular. Game is no longer in such abundance since leaving the Mus-

clshell. We have caught very few fish on this side of the Mandans, and these were the white catfish of from two to five pounds. We killed a deer and a bear: we have not seen in this quarter the black bear, common in the United States and on the lower parts of the Missouri, nor have we discerned any of their tracks, which may easily be distinguished by the shortness of its claws from the brown, grizzly, or white bear, all of which seem to be of the same family, assuming those colours at different seasons of the year."

CHAPTER IX.

The Party continue their Route.—Judith River.—Indian Mode of taking the Buffalo.—Slaughter River.—Phenomena of Nature.—Walls on the Banks of the Missouri.—The Party encamp, to ascertain which of the Streams constitute the Missouri.—Captain Lewis leaves the Party to explore the Northern Fork, and Captain Clarke explores the Southern.—Narrow Escape of one of Captain Lewis's Party.

"MAY 23. Last night the frost was severe, and this morning the ice appeared along the edges of the river, and the water froze on our oars. At the distance of a mile we passed the entrance of a creek on the north, which we named Teapot Creek: it is fifteen yards wide, and, although it has running water at a small distance from its mouth, yet it discharges none into the Missouri, resembling, we believe, most of the creeks of this hilly country, the waters of which are absorbed by the thirsty soil near the river. They indeed afford but little water in any part; and even that is so strongly tainted with salts that it is unfit for use, though all the wild animals are very fond of it. On experiment it was

found to be moderately purgative." * * * "The river has become more rapid, the country the same as yesterday, except that there is rather more rocks on the face of the hills, and some small spruce pine appears among the pitch." * * *

"May 24. The water in the kettles froze one eighth of an inch during the night; ice appears along the margin of the river, and the cottonwood-trees, which have lost nearly all their leaves by the frost, are putting forth other buds." * * * "At twenty-four and a half miles we reached a point of woodland on the south, where we observed that the trees had no leaves, and encamped for the night. The high country through which we have passed for some days, and where we now are, we suppose to be a continuation of what the French traders called the Côte Noire, or Black Hills. The country thus denominated consists of high, broken, irregular hills, and short chains of mountains, sometimes one hundred and twenty miles in width, sometimes narrower, but always much higher than the country on either side. They commence about the head of the Kansas, where they diverge; the first ridge going westward, along the northern shore of the Arkansas; the second approaching the Rocky Mountains obliquely, in a course a little to the W. of N.W.; and, after passing the Platte above its forks, and intersecting the Yellowstone near the Big Bend, they cross the Missouri at this place, and probably swell the country as far as the Saskashawan, though, as they are represented much smaller here than to the south, they may not reach that river."

The next day they proceeded onward, availing themselves of the towline wherever the banks permitted its use. They were much incommoded by barriers of stone which had been forced into the river by the spring torrents. In the course of the day they saw several herds of the big-horned animal, and killed some of them.

VOL. I.—S

"May 26. We proceeded on at an early hour by means of the towline, using our oars merely in passing the river, to take advantage of the best banks. There are now scarcely any low grounds on the river, the hills being high, and in many places pressing on both sides to the verge of the water."

At the distance of thirteen miles from their starting-place in the morning, Captain Lewis ascended some hills on the north side of the river, from the summits of which he had the first view of the Rocky Mountains, "the object," the journalist remarks, "of all our hopes, and the reward of all our ambition. On both sides of the river, and at no great distance from it, the mountains followed its course: above these, at the distance of fifty miles from us, an irregular range of mountains spread themselves from west to northwest from his position. To the north of these, a few elevated points, the most remarkable of which bore north 65° west, appeared above the horizon; and, as the sun shone on the snows of their summits, he obtained a clear and satisfactory view of those mountains where are the sources of the Missouri and the Columbia." * * *

"At the distance of five miles, between high bluffs, we passed a very difficult rapid, reaching quite across the river, where the water is deep, the channel narrow, and gravel obstructing it on each side. We had great difficulty in ascending it, although we used both the rope and the pole, and doubled the crews. This is the most considerable rapid on the Missouri, and, in fact, the only place where there is a sudden descent. As we were labouring up it, a female elk, with its fawn, swam down through the waves, which ran very high, and obtained for the place the name of the Elk Rapids." * * *

"The country has now become desert and barren: the appearances of coal, burned earth, pumice-stone, salts, and quartz continue as yesterday; but there is no timber, except the thinly-scattered pine and

spruce on the summits of the hills or along the sides. The only animals we have observed are the elk, the bighorn, and the hare common in this country." * * *

"May 27. The wind was so high that we did not start till ten o'clock, and even then were obliged to use the line during the greater part of the day. The river has become exceedingly rapid, with a very perceptible descent. Its general width is about two hundred yards: the shoals, too, are more frequent, and the rocky points at the mouth of the gulleys more troublesome to pass." * * * "The water is bordered by high rugged bluffs, composed of irregular but horizontal strata of yellow and brown, or black clay, brown and yellowish white sand, soft yellowish white sandstone, hard dark brown freestone, and also large, round, kidney-formed, irregular separate masses of a hard black ironstone, imbedded in the clay and sand: some coal, or carbonated wood, also makes its appearance in the cliffs, as do also its usual attendants, the pumice-stone and burned earth." * * *

"May 28. The weather was dark and cloudy, the air smoky, and there fell a few drops of rain. At ten o'clock we had again a light sprinkling of rain, attended with distant thunder, which is the first that has occurred since our leaving the Mandans. We employed the line generally, with the addition of the pole at the ripples and rocky points, which we find more numerous and troublesome than those we passed yesterday. The water is very rapid round these points, and we are sometimes obliged to steer the canoes between the points of sharp rocks rising a few inches above the surface of the water, and so near to each other that, if our ropes give way, the force of the current drives the sides of the canoes against them, and must inevitably upset them, or dash them to pieces. These cords are very slender, being almost all made of elk-skin, and much worn

and rotted by exposure to the weather. Several times they have given way, but, fortunately, always in places where there was room for the canoe to turn without striking the rock; yet, with all our precautions, it was with infinite risk and labour that we passed these points. An Indian pole for building floated down the river, and was worn at one end as if dragged along the ground in travelling: several other articles were also brought down by the current, which indicate that the Indians are probably at no great distance from us; and, judging from a foot-ball, which resembles those used by the Minnetarees near the Mandans, we conjecture that they must be a band of the Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie. The appearance of the river and surrounding country continued as usual, till, towards evening, at about fifteen miles, we reached a large creek on the north, thirty-five yards wide, discharging some water, and which we named after one of our men, Thompson's Creek. Here the country assumed a totally different aspect: the hills retired on both sides from the river, which spreads to more than three times its former size, and is filled with a number of small handsome islands covered with cottonwood. The low grounds on its banks are again wide, fertile, and enriched with trees: those on the north are particularly wide, the hills being comparatively low, and opening into three large valleys, which extend themselves for a considerable distance towards the north. These appearances of vegetation are delightful after the dreary hills among which we have passed; and we have now to congratulate ourselves at having escaped from the last ridges of the Black Mountains. On leaving Thompson's Creek we passed two small islands, and at twenty-three miles' distance encamped among some timber on the north, opposite to a small creek, which we named Bull Creek. The bighorn are in great quantities, and must bring forth their young at a very

early season, as they are now half grown. One of the party saw a large bear also; but, being at a distance from the river, and having no timber to conceal him, he would not venture to fire.

"May 29. Last night we were alarmed by a new sort of enemy. A buffalo swam over from the opposite side, and to the spot where lay one of our canoes, over which he clambered to the shore: then, taking fright, he ran full speed up the bank towards our fires, and passed within eighteen inches of the heads of some of the men before the sentinel could make him change his course. Still more alarmed, he ran down between four fires, and within a few inches of the heads of a second row of the men, and would have broken into our lodge if the barking of the dog had not stopped him. He suddenly turned to the right, and was out of sight in a moment, leaving us all in confusion, every one seizing his rifle and inquiring the cause of the alarm. On learning what had happened, we had to rejoice at suffering no more injury than some damage to the guns that were in the canoe which the buffalo crossed."

"* * * "We passed an island and two sand-bars, and at the distance of two and a half miles came to a handsome river, which discharges itself on the south, and which we ascended to the distance of a mile and a half: we called it Judith's River. It rises in the Rocky Mountains, in about the same place with the Muscleshell, and near the Yellowstone River. Its entrance is one hundred yards wide from one bank to the other, the water occupying about seventy-five yards, and being in greater quantity than that of the Muscleshell River." * * *

"There were great numbers of the argalea, or big-horned animals, in the high country through which it passes, and of beaver in its waters. Just above the entrance of it we saw the ashes of the fires of one hundred and twenty-six lodges, which appeared to have been deserted about twelve or fifteen days,

and on the other side of the Missouri a large encampment, apparently formed by the same nation. On examining some moccasins which we found there, our Indian woman said that they did not belong to her own nation, the Snake Indians, but she thought they indicated a tribe on this side of the Rocky Mountains, and to the north of the Missouri: indeed, it is probable that they were the Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie. At the distance of six and a half miles the hills again approach the brink of the river, and the stones washed down from them form a very bad rapid, with rocks and ripples more numerous and difficult than those we passed on the 27th and 28th." * * * "On the north we passed a precipice about one hundred and twenty feet high, under which lay scattered the remains of at least one hundred carcasses of buffalo, although the water, which had washed away the lower part of the hill, must have carried off many of the dead.

"These buffalo had been chased down the precipice in a way very common on the Missouri, and by which vast herds are destroyed in a moment. The mode of hunting is to select one of the most active and fleet young men, who is disguised by a buffalo skin round his body; the skin of the head, with the ears and horns, being fastened on his own in such a way as to deceive the animal. Thus dressed, he fixes himself at a convenient distance between a herd of buffalo and any of the river precipices, which sometimes extend for miles. His companions in the mean time get in the rear and on the sides of the herd, and at a given signal show themselves, and advance towards them. The buffalo instantly take the alarm, and, finding the hunters beside them, they run towards the disguised Indian or decoy, who leads them on at full speed towards the river, when, suddenly securing himself in some crevice of the cliff which he had previously fixed on, the herd is left on the brink of the precipice. It is then

impossible for the foremost to retreat, or even to stop: they are pressed on by the hindmost rank, which, seeing no danger but from the hunters, goad on those before them, till the whole are precipitated over the cliff, and the shore is strewed with their dead bodies. Sometimes, in this perilous seduction, the Indian himself is either trodden under foot by the rapid movements of the buffalo, or, missing his footing in the cliff, is urged down the precipice by the falling herd. The Indians then select as much meat as they wish, and the rest is abandoned to the wolves, and creates a most dreadful stench. The wolves which had been feasting on these carcasses were very fat, and so gentle that one of them was killed with a spoon." * * *

" May 30. The rain, which commenced last evening, continued with little intermission till eleven this morning, when, the high wind which accompanied it having abated, we set out. More rain has now fallen than we have had since the 1st of September last, and many circumstances indicated our approach to a climate differing considerably from that of the country through which we have been passing: the air of the open country is astonishingly dry and pure. Observing that the case of our sextant, though perfectly seasoned, shrank, and the joints opened, we tried several experiments, by which it appeared that a table-spoonful of water, exposed in a saucer to the air, would evaporate in thirty-six hours, when the mercury did not stand higher than the temperate point at the greatest heat of the day. The river, notwithstanding the rain, is much clearer than it was a few days past; but we advance with great labour and difficulty, the rapid current, the ripples, and rocky points rendering the navigation more embarrassing than even that of yesterday." * * * "On ascending the hills near the river, one of the party found that there was snow mixed with the rain on the heights, a little back of

which the country becomes perfectly level on both sides of the river. There is now no timber on the hills, and only a few scattered cottonwood-trees, ash, box-alder, and willows along the water. In the course of the day we passed several encampments of Indians, the most recent of which seemed to have been evacuated about five weeks since; and, from the several apparent dates, we supposed that they were formed by a band of about one hundred lodges, who were travelling slowly up the river. Although no part of the Missouri from the Minnetarees to this place exhibits signs of permanent settlements, yet none seem exempt from the transient visits of hunting-parties. We know that the Minnetarees of the Missouri extend their excursions on the south side of the river as high as the Yellowstone, and the Assiniboinis visit the northern side, most probably as high as Porcupine River. All the lodges between that place and the Rocky Mountains we supposed to belong to the Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie, who live on the south fork of the Saskashawan."

They had to encounter the same obstructions and difficulties the following day. "At nine miles," says the journalist, "we came to a high wall of black rock, rising from the water's edge on the south above the cliffs of the river: this continued about a quarter of a mile, and was succeeded by a high open plain, till three miles farther a second wall, two hundred feet high, rose on the same side. Three miles farther, a wall of the same kind, about two hundred feet high and twelve in thickness, appeared to the north.

"These hills and river cliffs exhibit a most extraordinary and romantic appearance. They rise in most places nearly perpendicular from the river, to the height of between two and three hundred feet, and are formed of very white sandstone, so soft as to yield readily to the action of water, but in the upper part of which lie imbedded two or three thin

horizontal strata of white freestone unaffected by the rain; and on the top is a dark rich loam, which forms a gradually ascending plain, from a mile to a mile and a half in extent, when the hills again rise abruptly to the height of about three hundred feet more. In trickling down the cliffs the water has worn the soft sandstone into a thousand grotesque figures, among which, with a little fancy, may be discerned elegant ranges of freestone buildings, with columns variously sculptured, and supporting long and elegant galleries, while the parapets are adorned with statuary. On a nearer approach they represent every form of elegant ruins: columns, some with pedestals and capitals entire, others mutilated and prostrate, and some rising pyramidally over each other till they terminate in a sharp point. These are varied by niches, alcoves, and the customary appearances of desolated magnificence. The delusion is increased by the number of martins which have built their globular nests in the niches, and hover over these columns as in our country they are accustomed to frequent large stone structures.

“As we advance there seems no end to the visionary enchantment which surrounds us. In the midst of this fantastic scenery are vast ranges of walls, which seem the productions of art, so regular is the workmanship. They rise perpendicularly from the river, sometimes to the height of one hundred feet, varying in thickness from one to twelve feet, being equally broad at the top as below. The stones of which they are formed are black, thick, and durable, and composed of a large portion of earth, intermixed and cemented with a small quantity of sand, and a considerable proportion of talc or quartz. These stones are almost invariably regular parallelpipeds of unequal sizes in the wall, but equally deep, and laid regularly in ranges over each other like bricks, each breaking and covering the interstice of the two on which it rests. But, though

the perpendicular interstice be destroyed, the horizontal one extends entirely through the whole work. The stones, too, are proportioned to the thickness of the wall in which they are employed, being largest in the thickest walls. The thinner walls are composed of a single depth of the parallelopiped, while the thicker ones consist of two or more depths. These walls pass the river at several places, rising from the water's edge much above the sandstone bluffs, which they seem to penetrate; thence they cross in a straight line, on either side of the river, the plains, over which they tower to the height of from ten to seventy feet, until they lose themselves in the second range of hills. Sometimes they run parallel in several ranges near to each other, sometimes intersect each other at right angles, and have the appearance of walls of ancient houses or gardens."

* * * "We saw, but could not procure, a beautiful fox, of a colour varied with orange, yellow, white, and black, rather smaller than the common fox of this country, and about the same size as the red fox of the United States. The river to-day has been from about one hundred and fifty to two hundred and fifty yards wide, with but little timber."

* * * "June 1. The weather was cloudy, with a few drops of rain. As we proceeded by the aid of our cord, we found the river cliffs and bluffs not so high as yesterday, and the country more level. The timber, too, is in greater abundance on the banks, though there is no wood in the high ground; coal, however, appears in the bluffs. The river is from two hundred to two hundred and fifty yards wide, the current more gentle, the water becoming still clearer, and fewer rocky points and shoals than we met yesterday, though those which we did encounter were equally difficult to pass. Game is by no means in such plenty as below: all that we obtained were one bighorn and a mule-deer, though we

saw in the plains a quantity of buffalo." * * * "In the plains near the river are the chokecherry, yellow and red currant-bushes, as well as the wild rose and prickly pear, both of which are now in bloom. From the tops of the river hills, which are lower than usual, we enjoyed a delightful view of the rich fertile plains on both sides, in many places extending from the river cliffs to a great distance back."

* * * "A mountain, or part of the North Mountain, approaches the river within eight or ten miles, bearing north from our encampment of last evening; and this morning a range of high mountains, bearing southwest from us, and apparently running to the westward, are seen at a great distance, covered with snow. In the evening we had a little more rain.

"June 2. The wind blew violently last night, and a slight shower of rain fell, but this morning was fair. The current of the river is strong but regular, the timber increases in quantity, the low grounds become more level and extensive, and the bluffs are lower than before. As the game is very abundant, we think it necessary to begin a collection of hides for the purpose of making a leathern boat, which we intend constructing shortly. The hunters, who were out the greater part of the day, brought in six elk, two buffalo, two mule-deer, and a bear. This last animal had nearly cost us the lives of two of our hunters, who were together when he attacked them. One of them narrowly escaped being caught, and the other, after running a considerable distance, concealed himself in some thick bushes, and, while the bear was in quick pursuit of his hiding-place, his companion came up, and fortunately shot the animal through the head."

* * * "At the distance of eighteen miles from our encampment, we came to for the night in a handsome low cottonwood plain on the south, where we remained for the purpose of taking some celestial

observations during the night, and of examining in the morning a large river which comes in opposite to us. Accordingly, at an early hour,

"June 3, we crossed and fixed our camp at the point formed by the junction of this river with the Missouri. It now became an interesting question, which of these two streams is what the Minnetarees call Ahmateahza, or the Missouri, which they describe as approaching very near to the Columbia. On our right decision much of the fate of the expedition depends; since if, after ascending to the Rocky Mountains or beyond them, we should find that the river we were following did not come near the Columbia, and be obliged to return, we should not only lose the travelling season, two months of which had already elapsed, but probably dishearten the men so much as to induce them either to abandon the enterprise, or yield us a cold obedience instead of the warm and zealous support which they had hitherto afforded us. We determined, therefore, to examine well before we decided on our future course; and for this purpose despatched two canoes with three men up each of the streams, with orders to ascertain the width, depth, and rapidity of the current, so as to judge of their comparative bodies of water. At the same time parties were sent out by land to penetrate the country, and discover from the rising grounds, if possible, the distant bearings of the two rivers; and all were directed to return towards evening.

"When they were gone we ascended together the high grounds in the fork of these two rivers, whence we had a very extensive prospect of the surrounding country. On every side it was spread into one vast plain, covered with verdure, in which innumerable herds of buffalo were roaming, attended by their enemies the wolves: some flocks of elk were also seen, and the solitary antelope were scattered, with their young, over the face of the plain. To the south was a range of lofty mountains, which we

supposed to be a continuation of the South Mountain, stretching themselves from southwest to northwest, and terminating abruptly about southwest from us. These were partially covered with snow; but at a great distance behind them was a more lofty ridge, completely covered with snow, which seemed to follow the same direction as the first, reaching from west to the north of northwest, where their snowy tops were blended with the horizon."

The parties which had been sent out to ascertain the character of the two rivers farther on, in order to determine which was the true Missouri, returned in the evening, but without any information that seemed to settle the point.

Under these circumstances, it became necessary that there should be a more thorough exploration, and the next morning Captains Lewis and Clarke set out at the head of two separate parties, the former to examine the north, and the latter the south fork. In his progress Captain Lewis and his party were frequently obliged to quit the course of the river and cross the plains and hills, but he did not lose sight of its general direction, and carefully took the bearings of the distant mountains. On the morning of the third day he became convinced that this river pursued a course too far north for his contemplated route to the Pacific, and he accordingly determined to return, but judged it advisable to wait till noon, that he might obtain a meridian altitude. In this, however, he was disappointed, owing to the state of the weather. Much rain had fallen, and their return was somewhat difficult, and not unattended with danger, as the following incident, which occurred on the 7th, will show:

"In passing along the side of a bluff at a narrow pass, thirty yards in length, Captain Lewis slipped, and, but for a fortunate recovery by means of his spontoon, would have been precipitated into the river over a precipice of about ninety feet. He had

just reached a spot where, by the assistance of his spontoon, he could stand with tolerable safety, when he heard a voice behind him cry out, 'Good God, captain, what shall I do!' He turned instantly, and found it was Windsor, who had lost his foothold about the middle of the narrow pass, and had slipped down to the very verge of the precipice, where he lay on his belly, with his right arm and leg over it, while with the other leg and arm he was with difficulty holding on, to keep himself from being dashed to pieces below. His dreadful situation was instantly perceived by Captain Lewis, who, stifling his alarm, calmly told him that he was in no danger; that he should take his knife out of his belt with the right hand, and dig a hole in the side of the bluff to receive his right foot. With great presence of mind he did this, and then raised himself on his knees. Captain Lewis then told him to take off his moccasins, and come forward on his hands and knees, holding the knife in one hand and his rifle in the other. He immediately crawled in this way till he came to a secure spot. The men who had not attempted this passage were ordered to return, and wade the river at the foot of the bluff, where they found the water breast high. This adventure taught them the danger of crossing the slippery heights of the river; but, as the plains were intersected by deep ravines almost as difficult to pass, they continued down the stream, sometimes in the mud of the low grounds, sometimes up to their arms in the water, and, when it became too deep to wade, they cut footholds with their knives in the sides of the banks. In this way they travelled through the rain, mud, and water; and, having made only eighteen miles during the whole day, encamped in an old Indian lodge of sticks, which afforded them a dry shelter. Here they cooked part of six deer they had killed in the course of their route, and, having eaten the only morsel they had tasted during the whole day, slept comfortably on some willow boughs."

CHAPTER X.

Return of Captain Lewis.—Captain Clarke's Researches.—Tansy River.—The Party believing the Southern Fork to be the Missouri, Captain Lewis resolves to ascend it.—Mode of making a Place to deposit Provisions, called by the French, *Caste*.—Captain Lewis explores the Southern Fork.—Falls of the Missouri discovered, which decides the Question.—Romantic Scenery of the surrounding Country.—Narrow Escape of Captain Lewis.—The main Body of the Party, under Captain Clarke, approach within five miles of the Falls, and prepare for making a Portage over the Rapids.

CAPTAIN LEWIS and his party proceeded on their return, amid the difficulties of a rugged and broken country. The only trees they saw were in the low grounds here and there skirting the river, and these were the haunts of innumerable birds, which delighted them with their song. Among them they distinguished the brown thrush, robin, turtle-dove, linnæ, goldfinch, the large and small blackbird, the wren, and some others. "The whole of the party were of opinion that this river was the true Missouri; but Captain Lewis, being fully persuaded that it was neither the main stream, nor that which it would be advisable to ascend, gave it the name of Maria's River. After travelling all day, they reached the camp at five o'clock in the afternoon."

Captain Clarke had previously returned from his expedition up the south branch, but with no greater success in positively determining the point of so much importance to them. On their way back they followed the course of a small stream, to which, from the abundance of that plant growing on its banks, they gave the name of Tansy River. They now compared their observations, and consulted to

gether as to which of the routes they should adopt ; and, after carefully considering all the facts, and such information as they had previously been enabled to obtain from the Indians, the leaders concluded that the south fork must be the true Missouri. Still many of the party were of a different opinion, which they were led to adopt principally from the representations of Crusatte, who had long been a waterman on the Missouri. It was determined, therefore, in order that nothing might be omitted which could prevent their falling into an error, that a party should ascend the southern branch by land until they reached either the falls or the mountains. "In the mean time," proceeds the narrative, "in order to lighten our burdens as much as possible, we determined to deposite here one of the pirogues, and all the heavy baggage which we could possibly spare, as well as some provisions, salt, powder, and tools: this would at once lighten the other boats, and give them the crew which had been employed on board the pirogue.

"June 10. The weather being fair and pleasant, we dried all our baggage and merchandise, and made our deposite.

"These deposites—or *caches*, as they are called by the Missouri traders—are very common, particularly among those who deal with the Sioux, as the skins and merchandise will keep perfectly sound for years, and are protected from robbery. Our *cache* was built in the usual manner. In the high plain on the north side of the Missouri, and forty yards from a steep bluff, we chose a dry situation, and then, describing a small circle of about twenty inches diameter, removed the sod as gently and carefully as possible: the hole was then sunk perpendicularly for a foot deep. It was now worked gradually wider as it descended, till at length it became six or seven feet deep, shaped nearly like a kettle, or the lower part of a large still with the bottom somewhat

sunk at the centre. As the earth was dug it was handed up in a vessel, and carefully laid on a skin, or cloth, in which it was carried away and thrown into the river, so as to leave no trace of it. A floor of three or four inches in thickness was then made of dry sticks, on which was placed a hide perfectly dry. The goods, being well aired and dried, were laid on this floor, and prevented from touching the wall by other dried sticks, as the merchandise was stowed away. When the hole was nearly full, a skin was laid over the goods, and on this earth was thrown and beaten down, until, with the addition of the sod first removed, the whole was on a level with the ground, and there remained not the slightest appearance of an excavation. In addition to this, we made another of smaller dimensions, in which we placed all the baggage, some powder, and our blacksmith's tools, having previously repaired such of the tools as we carry with us that require mending. To guard against accident, we had two parcels of lead and powder in the two places. The red pirogue was drawn up on the middle of a small island, at the entrance of Maria's River, and secured, by being fastened to the trees, from the effects of any floods. We now took another observation of the meridian altitude of the sun, and found that the mean latitude of Maria's River, as deduced from three observations, is $49^{\circ} 25' 17.2''$ N. We saw a small bird, like the blue thrush or catbird, which we had not before met; and also observed that the bee-martin, or kingbird, is common to this country, although there are no bees here; and, in fact, we have not met with the honey-bee since leaving Osage River.*

On the morning of the 11th, Captain Lewis started with four men for a more thorough exploration of

* It is stated, without contradiction, by several travellers, that the honey-bee is found beyond the Mississippi but little in advance of the white man. Honey-bees were first seen at St. Louis, says Parker, in 1792.

the southern branch. Being attacked with dysentery shortly after leaving so violently that he could not proceed, and having no medicine, he made a strong decoction of the twigs of the chokecherry, from which he obtained speedy relief. On the second day, in crossing a ridge that was elevated above the surrounding country, they had a magnificent view of the Rocky Mountains, their summits covered with snow. They advanced this day twenty-seven miles, saw great quantities of game, and killed two brown bears. On the 13th they came to a beautiful plain, where the buffalo were in greater numbers than they had ever before seen. "To the southwest," says the journalist, "there arose from this plain two mountains of a singular appearance, and more like ramparts of high fortifications than works of nature. They are square figures, with sides rising perpendicularly to the height of two hundred and fifty feet, formed of yellow clay, and the tops seemed to be level plains. Finding that the river here bore considerably to the south, and fearful of passing the falls before reaching the Rocky Mountains, they now changed their course to the south, and, leaving those insulated hills to the right, proceeded across the plain. In this direction Captain Lewis had gone about two miles, when his ears were saluted with the agreeable sound of a fall of water; and, as he advanced, a spray, which seemed driven by the high southwest wind, arose above the plain like a column of smoke, and vanished in an instant. Towards this point he directed his steps, and the noise, increasing as he approached, soon became too tremendous to be mistaken for anything but the Great Falls of the Missouri. Having travelled seven miles after first hearing the sound, he reached the falls about twelve o'clock. The hills, as he approached, were difficult of access, and two hundred feet high: down these he hurried with impatience, and, seating himself on some rocks under

**THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY**

ASTOR, LENOX & TILDEN FOUNDATION
1155 6TH AVENUE
NEW YORK 17, N. Y.



At the centre of the falls, enjoyed the sublime spectacle of this stupendous object, which since the creation had been lavishing its magnificence upon the desert, unknown to civilization.

"The river, immediately at its cascade, is three hundred yards wide, and is pressed in by a perpendicular cliff on the left, which rises to about one hundred feet, and extends up the stream for a mile; on the right the bluff is also perpendicular for three hundred yards above the falls. For ninety or a hundred feet from the left cliff, the water falls in one smooth, even sheet over a precipice of at least eighty feet. The remaining part of the river precipitates itself with a more rapid current, and, being received as it falls by the irregular and somewhat projecting rocks below, forms a splendid spectacle of perfectly white foam, two hundred yards in length and eighty in perpendicular elevation. This spray is dissipated into a thousand shapes, sometimes flying up in columns of fifteen or twenty feet, which are then oppressed by larger masses of the white foam, on all which the sun impresses the brightest colours of the rainbow. Below the fall the water boats with fury against a ledge of rocks, which extends across the river at one hundred and fifty yards from the precipice. From the perpendicular cliff on the north to the distance of one hundred and twenty yards, the rocks are only a few feet above the water; and, when the river is high, the stream finds a channel across them forty yards wide, and near the higher parts of the ledge, which rise about twenty feet, and terminate abruptly within eighty or ninety yards of the southern side. Between them and the perpendicular cliff on the south, the whole body of water runs with great swiftness. A few small cedars grow near this ridge of rocks, which serves as a barrier to defend a small plain of about three acres, shaded with cottonwood; at the lower extremity of which is a grove of the same trees, where

are several Indian cabins of sticks; below which the river is divided by a large rock, several feet above the surface of the water, and extending down the stream for twenty yards. At the distance of three hundred yards from the same ridge is a second abutment of solid perpendicular rock, about sixty feet high, projecting at right angles from the small plain on the north for one hundred and thirty-four yards into the river. After leaving this, the Missouri again spreads itself to its previous breadth of three hundred yards, though with more than its ordinary rapidity.

"The hunters who had been sent out now returned loaded with buffalo meat, and Captain Lewis encamped for the night under a tree near the falls. The men were again despatched to hunt for food against the arrival of the party, and Captain Lewis walked down the river, to discover, if possible, some place where the canoes might be safely drawn on shore, in order to be transported beyond the falls. He returned, however, without discovering any such spot; the river for three miles below being one continued succession of rapids and cascades, overhung with perpendicular bluffs from one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet high: in short, it seems to have worn itself a channel through the solid rock. In the afternoon they caught in the falls some of both kinds of whitefish, and half a dozen trout, from sixteen to twenty-three inches long, precisely resembling in form, and in the position of their fins, the mountain or speckled trout of the United States, except that the specks of the former are of a deep black, while those of the latter are of a red or gold colour: they have long, sharp teeth on the palate and tongue, and generally a small speck of red on each side behind the front ventral fins; the flesh is of a pale yellowish red, or, when in good order, of a rose-coloured red.

"June 14. This morning one of the men was sent

to Captain Clarke with an account of the discovery of the falls; and, after employing the rest in preserving the meat which had been killed yesterday, Captain Lewis proceeded to examine the rapids above. From the falls he directed his course southwest up the river. After passing one continued rapid and three cascades, each three or four feet high, he reached, at the distance of five miles, a second fall. The river is here about four hundred yards wide, and for the distance of three hundred rushes down to the depth of nineteen feet, and so irregularly that he gave it the name of the Crooked Falls. From the southern shore it extends obliquely upward about one hundred and fifty yards, and then forms an acute angle downward nearly to the commencement of four small islands close to the northern side. From the perpendicular pitch to these islands, a distance of more than one hundred yards, the water glides down a sloping rock with a velocity almost equal to that of its fall: above this fall the river bends suddenly to the northward. While viewing this place, Captain Lewis heard a loud roar above him, and, crossing the point of a hill a few hundred yards, he saw one of the most beautiful objects in nature: the whole Missouri is suddenly stopped by one shelving rock, which, without a single niche, and with an edge as straight and regular as if formed by art, stretches itself from one side of the river to the other for at least a quarter of a mile. Over this it precipitates itself in an even, uninterrupted sheet, to the perpendicular depth of fifty feet, whence, dashing against the rocky bottom, it rushes rapidly down, leaving behind it a sheet of the purest foam across the river. The scene which it presented was indeed singularly beautiful; since, without any of the wild, irregular sublimity of the lower falls, it combined all the regular elegances which the fancy of a painter would select to form a beautiful waterfall. The eye had scarcely been regaled with this

charming prospect, when, at the distance of half a mile, Captain Lewis observed another of a similar kind. To this he immediately hastened, and found a cascade stretching across the whole river for a quarter of a mile, with a descent of fourteen feet, though the perpendicular pitch was only six feet. This, too, in any other neighbourhood, would have been an object of great magnificence; but, after what he had just seen, it became of secondary interest: his curiosity being, however, awakened, he determined to go on, even should night overtake him, to the head of the falls. He therefore pursued the southwest course of the river, which was one constant succession of rapids and small cascades, at every one of which the bluffs grew lower, or the bed of the river became more on a level with the plains. At the distance of two and a half miles he arrived at another cataract of twenty-six feet. The river is here six hundred yards wide, but the descent is not immediately perpendicular, though the river falls generally in a regular and smooth sheet; for about one third of the descent a rock protrudes to a small distance, receives the water in its passage, and gives it a curve.

"On the south side is a beautiful plain, a few feet above the level of the falls; on the north the country is more broken, and there is a hill not far from the river. Just below the falls is a little island in the middle of the river, well covered with timber. Here, on a cottonwood-tree, an eagle had fixed her nest, and seemed the undisputed mistress of a spot, to contest whose dominion neither man nor beast would venture across the gulfs that surround it, and which is farther secured by the mist rising from the falls. This solitary bird could not escape the observation of the Indians, who made the eagle's nest a part of their description of the falls, and which now proves to be correct in almost every particular, except that they did not do justice to their height.

Just above this is a cascade of about five feet, beyond which, as far as could be discerned, the velocity of the water seemed to abate. Captain Lewis now ascended the hill which was behind him, and saw from its top a delightful plain, extending from the river to the base of the Snowy Mountains to the south and southwest. Along this wide, level country the Missouri pursued its winding course, filled with water to its smooth, grassy banks, while about four miles above, it was joined by a large river flowing from the northwest, through a valley three miles in width, and distinguished by the timber which adorned its shores. The Missouri itself stretches to the south, in one unruffled stream of water, as if unconscious of the roughness it must soon encounter, and bearing on its bosom vast flocks of geese, while numerous herds of buffalo are feeding on the plains which surround it.

"Captain Lewis then descended the hill, and directed his course towards the river falling in from the west. He soon met a herd of at least a thousand buffalo, and, being desirous of providing for supper, shot one of them. The animal immediately began to bleed, and Captain Lewis, who had forgotten to reload his rifle, was intently watching to see him fall, when he beheld a large brown bear which was stealing on him unperceived, and was already within twenty steps. In the first moment of surprise he lifted his rifle; but, remembering instantly that it was not charged, and that he had no time to reload, he felt that there was no safety but in flight. It was in the open, level plain; not a bush nor a tree within three hundred yards; the bank of the river sloping, and not more than three feet high, so that there was no possible mode of concealment. Captain Lewis, therefore, thought of retreating with a quick walk, as fast as the bear advanced, towards the nearest tree; but, as soon as he turned, the bear rushed open-mouthed, and at full speed, upon him.

Captain Lewis ran about eighty yards ; but, finding that the animal gained on him fast, it flashed on his mind that, by getting into the water to such a depth that the bear would be obliged to attack him swimming, there was still some chance for his life : he therefore turned short, plunged into the river about waist deep, and, facing about, presented the point of his spoutoon. The bear arrived at the water's edge within twenty feet of him ; but, as soon as he put himself in this posture of defence, he seemed frightened, and, wheeling about, retreated with as much precipitation as he had advanced. Very glad to be released from this danger, Captain Lewis returned to the shore, and observed him run with great speed, sometimes looking back, as if he expected to be pursued, till he reached the woods. He could not conceive the cause of the sudden alarm of the bear, but congratulated himself on his escape, when he saw his own track torn to pieces by the furious animal ; and he learned from the whole adventure never to suffer his rifle to be for a moment unloaded.

“ He now resumed his route in the direction which the bear had taken towards the western river, and found it a beautiful stream, about two hundred yards wide, apparently deep, with a gentle current ; its waters clear, and its banks, which were formed principally of dark brown and blue clay, about the same height as those of the Missouri, that is, from three to five feet. What is singular is, that the river does not seem to overflow its banks at any season ; while it might be presumed, from its vicinity to the mountains, that the torrents arising from the melting of the snows would sometimes, at least, cause it to swell beyond its limits. The contrary fact would induce the belief that the Rocky Mountains yield their snows very reluctantly and equably to the sun, and are not often drenched by very heavy rains. This river is no doubt that which the Indians call Medicine River, which they mentioned as emptying

into the Missouri just above the falls. After examining Medicine River, Captain Lewis set out, at half past six o'clock in the evening, on his return towards the camp, which he estimated at the distance of twelve miles.

"In going through the low grounds on Medicine River, he met an animal which at a distance he thought was a wolf; but, on coming within sixty paces, it proved to be some brownish yellow animal, standing near its burrow, which, when he came nigh, crouched, and seemed as if about to spring on him. Captain Lewis fired, and the beast disappeared in its burrow. From the track, and the general appearance of the animal, he supposed it to be of the tiger kind. He then went on; but, as if the beasts of the forest had conspired against him, three buffalo bulls, which were feeding with a large herd at the distance of half a mile, left their companions, and ran at full speed towards him. He turned round, and, unwilling to give up the field, advanced to meet them: when they were within a hundred yards they stopped, looked at him for some time, and then retreated as they came. He now pursued his route in the dark, reflecting on the strange adventures and sights of the day, which crowded on his mind so rapidly, that he should have been inclined to believe it all enchantment if the thorns of the prickly pear, piercing his feet, had not dispelled at every moment the illusion. He at last reached the party, who had been very anxious for his safety, and who had already decided on the route which each should take in the morning to look for him. Being much fatigued, he supped, and slept well during the night."

On awaking the next morning, Captain Lewis found a large rattlesnake coiled on the trunk of a tree under which he had been sleeping. He killed it, and found it like those he had seen before, differing from those of the Atlantic states, not in its colours, but in the form and arrangement of them. In-

formation was received that Captain Clarke had arrived five miles below, at a rapid which he did not think it prudent to ascend, and that he was waiting there for the party above to rejoin him.

After the departure of Captain Lewis, Captain Clarke remained a day at Maria's River, to complete the deposit of such articles as they could dispense with, and started on the 12th. As they ascended the river they met with numerous islands, and found the navigation slow and difficult, from the rapidity of its current, and the rocks that encumbered its bed. On the 18th they passed a small rapid stream, which they called Snow River, from its being fed chiefly by the melting of the snows on the mountains, and the next day they reached the spot where Captain Clarke had encamped on the 4th. Here they were met by a messenger from Captain Lewis, with the welcome intelligence that he had discovered the falls.

"June 15. The morning being warm and fair," continues the narrative, "we set out at the usual hour, but proceeded with great difficulty, in consequence of the increased rapidity of the current. The channel was constantly obstructed by rocks and dangerous rapids. During the whole progress the men were in the water, hauling the canoes, and walking on sharp rocks and round stones, which cut their feet or caused them to fall. The rattlesnakes, too, were so numerous, that the men were constantly on their guard against being bitten by them; yet they bore their fatigues with undiminished cheerfulness. We heard the roar of the falls very distinctly this morning. At three and three quarter miles we came to a rock, in a bend to the south, resembling a tower. At six and three quarter miles we reached a large creek on the south, which, after one of our men, we called Shields's Creek." * * * "After passing some red bluffs, we came to on the north side, having made twelve miles. Here we

found a rapid so difficult that we did not think proper to attempt the passage this evening, and therefore sent to Captain Lewis to apprize him of our arrival."

* * * "June 16. Some rain fell last night, and this morning the weather was cloudy, and the wind high from the southwest. We passed the rapid by doubly manning the pirogue and canoes, and halted at the distance of a mile and a quarter to examine the rapids above, which we found to be a continued succession of cascades as far as the view extended, which was about two miles. About a mile above where we halted was a large creek falling in on the south, opposite to which was a large sulphur spring falling over the rocks on the north. Captain Lewis arrived at two from the falls, about five miles above us; and, after consulting upon the subject of the portage, we crossed the river and formed a camp on the north side, having come three quarters of a mile to-day. From our own observation, we had deemed the south side to be the most favourable for a portage; but two men, sent out for the purpose of examining it, reported that the creek and the ravines intersected the plain so deeply, that it was impossible to cross it. Captain Clarke therefore resolved to examine more minutely what was the best route. The four canoes were unloaded at the camp, and then sent across the river, where, by means of strong cords, they were hauled over the first rapid, whence they could easily be drawn into the creek. Finding, too, that the portage would, at all events, be too long to enable us to carry the boats on our shoulders, six men were set to work to make wheels for carriages to transport them."

* * * "June 17. Captain Clarke set out with five men to explore the country; the rest were employed in hunting, making wheels, and in drawing the five canoes, with all the baggage, up the creek, which we now called Portage Creek. From this stream there is a gradual ascent to the top of the

high plain, while the bluffs of the creek lower down, and of the Missouri both above and below its entrance, were so steep as to render it almost impracticable to have dragged them up from that river. We found great difficulty, and some danger, in even ascending the creek thus far, in consequence of the rapids and the rocks in the channel, which, just above where we brought the canoes, has a fall of five feet, with high and steep bluffs beyond it. We were very fortunate in finding, just below Portage Creek, a cottonwood-tree about twenty-two inches in diameter, and large enough to make the carriage-wheels: it was, perhaps, the only one of the same size within twenty miles; and the cottonwood, which we are obliged to employ in the other parts of the work, is extremely soft and brittle. The mast of the white pirogue, which we mean to leave behind, supplied us with two axletrees. There are vast numbers of buffalo feeding in the plains or watering in the river, which is also strewed with the floating carcasses and limbs of these animals. They go in large herds to drink about the falls, and, as all the passages to the river near that place are narrow and steep, the foremost are pressed into the stream by the impatience of those behind. In this way we have seen ten or a dozen disappear over the falls in a few minutes. They afford excellent food for the wolves, bears, and birds of prey; and this circumstance may account for the reluctance of the bears to yield their dominion over the neighbourhood.

"June 18. The pirogue was drawn up a little below our camp, and secured in a thick copse of willow bushes. We now began to form a *cache*, or place of deposite, and to dry our goods and other articles which required inspection. The wagons, too, are completed. Our hunters brought us ten deer, and we shot two buffalo out of a herd that came to drink at the sulphur spring."

The latitude of their encampment they ascertained.

to be $47^{\circ} 8' 59''$. They observed here a species of gooseberry without thorns, the fruit, which was ripe, being sweet, and covered with a glutinous, adhesive substance. Grasshoppers were in such multitudes that the herbage on the plains was in part destroyed by them. The men at the camp were employed in packing the baggage and mending their moccasins for the portage, and the hunters were out procuring game.

CHAPTER XI.

Description and romantic Appearance of the Missouri at the Junction of the Medicine River.—Difficulty of transporting the Baggage round the Falls.—The Party employed in the Construction of a Boat of Skins.—During the Work, the Party much troubled by white Bears.—Violent Hailstorm, and providential Escape of Captain Clarke and his Party.—Description of a remarkable Fountain.—Singular Explosion heard from the Black Mountains.—The Boat found to be insufficient, to the serious Disappointment of the Party.—Captain Clarke undertakes to remedy the Difficulty by building Canoes, and succeeds.

CAPTAIN CLARKE had completed his examination of a route for the portage, and returned to the encampment on the evening of the 20th. From his survey and the draught he had made, "we had now," continues the Journal, "a clear and connected view of the falls, cascades, and rapids of the Missouri. This river is three hundred yards wide at the point where it receives the waters of Medicine River, which is one hundred and thirty-seven yards in width. The united current continues three hundred and twenty-eight poles to a small rapid on the north side, from which it gradually widens to one thousand four hundred yards, and at the distance of five hundred and forty-eight poles reaches the

head of the rapids, narrowing as it approaches them. Here the hills on the north, which had withdrawn from the bank, closely border the river, which for the space of three hundred and twenty poles makes its way over the rocks with a descent of thirty feet. In this course the current is contracted to five hundred and eighty yards; and, after throwing itself over a small pitch of five feet, it forms a beautiful cascade of twenty-six feet five inches: it does not, however, fall entirely perpendicular, being stopped by a part of the rock, which projects at about one third of the distance. After descending this fall and passing the cottonwood island, on which the eagle has fixed its nest, the river goes on for five hundred and thirty-two poles over rapids and little falls, the estimated descent of which is thirteen feet six inches, till it is joined by a large fountain boiling up underneath the rocks near the edge of the river, into which it falls with a cascade of eight feet. The water of this fountain is of the most perfect clearness, and of rather a bluish cast; and, even after falling into the Missouri, it preserves its colour for half a mile. From the fountain the river descends with increased rapidity for the distance of two hundred and fourteen poles, during which the estimated descent is five feet; and from this, for a distance of one hundred and thirty-five poles, it descends fourteen feet seven inches, including a perpendicular fall of six feet seven inches. The Missouri has now become pressed into a space of four hundred and seventy-three yards, and here forms a grand cataract, by falling over a plain rock the whole distance across the river, to the depth of forty-seven feet eight inches. After recovering itself, it then proceeds with an estimated descent of three feet, till, at the distance of one hundred and two poles, it is precipitated down the Crooked Falls nineteen feet perpendicular. Below this, at the mouth of a deep ravine, is a fall of five feet; after



THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS.

which, for the distance of nine hundred and seventy poles, the descent is much more gradual, not being more than ten feet, and then succeeds a handsome level plain for the space of one hundred and seventy-eight poles, with a computed descent of three feet, the river making a bend towards the north. Thence it descends, for four hundred and eighty poles, about eighteen feet and a half, when it makes a perpendicular fall of two feet, which is ninety poles beyond the great cataract; in approaching which, it descends thirteen feet within two hundred yards, and, gathering strength from its confined channel, which is only two hundred and eighty yards wide, rushes over the fall to the depth of eighty-seven feet. After raging among the rocks, and losing itself in foam, it is compressed immediately into a bed of ninety-three yards in width; it continues for three hundred and forty poles to the entrance of a run or deep ravine, where there is a fall of three feet, which, added to the decline during that distance, makes the descent six feet. As it goes on, the descent within the next two hundred and forty poles is only four feet; from this, passing a run or deep ravine, the descent in four hundred poles is thirteen feet; within two hundred and forty poles, another descent of eighteen feet; thence, in one hundred and sixty poles, a descent of six feet; after which, to the mouth of Portage Creek, a distance of two hundred and eighty poles, the descent is ten feet. From this survey and estimate, it results that the river experiences a descent of three hundred and fifty-two feet in the distance of two and three quarter miles, from the commencement of the rapids to the mouth of Portage Creek, exclusive of the almost impassable rapids which extend for a mile below its entrance."

The necessary preparations having been made, on the 21st they started on their way round the falls. The following day, in consequence of the breaking

down of their carriage, they were obliged to carry as much of their baggage as they were able to an encampment which they formed in a small grove opposite to the White Bear Islands. "Here," says the Journal, "the banks on both sides of the river are handsome, level, and extensive; that near our camp is not more than two feet above the surface of the water. The river is about eight hundred yards wide just above these islands, ten feet deep in most places, and with a very gentle current. The plains, however, on this part of the river are not so fertile as those from the mouth of the Muscleshell and thence downward: there is much more stone on the sides of the hills and on the broken lands than is found lower down. We saw in the plains vast herds of buffalo, a number of small birds, and the large brown curlew, which is now sitting, and lays its eggs, which are of a pale blue, with black specks, on the ground without any nest. There is also a species of lark, much resembling the bird called the old-field-lark, with a yellow breast and a black spot on the croup, though it differs from the latter in having its tail formed of feathers of an unequal length, and pointed; the beak, too, is somewhat longer and more curved, and the note differs considerably. The prickly-pear annoyed us very much to-day by sticking through our moccasins. As soon as we had kindled our fires we examined the meat which Captain Clarke had left here, and found that the greater part of it had been taken by the wolves.

"June 23. After we had brought up the canoe and baggage, Captain Clarke went down to the camp at Portage Creek, where four of the men had been left with the Indian woman. Captain Lewis during the morning prepared the camp, and in the afternoon went down in a canoe to Medicine River to look after the three men who had been sent thither to hunt on the 19th, and from whom nothing had as yet been heard. He went up the river about half a

mile, and then walked along the right bank, hallooing as he went, till, at the distance of five miles, he found one of them, who had fixed his camp on the opposite bank, where he had killed seven deer, and dried about six hundred pounds of buffalo meat, but had killed no elk, the animal chiefly wanted. He knew nothing of his companions, except that on the day of their departure from camp he had left them at the falls, and come on to Medicine River, not having seen them since. As it was too late to return, Captain Lewis passed over on a raft which he made for the purpose, and spent the night at Shannon's camp; and the next morning,

"June 24, he sent J. Fields up the river, with orders to go four miles and return, whether he found the two absent hunters or not. Then, descending the southwest side of Medicine River, he crossed the Missouri in the canoe, and sent Shannon back to his camp to join Fields, and bring the meat which they had killed: this they did, and arrived in the evening at the camp at White Bear Islands. Part of the men from Portage Creek also arrived with two canoes and baggage. On going down yesterday, Captain Clarke cut off several angles of the former route, so as to shorten the portage considerably, and marked it with stakes: he arrived there in time to have two of the canoes carried up in the high plain, about a mile in advance. Here they all repaired their moccasins, and put on double soles to protect them from the prickly-pear, and from the sharp points of earth which have been formed by the trampling of the buffalo during the late rains. This of itself is sufficient to render the portage disagreeable to one who had no burden; but, as the men are loaded as heavily as their strength will permit, the crossing is really painful. Some are limping with the soreness of their feet; others are scarcely able to stand for more than a few minutes from the heat and fatigue; they are all obliged to halt and

rest frequently; and at almost every stopping-place they fall, and many of them are asleep in an instant; yet no one complains, and they go on with great cheerfulness. At their camp Drewyer and Fields joined them; and, while Captain Lewis was looking for them at Medicine River, they returned to report the absence of Shannon, about whom they had been very uneasy. They had killed several buffalo at the bend of the Missouri above the falls, and dried about eight hundred pounds of meat, and got one hundred pounds of tallow: they had also killed some deer, but had seen no elk. After getting the party in motion with the canoes, Captain Clarke returned to his camp at Portage Creek.

"We were now occupied in fitting up a boat of skins, the frame of which had been prepared for the purpose at Harper's Ferry. It was made of iron, thirty-six feet long, four feet and a half in the beam, and twenty-six inches wide in the bottom. Two men had been sent this morning for timber to complete it, but they could find scarcely any even tolerably straight sticks four and a half feet long; and, as the cottonwood is too soft and brittle, we were obliged to use the willow and box-alder.

"June 25. The party returned to the lower camp. Two men were sent on the large island to look for timber. J. Fields was sent up the Missouri to hunt elk; but he returned about noon, and informed us that, a few miles above, he saw two white bears near the river, and, while attempting to fire at them, there came suddenly a third, which, being only a few steps off, immediately attacked him; that, in running to escape from the monster, he leaped down a steep bank of the river, where, falling on a bar of stone, he cut his hand and knee, and bent his gun; but, fortunately for him, the bank concealed him from his antagonist, or he would have been most probably lost. The other two returned with a small quantity of bark and timber, which was all they could

and on the island; but they had killed two elk. These were valuable, as we are desirous of procuring the skins of that animal in order to cover the boat, as they are more strong and durable than those of the buffalo, and do not shrink so much in drying. The party that went to the lower camp had one canoe and the baggage carried into the high plain, to be ready in the morning, and then all who could make use of their feet had a dance on the green, to the music of a violin. We have been unsuccessful in our attempt to catch fish, nor does there seem to be any in this part of the river. We observed a number of water terrapins. There were great quantities of young blackbirds in these islands, just beginning to fly. Among the vegetable productions we noticed a species of wild rye, which was heading: it rises to the height of eighteen or twenty inches, the beard remarkably fine and soft, the culm jointed, and in every respect, except in height, it resembles the common wild rye. Great quantities of mint, too, like the peppermint, were found here.

"The winds are sometimes violent in these plains. The men inform us that, as they were bringing one of the canoes along on truck-wheels, they hoisted the sail, and the wind carried her along for some distance."

* * * "June 26. Captain Clarke formed a second *tache* or deposit near the camp, and placed the swivel under the rocks near the river. The antelopes are still scattered through the plains; the females with their young, which are generally two in number, and the males by themselves.

"June 27. The party were employed in preparing timber for the boat, except two who were sent to hunt. About one in the afternoon a cloud arose from the southwest, and brought with it violent thunder, lightning, and hail: soon after it passed, the hunters came in from about four miles above us. They had killed nine elk and three bears. As they

were hunting on the river, they saw a low ground covered with thick brushwood, where, from the tracks along the shore, they thought a bear had probably taken refuge: they therefore landed without making any noise, and climbed a tree about twenty feet above the ground. Having fixed themselves securely, they raised a loud shout, and a bear instantly rushed towards them. These animals never climb; and, therefore, when he came to the tree and stopped to look at them, Drewyer shot him in the head. He proved to be the largest we had yet seen; his nose appeared to be like that of a common ox; his fore feet measured nine inches across, and the hind feet were seven inches wide, and eleven and three quarters long, exclusive of the claws. One of these animals came within thirty yards of the camp last night, and carried off some buffalo meat which we had placed on a pole." * * *

"June 28. The party were all occupied in preparing the boat: they have obtained a sufficient quantity of willow bark to line her, and over this were placed the elkskins, and, when these failed, we were obliged to use buffalo hide. The white bear have now become exceedingly troublesome: they constantly infest our camp during the night, and, though they have not attacked us, as our dog, which patrols all night, gives us notice of their approach, yet we are obliged to sleep with our arms by our side for fear of accident, and we cannot send one man alone to any distance, particularly if he has to pass through brushwood. We saw two of them to-day on the large island opposite to us; but, as we are all so much occupied now, we mean to reserve ourselves for some leisure moment, and then make a party to drive them from the islands. The river has risen nine inches since our arrival here.

"At Portage Creek Captain Clarke completed the *cache*, in which we deposited whatever we could spare from our baggage: some ammunition, provis-

tions, books, the specimens of plants and minerals, and a draught of the river from its entrance to Fort Mandan. After closing it, he broke up the encampment, and took on all the remaining baggage to the high plain, about three miles. Portage Creek has risen considerably in consequence of the rain, and the water has become of a deep crimson colour, and ill tasted. On overtaking the canoe, he found that there was more baggage than could be carried on the two carriages, and therefore left some of the heavy articles which could not be injured, and proceeded on to Willow Run, where he encamped for the night." * * *

"June 29. Finding it impossible to reach the end of the portage with their present load, in consequence of the state of the road after the rain, he sent back nearly all his party to bring on the articles which had been left yesterday. Having lost some notes and remarks which he had made on first ascending the river, he determined to go up to the White Bear Islands, along its banks, in order to supply the deficiency. He left there one man to guard the baggage, and went on to the falls, accompanied by his servant York, Chaboneau, and his wife, with her young child. On his arrival there he observed a very dark cloud rising in the west, which threatened rain, and he looked around for some shelter, but could find no place where they would be secure from being blown into the river if the wind should prove as violent as it sometimes does in the plains. At length, about a quarter of a mile above the falls, he found a deep ravine, where there were some shelving rocks, under which he took refuge. They were on the upper side of the ravine, near the river, perfectly safe from the rain, and therefore laid down their guns, compass, and other articles which they carried with them. The shower was at first moderate; it then increased to a heavy fall, the effects of which they did not feel. Soon after a torrent of

rain and hail descended : the rain seemed to fall in a solid mass, and, instantly collecting in the ravine, came rolling down in a dreadful current, carrying along the mud, and rocks, and everything that opposed it. Captain Clarke fortunately saw it a moment before it reached them, and, springing up with his gun and shotpouch in his left hand, with his right clambered up the steep bluff, pushing on the Indian woman with her child in her arms. Her husband, too, had seized her hand, and was pulling her up the hill ; but he was so terrified at the danger, that, but for Captain Clarke, himself and his wife and child would have all been lost. So instantaneous was the rise of the water, that, before Captain Clarke had seized his gun and begun to ascend the bank, the water was up to his waist, and he could scarce get up faster than it rose, till it reached the height of fifteen feet, with a furious current, which, had they waited a moment longer, would have swept them into the river just above the great falls, down which they must inevitably have been precipitated. They reached the plain in safety, and found York, who had separated from them just before the storm to hunt some buffalo, and was now returning to find his master. They had been obliged to escape so rapidly, that Captain Clarke lost his compass and umbrella, Chaboneau left his gun, shotpouch, and tomahawk, and the Indian woman had just time to grasp her child, before the net in which it lay at her feet was carried down the current.

“ He now relinquished his intention of going up the river, and returned to the camp at Willow Run. Here he found that the party sent this morning for the baggage had all returned to camp in great confusion, leaving their loads in the plain. On account of the heat, they generally go nearly naked, and with no covering on their heads. The hail was so large, and driven so furiously against them by the high wind, that it knocked several of them down : one of

them, particularly, was thrown on the ground three times, and most of them were bleeding freely, and complained of being much bruised. Willow Run had risen six feet since the rain; and, as the plains were so wet that they could not proceed, they passed the night at their camp.

"At the White Bear camp, also, we had not been insensible to the hailstorm, though less exposed. In the morning there had been a heavy shower of rain, after which it became fair. After assigning to the men their respective employments, Captain Lewis took one of them, and went to see the large fountain near the falls." * * * "It is, perhaps, the largest in America, and is situated in a pleasant level plain, about twenty-five yards from the river, into which it falls over some steep, irregular rocks, with a sudden ascent of about six feet in one part of its course. The water boils up from among the rocks, and with such force near the centre that the surface seems higher there than the earth on the sides of the fountain, which is a handsome turf of fine green grass. The water is extremely pure, cold, and pleasant to the taste, not being impregnated with lime or any foreign substance. It is perfectly transparent, and continues its bluish cast for half a mile down the Missouri, notwithstanding the rapidity of the river. After examining it for some time, Captain Lewis returned to the camp."

* * * "June 30. Two men were sent to the falls to look for the articles lost yesterday; but they found nothing but the compass, covered with mud and sand, at the mouth of the ravine. The place at which Captain Clarke had been caught by the storm was filled with large rocks. The men complain much of the bruises received yesterday from the hail. A more than usual number of buffalo appeared about the camp to-day, and furnished plenty of meat. Captain Clarke thought that at one view he must have seen at least ten thousand."

They had not completed the bringing up of their baggage to the White Bear encampment before the 2d of July. The whole length of the portage, from the camp on Portage Creek to White Bear Island, was found by measurement to be seventeen and three quarter miles. On the 1st they had been enabled to observe equal altitudes of the sun with the sextant, which the state of the weather had for several days before prevented their doing.

"Having completed our celestial observations," proceeds the Journal, "we went over to the large island to make an attack upon its inhabitants, the bears, which have annoyed us very much of late, and were prowling about our camp all last night. We found that the part of the island frequented by the bear forms an almost impenetrable thicket of the broad-leaved willow: into this we forced our way in parties of three, but could see only one bear, which instantly attacked Drewyer. Fortunately, as he was rushing on, the hunter shot him through the heart within twenty paces, and he fell, which enabled Drewyer to get out of his way: we then followed him one hundred yards, and found that the wound had been mortal. Not being able to discover any more of these animals, we returned to camp. Here, in turning over some of the baggage, we caught a rat, somewhat larger than the common European rat, and of a lighter colour: the body and outer parts of the legs and the head of a light lead colour; the inner side of the legs, as well as the belly, feet, and ears, white; the ears not covered with hair, and much larger than those of the common rat; the toes, also, are longer, the eyes black and prominent, the whiskers very long and full, the tail rather longer than the body, and covered with fine fur and hair of the same size with that on the back, which is very close, short, and silky in its texture. This was the first we had met, although its nests are very frequent among the cliffs of rocks

and in hollow trees, where we also found large quantities of the shells and seed of the prickly pear, on which we conclude they chiefly subsist. The moschetoes are uncommonly troublesome. The wind was again high from the northwest.

"These winds are, in fact, always the coldest and most violent that we experience; and the hypothesis which we have formed on that subject is, that the air, coming in contact with the Snowy Mountains, becomes immediately chilled and condensed; and, being thus rendered heavier than the stratum of air below, it descends into it, or into the vacuum formed by the constant action of the sun on the open, unsheltered plains. The clouds rise suddenly near these mountains, and distribute their contents partially over the neighbouring plains. The same cloud will discharge hail alone in one part, hail and rain in another, and rain only in a third, and all within the space of a few miles; while, at the same time, there is snow falling on the mountains to the southeast. There is at present no snow on those mountains; that which covered them on our arrival, as well as that which has since fallen, having disappeared. The mountains to the north and northwest of us are still entirely covered with snow; and, indeed, there has been no perceptible diminution of it since we first saw them, which induces a belief either that the clouds at this season do not reach their summits, or that they deposite their snow only. They glisten with great beauty when the sun shines on them in a particular direction, and, most probably, from this glittering appearance have derived the name of the Shining Mountains.

* * * "July 4. The boat was now completed, except what is, in fact, the most difficult part, the making her seams secure. We had intended to despatch a canoe with part of our men to the United States early this spring; but, not having yet seen the Snake Indians, and not knowing whether to calou-

late on their friendship or enmity, we have decided not to weaken our party, which is now scarcely sufficient to repel any hostility. We were afraid, too, that such a measure might dishearten those who remained; and, as we have never suggested it to them, they are all enthusiastically attached to the enterprise, and willing to encounter any danger to ensure its success. We had a heavy dew this morning.

"Since our arrival at the falls we have repeatedly heard a strange noise coming from the mountains in a direction a little to the north of west. It is heard at different periods of the day and night (sometimes when the air is perfectly still and without a cloud), and consists of one stroke only, or of five or six discharges in quick succession. It is loud, and resembles precisely the sound of a six-pound piece of ordnance at the distance of three miles. The Minnetarees frequently mentioned this noise, like thunder, which they said the mountains made; but we had paid no attention to it, believing it to have been some superstition, or perhaps a falsehood. The watermen also of the party say that the Pawnees and Ricaras give the same account of a noise heard in the Black Mountains to the westward of them. The solution of the mystery given by the philosophy of the watermen is, that it is occasioned by the bursting of the rich mines of silver confined within the bosom of the mountains.*

* In Brazil these explosions are well known. Vasconcelle, the Jesuit, describes one which he heard in the Sierra de Piritinga as resembling the discharge of many pieces of artillery at once. The Indians who were with him told him "it was an explosion of stones," and it was so, he says; "for after some days the place was found where a rock had burst, and from its interior, with the report which we had heard, was sent to light a little treasure. This was a sort of nut, about the size and shape of a bull's heart, full of jewelry of different colours; some white, like transparent crystal; others of a fine red, and some between white and red, imperfect, as it seemed, and not yet completely formed by nature. All these were placed in order, like the grains of a pomegranate, within a case or shell

"An elk and a beaver were all that were killed to-day: the buffalo seemed to have withdrawn from our neighbourhood; though several of the men, who went to-day to visit the falls for the first time, mention that they are still abundant at that place. We contrived, however, to spread, not a very sumptuous, but a comfortable table in honour of the day,

harder than even iron, which, either with the force of the explosion, or from striking against the rocks when it fell, broke in pieces, and thus discovered its wealth!" Techo notices the same thing in the adjoining province of Guayra, "famous," he says, "for a sort of stones which Nature, after a wonderful manner, produces in an oval stone case, about the bigness of a man's head. These stone cases lying under ground, when they come to a certain maturity, fly like bombs in pieces about the air, with much noise, and scatter about abundance of beautiful stones; but these stones are of no value!" In the account of Teixeira's voyage down the Orrellana, Acuna says the Indians assured them that "horrible noises were heard in the Sierra de Paraguaxo from time to time, which is a certain sign that this mountain contains stones of great value in its entrails."—*London Quarterly Review*, January, 1815.

The narrative of Mr. Hunt's passage through the mountains agrees with the *Journal of Lewis and Clarke* as to such noises being heard. "In the most calm and serene weather, and at all times of the day and night, successive reports are now and then heard among the mountains, resembling the discharge of several pieces of artillery."—*Astoria*, vol. i., p. 253.

Humboldt, noticing a remark of M. Lafond, that there are hills in Mexico abounding in coal, from which a subterranean noise is heard at a distance, like the discharge of artillery, asks whether "this curious phenomenon announces a disengagement of hydrogen produced by a bed of coal in a state of inflammation." It seems too frequent and general for this solution.—*London Quarterly Review*, January, 1815.

"In passing the Black Hills and Rocky Mountains, we heard none of these 'successive reports, resembling the discharge of several pieces of artillery,' mentioned by some authors as common 'in the most calm and serene weather, at all times of the day or night;' nor did we witness 'lightning and thunder pealing from clouds gathering round the summits of the hills' or mountains. The thunder-spirits who fabricate storms and tempests appear to have closed their labours; and the Indian tribes no longer 'hang offerings on the trees to propitiate the invisible lords of the mountains.'"—*Parker*, p. 73.

and in the evening gave the men a drink of spirits, which was the last of our stock. Some of them appeared sensible to the effects of even so small a quantity; and, as is usual among them on all festivals, the fiddle was produced, and a dance begun, which lasted till nine o'clock, which was interrupted by a heavy shower of rain. They continued, however, their merriment till a late hour.

"July 5. The boat was brought up into a high situation, and fires kindled under her, in order to dry her more expeditiously. Despairing of procuring any tar,* we formed a composition of pounded charcoal with beeswax and buffalo tallow to supply its place. Should this resource fail us, it will be very unfortunate, as in every other respect the boat answers our purposes completely. Although not quite dry, she can be carried with ease by five men; her form is as complete as could be wished; very strong, and will carry at least eight thousand pounds, with her complement of hands. Besides our want of tar, we have been unlucky in sewing the skins with a needle which had sharp edges instead of a point merely, although a large thong was used in order to fill the hole; yet it shrinks in drying, and leaves the hole open, so that we fear the boat will leak.

"A large herd of buffalo came near us, and we procured three of them: besides which were killed two wolves and three antelopes. In the course of the day other herds of buffalo came near our camp, on their way down the river: these herds move with great method and regularity. Although ten or twelve herds are seen scattered from each other over a space of many miles, yet, if they are undisturbed by pursuit, they will be uniformly travelling in the same direction.

"July 6. Last night there were several showers

* They had attempted to obtain some from resinous wood, but had failed.



of rain and hail, attended with thunder and lightning; and about daybreak a heavy storm came on from the southwest, with one continued roar of thunder, and with rain and hail. The hail, which was as large as musket balls, covered the ground completely; and on collecting some of it, it lasted during the day, and served to cool the water. The red and yellow currant is abundant, and now ripe, although still a little acid. We have seen in this neighbourhood, what we have not met before, a remarkably small fox, which associates in bands, and burrows in the prairie like the small wolf, but have not yet been able to obtain any of them, as they are extremely vigilant, and betake themselves, on the slightest alarm, to their burrows, which are very deep.

"July 7. The weather is warm but cloudy, so that the moisture retained by the bark after the rain leaves it slowly, though we have small fires constantly under the boat. We have no tents, and therefore are obliged to use the sails to keep off the bad weather. Our buffalo skins, too, are scarcely sufficient to cover our baggage; but the men are now dressing others to replace their present leather clothing, which soon rots by being so constantly exposed to water." * * *

"July 8. In order more fully to replace the notes of the river which he had lost, and which he was prevented from supplying by the storm of the 29th ult., Captain Clarke set out after breakfast, taking with him nearly the whole party, with the view of shooting buffalo if there should be any near the falls. After getting some distance in the plains, the men were divided into squads, and he, with two others, struck the Missouri at the entrance of Medicine River, and thence proceeded down to the great cataract. He found that the immense herds of buffalo had entirely disappeared, and he thought had gone below the falls. Having made the necessary

measurements, he returned through the plains, and reached the camp late in the evening; the whole party had killed only three buffalo, three antelope, and a deer." * * *

"The boat having now become sufficiently dry, we gave it a coat of the composition, which after a proper interval was repeated, and the next morning,

"July 9, she was launched into the water, and swam perfectly well. The seats were then fixed, and the oars fitted; but after we had loaded her, as well as the canoes, and were on the point of setting out, a violent wind caused the waves to wet the baggage, so that we were forced to unload them. The wind continued high till evening, when, to our great disappointment, we discovered that nearly all the composition had separated from the skins, and left the seams perfectly exposed, so that the boat now leaked very much. To repair this misfortune without pitch is impossible; and, as none of that article is to be procured, we therefore, however reluctantly, are obliged to abandon her, after having had so much labour in her construction. We now saw that the section of the boat covered with buffalo skins, on which some hair had been left, answered better than the elk skins, and leaked but little; while that part which was covered with hair about an eighth of an inch retained the composition perfectly, and remained sound and dry. From this we perceived that, had we employed buffalo skins instead of elk skins, and not singed them so closely as we have done, carefully avoiding to cut the leather in sewing, the boat would have been sufficient even with the present composition; or had we singed instead of shaving the elk skins, we might have succeeded. But we discovered our error too late: the buffalo had deserted us, the travelling season was so fast advancing that we had no time to spare for experiments, and, therefore, finding that she could be no longer useful, she was sunk in the water so as to soften the

skins, and enable us the more easily to take her to pieces. It now became necessary to provide other means for transporting the baggage which we had intended to stow in her. For this purpose we shall want two canoes; but for many miles below the mouth of the Muscleshell River to this place, we have not seen a single tree fit to be used in that way. The hunters, however, who had before been sent after timber, mentioned that there was a low ground on the opposite side of the river, about eight miles above us by land, and more than twice that distance by water, in which we might probably find trees large enough for our purposes. Captain Clarke determined, therefore, to set out by land for that place with ten of the best workmen, who would be occupied in building the canoes till the rest of the party, after taking the boat to pieces, and making the necessary deposits, should transport the baggage, and join them with the other six canoes.

"July 10. He accordingly passed over to the opposite side of the river with his party, and proceeded on eight miles by land, the distance by water being twenty-three and three quarter miles. Here he found two cottonwood-trees; but, on cutting them down, one proved to be hollow, split at the top in falling, and both were much damaged at the bottom. He searched the neighbourhood, but could find none which would suit better, and therefore was obliged to make use of those which he had felled, shortening them in order to avoid the cracks, and supplying the deficiency by making them as wide as possible. They were equally at a loss for wood of which they might make handles for their axes, the eyes of which not being round, they were obliged to split the timber in such a manner that thirteen of the handles broke in the course of the day, though made of the best wood they could find for the purpose, which was the chokecherry.

'The rest of the party took the frame of the boat

to pieces, deposited it in a *cache* or hole, with a draught of the country from Fort Mandan to this place, and also some other papers and small articles of less importance." * * *

"Sergeant Ordway, with four canoes and eight men, had set sail in the morning, with part of the baggage, to the place where Captain Clarke had fixed his camp; but the wind was so high that he only reached within three miles of that place, and encamped for the night.

"July 11. In the morning one of the canoes joined Captain Clarke: the other three having on board more valuable articles, which would have been injured by the water, went on more cautiously, and did not reach the camp till the evening. Captain Clarke then had the canoes unloaded and sent back; but the high wind prevented their floating down nearer than about eight miles above us. His party were busily engaged with the canoes, and their hunters supplied them with three fat deer and a buffalo, in addition to two deer and an antelope killed yesterday. The few men who were with Captain Lewis were occupied in hunting, but not with much success, having killed only one buffalo. They heard, about sunset, two discharges of the tremendous mountain artillery. They also saw several very large gray eagles, much larger than those of the United States, and most probably a distinct species, though the bald eagle of this country is not quite so large as that of the United States."

Captain Clarke and his party were busily engaged in the construction of the new boats, and on the 13th Captain Lewis had the remainder of the baggage embarked in the canoes, and despatched them for the upper camp. He himself, in company with a sick man and the Indian woman, started to proceed by land. "On his way he passed a very large Indian lodge, which was probably designed as a great council-house; but it differed in its construction

from all that we had seen lower down the Missouri or elsewhere. The form of it was a circle, two hundred and sixteen feet in circumference at the base, and composed of sixteen large cottonwood poles about fifty feet long, and at their thicker ends, which touched the ground, about the size of a man's body: they were distributed at equal distances, except that one was omitted to the east, probably for the entrance. From the circumference of this circle the poles converged towards the centre, where they were united and secured by large withes of willow brush. There was no covering over this fabric, in the centre of which were the remains of a large fire, and round it the marks of about eighty leathern lodges. He also saw a number of turtle-doves and some pigeons, of which he shot one, differing in no respect from the wild pigeon of the United States.

"The country exhibits its usual appearances, the timber being confined to the river; while back from it, on both sides, as far as the eye can reach, it is entirely destitute of trees or bushes. In the low ground in which we are building the canoes, the timber is larger and more abundant than we have seen it on the Missouri for several hundred miles. The soil, too, is good; for the grass and weeds reach about two feet high, being the tallest we have observed this season, though on the high plains and prairies the grass is at no season above three inches in height. Among these weeds are the sand-rush, and the nettle in small quantities. The plains are still infested by great numbers of the small birds already mentioned, among which is the brown curlew. The current of the river is here extremely gentle. The buffalo have not yet quite gone, for the hunters brought in three in very good order. It requires some diligence to supply us plentifully; for, as we reserve our parched meal for the Rocky Mountains, where we do not expect to find much game, our

principal article of food is meat; and the consumption of the whole party amounts to four deer, an elk and a deer, or one buffalo, every twenty-four hours. The moschetoës and gnats persecute us as violently as below, so that we can get no sleep unless defended by biers, with which we are all provided. We here found several plants hitherto unknown to us, and of which we preserved specimens."

* * * "July 14. The day was fair and warm; the men worked very industriously, and were enabled by the evening to launch the boats, which now want only seats and oars to be complete." * * *

CHAPTER XII.

The Party embark on board the Canoes.—Smith's River.—Character of the Country, &c.—Dearborne's River.—Captain Clarke precedes the Party for the Purpose of discovering the Indians of the Rocky Mountains.—Magnificent rocky Appearances on the Borders of the River, denominated the Gates of the Rocky Mountains.—Captain Clarke arrives at the Three Forks of the Missouri without overtaking the Indians.—The Party arrive at the Three Forks, of which a particular and interesting Description is given.

"JULY 15. We rose early, embarked all our baggage on board the canoes, which, though eight in number, are heavily loaded, and at ten o'clock set out on our journey." * * * "At the distance of seven and a half miles we came to the lower point of a woodland, at the entrance of a beautiful river, which, in honour of the secretary of the navy, we called Smith's River. This stream falls into a bend on the south side of the Missouri, and is eighty yards wide. As far as we could discern its course, it wound through a charming valley towards the southeast.

in which many herds of buffalo were feeding, till, at the distance of twenty-five miles, it entered the Rocky Mountains and was lost from our view." * * *

"We find the prickly pear, one of the greatest beauties as well as greatest inconveniences of the plains, now in full bloom. The sunflower, too, a plant common on every part of the Missouri from its entrance to this place, is here very abundant, and in bloom. The lamb's-quarter, wild cucumber, sand-rush, and narrow dock, are also common.

"The river has now become so much more crooked than below, that we omit taking all its short meanders, and note only its general course, laying down the small bends on our daily chart by the eye. The general width is from one hundred to one hundred and fifty yards." * * *

"July 16. There was a heavy dew last night. We soon passed about forty little booths, formed of willow bushes, as a shelter against the sun. These seemed to have been deserted about ten days, and, as we supposed, by the Snake Indians, or Shoshonees, whom we hope soon to meet, as they appeared from the tracks to have a number of horses with them." * * *

Captain Lewis went on, with three men, in advance of the party, to the point where the Missouri enters the Rocky Mountains, and here he was joined by his companions the following day. Double manning their canoes, they started early in the morning, and by the aid of their towlines succeeded in passing the rapids at this place without accident. "For several miles below the rapids," says the journalist, "the current of the Missouri becomes stronger as you approach, and the spurs of the mountain advance towards the river, which is deep, and not more than seventy yards wide: at the rapids the river is closely hemmed in on both sides by the hills, and foams for half a mile over the rocks which obstruct its channel. The low grounds are now not

more than a few yards in width; but they furnish room for an Indian road, which winds under the hills on the north side of the river. The general range of these hills is from southeast to northwest, and the cliffs themselves are about eight hundred feet above the water, formed almost entirely of a hard black granite, on which are scattered a few dwarf pine and cedar trees. Immediately in the gap is a large rock, four hundred feet high, which on one side is washed by the Missouri, while on its other sides a handsome little plain separates it from the neighbouring mountains. It may be ascended with some difficulty nearly to its summit, and affords a beautiful prospect of the plains below, in which we could observe large herds of buffalo. After ascending the rapids for half a mile, we came to a small island at the head of them, which we called Pine Island, from a large pine-tree at the lower end of it, which is the first we have seen near the river for a great distance. A mile beyond Captain Lewis's camp we had a meridian altitude, which gave us the latitude of $46^{\circ} 42' 14.7''$.

"As the canoes were still heavily loaded, all those not employed in working them walked on shore. The navigation is now very laborious. The river is deep, but with little current, and from seventy to one hundred yards wide; the low grounds are very narrow, with but little timber, and that chiefly the aspen-tree. The cliffs are steep, and hang over the river so much that often we could not cross them, but were obliged to pass and repass from one side of the river to the other, in order to make our way. On the mountains we see more pine than usual, but it is still in small quantities. Along the bottoms, which have a covering of high grass, we observe the sunflower blooming in great abundance. The Indians of the Missouri, and more especially those who do not cultivate maize, make great use of the seed of this plant for bread, or in thickening their

soup. They first parch and then pound it between two stones until it is reduced to a fine meal. Sometimes they add a portion of water, and drink it thus diluted; at other times they add a sufficient proportion of marrow grease to reduce it to the consistency of common dough, and eat it in that manner. This last composition we preferred to all the rest, and thought it, at that time, a very palatable dish.

“There are great quantities of red, purple, yellow, and black currants. The currants are very pleasant to the taste, and much preferable to those of our common gardens. The bush of the first species rises to the height of six or eight feet; the stem simple, branching, and erect. These shrubs associate together, either in the upper or timbered lands, near the water-courses. The leaf is peteolate, of a pale green, and in form resembles the red currant, so common in our gardens. The perianth of the fruit is one-leaved, five cleft, abbreviated, and tubular. The corolla is monopetalous, funnel-shaped, very long, and of a fine orange colour. There are five stamens and one pistil; the filaments are capillar, inserted in the corolla, equal and converging, the anther ovate and incumbent. The germe of the second species is round, smooth, inferior, and pedicelled; the style longer and thicker than the stamens, simple, cylindrical, smooth, and erect: it remains with the corolla until the fruit is ripe. The stamen is simple and obtuse, and the fruit much the size and shape of our common garden currants; growing, like them, in clusters, supported by a compound footstalk. The peduncles are longer in this species, and the berries are more scattered. The fruit is not so acid as the common currant, and has a more agreeable flavour. The other species differs in no respect from the yellow currant, excepting in the colour and flavour of the berries. The service-berry differs in some points from that of the United States. The bushes are small, sometimes not more than two feet

high, and rarely exceeding eight inches. They are proportionably small in their stems, growing very thickly, associated in clumps. The fruit is of the same form, but for the most part larger, and of a very dark purple. They are now ripe, and in great perfection. There are two species of gooseberry here, but neither of them yet ripe: nor are the chokecherries, though in great quantities. Besides, there are also at this place the box-elder, red willow, and a species of sumach. In the evening we saw some mountain rams or big-horned animals, but no other game of any sort." * * *

"July 18. This morning, early, we saw a large herd of the big-horned animals, who were bounding among the rocks in the opposite cliff with great agility. These inaccessible spots secure them from all their enemies; and the only danger is in wandering among such precipices, where we should suppose it scarcely possible for any animal to stand: a single false step would precipitate them at least five hundred feet into the water. At one mile and a quarter we passed another single cliff on the left; at the same distance beyond which is the mouth of a large river emptying itself from the north. It is a handsome, bold, and clear stream, eighty yards wide; that is, nearly as broad as the Missouri, with a rapid current over a bed of small smooth stones of various figures. The water is extremely transparent; the low grounds are narrow, but possess as much wood as those of the Missouri; and it has every appearance of being navigable, though to what distance we cannot ascertain, as the country which it waters is broken and mountainous. In honour of the secretary at war, we called it Dearborn's River.

"Being now very anxious to meet with the Shoshonees, or Snake Indians, for the purpose of obtaining the necessary information in regard to our route, as well as to procure horses, it was thought best for one of us to go forward with a small party, and en-

desire to discover them before the daily discharge of our guns, necessary for our subsistence, should give them notice of our approach; for if by any accident they should hear us, they would most probably retreat to the mountains, mistaking us for their enemies, who usually attack them on this side. Accordingly, Captain Clarke set out with three men, and followed the course of the river on the north side; but the hills were so steep at first that he was not able to go much faster than ourselves. In the evening, however, he cut off many miles of the circuitous course of the river by crossing a mountain, over which he found a wide Indian road, which in many places seems to have been cut or dug down in the earth. He passed, also, two branches of a stream, which he called Ordway's Creek, where he saw a number of beaver-dams extending in close succession towards the mountains as far as he could distinguish: on the cliffs were many of the big-horned animals. After crossing this mountain he encamped near a small stream of running water, having travelled twenty miles." * * *

In their progress up the river this day they passed several streams, some of considerable size, coming from the mountains, the waters of which were cold, pure, and well tasted. "The soil near the river," proceeds the Journal, "is good, and produces a luxuriant growth of grass and weeds: among these productions the sunflower holds a very distinguished place. For several days past we have observed a species of flax in the low grounds, the leaf, stem, and pericarp of which resemble those of the flax commonly cultivated in the United States. The stems rise to the height of two and a half or three feet, and spring to the number of eight or ten from the same root, with a strong, thick bark, apparently well calculated for use. The root seems to be perennial, and it is probable that the cutting of the stems may not at all injure it; for, although the seeds are not

yet ripe, there are young suckers shooting up from the root, whence we may infer that the stems which are fully grown, and in the proper stage of vegetation to produce the best flax, are not essential to the preservation or support of the root; a circumstance which would render it a most valuable plant. To-day we have met with a second species of flax, smaller than the first, as it seldom obtains a greater height than nine or twelve inches: the leaf and stem resemble those of the species just mentioned, except that the latter is rarely branched, and bears a single monopetalous, bell-shaped blue flower, suspended with its limb downward." * * *

"July 19. Captain Clarke pursued his route early in the morning, and soon passed the remains of several Indian camps formed of willow brush, which seemed to have been deserted this spring. At the same time he observed that the pine-trees had been stripped of their bark, which our Indian woman says her countrymen do in the spring, in order to obtain the sap, and the soft parts of the wood and bark for food. About eleven o'clock he met a herd of elk, and killed two of them; but such was the want of wood in the neighbourhood, that he was unable to procure enough to make a fire, and he was therefore obliged to substitute the dung of the buffalo, with which he cooked his breakfast. They then resumed their course along an old Indian road. In the afternoon they reached a handsome valley, watered by a large creek, both of which extend a considerable distance among the mountains: this they crossed, and during the evening travelled over a mountainous country covered with sharp fragments of flint-rock, which bruised and cut their feet very much, but were scarcely less troublesome than the prickly pear of the open plains, which have now become so abundant that it is impossible to avoid them, and the thorns are so strong that they pierce a double sole of dressed deerskin; the best resource against them

is a sole of dried buffalo hide. At night they reached the river much fatigued, having passed two mountains in the course of the day, and travelled thirty miles. Captain Clarke's first employment on lighting a fire, was to extract from his feet the briars, which he found to be seventeen in number.

"In the mean time we proceeded on very well, though the water appears to increase in rapidity as we advance: the current has, indeed, been strong during the day, and obstructed by some rapids, which are not, however, much broken by rocks, and are perfectly safe; the river is deep, and its general width is from one hundred to one hundred and fifty yards wide. For more than thirteen miles we went along the numerous bends of the river, and then reached two small islands; three and three quarter miles beyond which is a small creek, in a bend to the left, above a small island on the right. We were regaled about ten o'clock P.M. with a thunder-storm of rain and hail, which lasted for an hour; but during the day, in this confined valley through which we are passing, the heat is almost insupportable, and whenever we obtain a glimpse of the lofty tops of the mountains we are tantalized with a view of the snow. These mountains have their sides and summits partially varied with little copses of pine, cedar, and balsam-fir. A mile and a half beyond this creek the rocks approach the river on both sides, forming a most sublime and extraordinary spectacle. For five and three quarter miles these rocks rise perpendicularly from the water's edge to the height of nearly twelve hundred feet. They are composed of a black granite near their base, but from the lighter colour above, and from the fragments, we suppose the upper part to be flint of a yellowish brown and cream colour.

"Nothing can be imagined more tremendous than the frowning darkness of these rocks, which project over the river and menace us with destruction. The

river, one hundred and fifty yards in width, seems to have forced its channel down this solid mass; but so reluctantly has it given way, that during the whole distance the water is very deep even at the edges, and for the first three miles there is not a spot, except one of a few yards, in which a man could stand between the water and the towering perpendicular of the mountain. The convulsion of the passage must have been terrible, since at its outlet there are vast columns of rock torn from the mountain, which are strewed on both sides of the river, the trophies, as it were, of its victory. Several fine springs burst out from the chasms of the rock, and contribute to increase the river, which has a strong current, but, very fortunately, we were able to overcome it with our oars, since it would have been impossible to use either the cord or the pole. We were obliged to go on some time after dark, not being able to find a spot large enough to encamp on; but at length, about two miles above a small island in the middle of the river, we met with a place on the left side, where we procured plenty of light wood and pitch pine. This extraordinary range of rocks we called the Gates of the Rocky Mountains.

"We had made twenty-two miles, and four and a quarter miles from the entrance of the Gates. The mountains were higher to-day than they were yesterday. We saw some bighorns, and a few antelopes and beaver, but since entering the mountains have found no buffalo: the otter are, however, in great plenty.

"July 20. By employing the tow-rope whenever the banks permitted the use of it, the river being too deep for the pole, we were enabled to overcome the current, which is still strong. At the distance of half a mile we came to a high rock in a bend to the left, in the Gates. Here the perpendicular rocks cease, the hills retire from the river, and the valleys suddenly widen to a greater extent than they have

been since we entered the mountains. At this place was some scattered timber, consisting of the narrow-leaved cottonwood, the aspen, and pine. There are also vast quantities of gooseberries, service-berries, and several species of currant, among which is one of a black colour, the flavour of which is preferable to that of the yellow, and would be deemed superior to that of any currant in the United States.

"At a mile from the Gates, a large creek comes down from the mountains, and empties itself behind an island in the middle of a bend to the north. To this stream, which is fifteen yards wide, we gave the name of Potts's Creek, after John Potts, one of our men. Up this valley, about seven miles, we discovered a great smoke, as if the whole country had been set on fire; but we were at a loss to decide whether it had been done accidentally by Captain Clarke's party, or by the Indians as a signal on their observing us. We afterward learned that this last was the fact; for they had heard a gun fired by one of Captain Clarke's men, and, believing that their enemies were approaching, had fled into the mountains, first setting fire to the plains as a warning to their countrymen. We continued our course along several islands, and having made in the course of the day fifteen miles, encamped just above an island, at a spring on a high bank on the left side of the river." * * *

"Captain Clarke, on setting out this morning, had gone through the valley about six miles to the right of the river. He soon fell into the Indian road, which he pursued till he reached the Missouri, at the distance of eighteen miles from his last encampment, just above the entrance of a large creek, which we afterward called Whiteearth Creek. Here he found his party so much cut and pierced with the sharp flint and the prickly pear that he proceeded only a short distance farther, and then halted to wait for us. Along his route he had taken the precau-

tion to strew signals, such as pieces of cloth, paper, and linen, to prove to the Indians, if by any accident they met his track, that we were white men. But he observed a smoke some distance ahead, and concluded that the whole country had now taken the alarm." * * *

On the following day, after proceeding for eleven and a half miles through a mountainous and broken country, they reached in the evening a beautiful plain, ten or twelve miles wide, and extending as far as the eye could reach. "This plain, or rather valley," says the journalist, "is bounded by two nearly parallel ranges of high mountains, whose summits are partially covered with snow, below which the pine is scattered along the sides down to the plain in some places, though the greater part of their surface has no timber, and exhibits only a barren soil, with no covering except dry, parched grass, or black, rugged rocks. On entering the valley, the river assumes a totally different aspect. It spreads to more than a mile in width, and, though more rapid than before, is shallow enough in almost every part for the use of the pole, while its bed is formed of smooth stones and some large rocks, as it has been, indeed, since we entered the mountains: it is also divided by a number of islands, some of which are large near the northern shore. The soil of the valley is a rich black loam, apparently very fertile, and covered with a fine green herbage about eighteen inches or two feet in height; while that of the high grounds is perfectly dry, and seems scorched by the sun. The timber, though still scarce, is in greater quantities in this valley than we have seen it since entering the mountains, and seems to prefer the borders of the small creeks to the banks of the river itself." * * *

"We this day saw two pheasants of a dark brown colour, much larger than the same species of bird in the United States. Of geese we daily see great

numbers, with their young perfectly feathered, except on the wings, where both young and old are deficient; the first are very fine food, but the old ones are poor, and unfit for use. Several of the large brown or sand-hill crane are feeding in the low grounds on the grass, which forms their principal food. The young crane cannot fly at this season: they are as large as a turkey, of a bright reddish bay colour." * * *

"July 22. We set out at an early hour. The river being divided into so many channels, by both large and small islands, that it was impossible to lay it down accurately by following in a canoe any single channel, Captain Lewis walked on shore, took the general courses of the stream, and from the rising grounds laid down the situation of the islands and channels, which he was enabled to do with perfect accuracy, the view not being obstructed by much timber. At one mile and a quarter we passed an island somewhat larger than the rest, and four miles farther reached the upper end of another, where we breakfasted. This is a large island, forming, in the middle of a bend to the north, a level fertile plain, ten feet above the surface of the water, and never overflowed. Here we found great quantities of a small onion, about the size of a musket ball, though some were larger. It is white, crisp, and as well-flavoured as any of our garden onions: the seed is just ripening, and as the plant bears a large quantity to the square foot, and stands the rigours of the climate, it will, no doubt, be an acquisition to settlers. From this production we called it Onion Island. During the next seven and three quarter miles we passed several long circular bends, and a number of large and small islands, which divide the river into many channels, and then reached the mouth of a creek on the north side. It is composed of three creeks, which unite in a handsome valley about four miles before they discharge themselves into the

Missouri, where it is about fifteen feet wide and eight feet deep, with clear, transparent water. Here we halted for dinner; but, as the canoes took different channels in ascending, it was some time before they all joined.

"We are delighted to find that the Indian woman recognises the country; she tells us that to this creek her countrymen make excursions to procure a white paint on its banks, and we therefore call it Whiteearth Creek. She says, also, that the three forks of the Missouri are at no great distance; a piece of intelligence which has cheered the spirits of us all, as we hope soon to reach the head of that river. This is the warmest day except one we have experienced this summer. In the shade the mercury stood at 80° above zero, which is the second time it has reached that height during the season. We encamped on an island, after making nineteen and three quarter miles.

"In the course of the day we saw many geese, cranes, small birds common to the plains, and a few pheasants: we also observed a small plover or curlew of a brown colour, about the size of the yellow-legged plover or jack curlew, but of a different species. It first appeared near the mouth of Smith's River, but is so shy and vigilant that we are unable to shoot it. Both the broad and narrow leaved willow continue, though the sweet willow has become very scarce. The rosebush, small honeysuckle, the pulpy-leaved thorn, southern wood, sage and box-alder, narrow-leaved cottonwood, redwood, and a species of sumach, are all abundant. So, too, are red and black gooseberries, service-berries, choke-cherries, and black, red, yellow, and purple currants, which last seem to be a favourite food of the bear. Before encamping, we landed and took on board Captain Clarke, with the meat he had collected during this day's hunt, which consisted of one deer and an elk: we had ourselves shot a deer and an

antelope. The moschetoos and gnats were unusually fierce this evening."

They found but little change in the character of the country the two following days. Rich and extensive levels bordered the river, with hills and mountains in the background. Captain Clarke, as before, proceeded with a party on foot along the banks, where he discovered an Indian road that he followed. Small flags were kept hoisted on board the canoes, to apprize the natives, should there be any near, that they were white men, and not their enemies.

"We saw," says the Journal, "many otter and beaver to-day (the 24th). The latter seem to contribute very much to the number of islands, and the widening of the river. They begin by damming up the small channels of about twenty yards between the islands: this obliges the river to seek another outlet, and, as soon as this is effected, the channel stopped by the beaver becomes filled with mud and sand. The industrious animal is then driven to another channel, which soon shares the same fate, till the river spreads on all sides, and cuts the projecting points of the land into islands. We killed a deer, and saw great numbers of antelopes, cranes, some geese, and a few red-headed ducks. The small birds of the plains and the curlew are still abundant: we saw a large bear, but could not come within gunshot of him. There are numerous tracks of the elk, but none of the animals themselves; and, from the appearance of bones and old excrement, we suppose that buffalo sometimes stray into the valley, though we have as yet seen no recent sign of them. Along the water are a number of snakes, some of a uniform brown colour, others black, and a third speckled on the abdomen, and striped with black and a brownish yellow on the back and sides. The first, which is the largest, is about four feet long; the second is of the kind mentioned yesterday; and the

third resembles in size and appearance the garter-snake of the United States. On examining the teeth of all these several kinds, we found them free from poison: they are fond of the water, in which they take shelter on being pursued. The mosquitoes, gnats, and prickly pear, our three persecutors, still continue with us, and, joined with the labour of working the canoes, have fatigued us all excessively.

"Captain Clarke continued along the Indian road, which led him up a creek. About ten o'clock he saw, at the distance of six miles, a horse feeding in the plains. He went towards him, but the animal was so wild that he could not get within several hundred paces of him. He then turned obliquely to the river, where he killed a deer, and dined, having passed in this valley five handsome streams, only one of which had any timber; another had some willows, and was very much dammed up by the beaver. After dinner he continued his route along the river, and encamped at the distance of thirty miles. As he went along he saw many tracks of Indians, but none of recent date. The next morning,

"July 25, at the distance of a few miles, he arrived at the Three Forks of the Missouri. Here he found that the plains had been recently burned on the north side, and saw the track of a horse, which seemed to have passed about four or five days since. After breakfast he examined the rivers, and, finding that the north branch, although not larger, contained more water than the middle branch, and bore more to the westward, he determined to ascend it. He therefore left a note, informing Captain Lewis of his intention, and then went up that stream on the north side for about twenty-five miles. Here Chaboneau was unable to proceed any farther, and the party therefore encamped, all of them much fatigued, their feet blistered, and wounded by the prickly pear.

"In the mean time we left our camp, and proceeded on very well, though the water is still rapid, and has some occasional ripples. The country is much like that of yesterday: there are, however, fewer islands, for we have passed only two. Behind one of them is a large creek, twenty-five yards wide, to which we gave the name of Gass's Creek, from one of our sergeants, Patrick Gass: it is formed by the union of five streams, which descend from the mountains, and join in the plain near the river. On this island we saw a large brown bear, but he retreated to the shore, and ran off before we could approach him. These animals seem more shy than they were below the mountains. The antelopes have again collected in small herds, composed of several females with their young, attended by one or two males, though some of the males are still solitary, or wander in parties of two over the plains, which the antelope invariably prefers to the woodlands, and to which it always retreats if by accident it is found straggling on the hills, confiding, no doubt, in its wonderful fleetness. We also killed a few young geese; but, as this game is small, and very incompetent to the subsistence of the party, we have forbidden the men any longer to waste their ammunition upon it. About four and a half miles above Gass's Creek, the valley in which we have been travelling ceases, and the high, craggy cliffs again approach the river, which now enters, or, rather, leaves what appears to be a second great chain of the Rocky Mountains. About a mile after entering among these hills or low mountains, we passed a number of fine bold springs, which burst out near the edge of the river under the freestone cliffs on the left, and furnished a fine pure water. Near these we met with two of the worst rapids we have seen since entering the mountains; a ridge of sharp, pointed rocks stretching across the river, and leaving but small and dangerous channels for navi-

gation. The cliffs are of a lighter colour than those we had previously passed, and in the bed of the river is some limestone, which is small and worn smooth, and seems to have been brought down by the current." * * *

"All these cliffs appeared to have been undermined by the water at some period, and fallen down from the hills on their sides, the stratas of rock sometimes lying with their edges upward; while others, not detached from the hills, are depressed obliquely on the side next the river, as if they had sunk to fill up the cavity formed by the washing of the current."

The next day they passed a considerable number of small islands, and, finding the current strong, with frequent ripples, were obliged to depend chiefly upon their poles and towlines. After proceeding about five miles, they came to a point where, says the Journal, "the mountains recede from the river, and the valley widens to the extent of several miles. The river now becomes crowded with islands, of which we passed ten in the next thirteen and three quarter miles: then, at the distance of eighteen miles, we encamped on the left shore, near a rock in the centre of a bend towards the left, and opposite to two more islands.

"This valley has wide low grounds covered with high grass, and in many places with a fine turf of greensward. The soil of the high lands is thin and meager, without any covering except a low sedge and a dry kind of grass, which is almost as inconvenient as the prickly pear. The seeds of it are armed with a long, twisted, hard beard at their upper extremity, while the lower part is a sharp, firm point, beset at its base with little stiff bristles, with the points in a direction contrary to the subulate point, to which they answer as a barb. We saw also another species of prickly pear. It is of a globular form, composed of an assemblage of little

conic leaves springing from a common root, to which their small points are attached as a common centre, and the base of the cone forms the apex of the leaf, which is garnished with a circular range of sharp thorns, like the cochineal plant, and quite as stiff, and even more keen than those of the common flat-leaved species. Between the hills the river had been confined within one hundred and fifty or two hundred yards, but in the valley it widens to two hundred or two hundred and fifty, and sometimes is spread by its numerous islands to the distance of three quarters of a mile. The banks are low, but the river never overflows them. On entering the valley we again saw the snow-clad mountains before us; but the appearance of the hills, as well as of the timber near us, is much as heretofore.

"Finding Chaboneau unable to proceed, Captain Clarke left him with one of the men, and, accompanied by the other, went up the river about twelve miles to the top of a mountain. Here he had an extensive view of the river valley upward, and saw a large creek which flowed in on the right side. He, however, discovered no fresh signs of the Indians, and therefore determined to examine the middle branch, and join us by the time we reached the forks: he descended the mountain by an Indian path which wound through a deep valley, and at length reached a fine cold spring. The day had been very warm, the path unshaded by timber, and his thirst was excessive; he was therefore tempted to drink. But, although he took the precaution of previously wetting his head, feet, and hands, he soon found himself very unwell: he continued his route, and, after resting with Chaboneau at his camp, resumed his march across the north fork, near a large island. The first part was knee deep, but on the other side of the island the water came to their waists, and was so rapid that Chaboneau was on the point of being swept away, and, not being able to

swim, would have perished if Captain Clarke had not rescued him. While crossing the island they killed two brown bears, and saw great numbers of beaver. He then went on to a small river, which falls into the north fork some miles above its junction with the two others; and here, finding himself growing more unwell, he halted for the night at the distance of four miles from his last encampment.

"July 27. We proceeded on but slowly, the current being still so rapid as to require the utmost exertions of all to advance, and the men are losing their strength fast, in consequence of their constant efforts. At half a mile we passed an island, and a mile and a quarter farther again entered a ridge of hills, which now approached the river with cliffs apparently sinking like those of yesterday. They are composed of solid limestone, of a light lead colour when exposed to the air, though when freshly broken it is of a deep blue, of an excellent quality, and very fine grain. On these cliffs were numbers of the bighorn. At two and a half miles we reached the centre of a bend towards the south, passing a small island; and one mile and a quarter beyond this, at about nine in the morning, we came to the mouth of a river seventy yards wide, which falls in from the southeast. Here the country suddenly opens into extensive and beautiful meadows and plains, surrounded on every side with distant and lofty mountains.

"Captain Lewis went up this stream for about half a mile, and from the height of a limestone cliff could observe its course about seven miles, and the three forks of the Missouri, of which this river is one. Its extreme point bore S. 65° E., and during the seven miles it passes through an extensive meadow of fine grass, dividing itself into several streams, the largest passing near the ridge of hills on which he stood. On the right side of the Missouri, a high, wide, and extensive plain succeeds to this low mead-

ow, reaching to the hills. In the meadow a large spring rises about a quarter of a mile from this south-east fork, into which it discharges itself on the right side, about four hundred paces from where he stood. Between the southeast and middle forks, a distant range of snow-topped mountains spreads from east to south, above the irregular broken hills nearer to this spot: the middle and southwest forks unite at half a mile above the entrance of the southeast fork. The extreme point at which the former can be seen bears S. 15° E., at the distance of fourteen miles, where it turns to the right round the point of a high plain, and disappears from the view. Its low grounds are several miles in width, forming a smooth and beautiful green meadow, and, like the southeast fork, it divides itself into several streams. Between these two forks, and near their junction with that from the southwest, is a position admirably well calculated for a fort. It is a limestone rock of an oblong form, rising from the plain perpendicularly to the height of twenty-five feet on three of its sides; the fourth, towards the middle fork, being a gradual ascent, and covered with a fine greensward, as is also the top, which is level, and contains about two acres.

"An extensive plain lies between the middle and southwest forks, the last of which, after watering a country like that of the other two branches, disappears about twelve miles off, at a point bearing south 30° west. It is also more divided and serpentine in its course than the other two, and has more timber on its meadows. This timber consists almost exclusively of the narrow-leaved cottonwood, with an intermixture of box-elder and sweet-willow, the underbrush being thick, and like that of the Missouri lower down. A range of high mountains, partially covered with snow, is seen at a considerable distance, running from south to west, and nearly all around us are broken ridges of country like that below,

through which those united streams appear to have forced their passage. After observing the country, Captain Lewis descended to breakfast.

"We then left the mouth of the southeast fork, to which, in honour of the secretary of the treasury, we called Gallatin's River; and at the distance of half a mile reached the confluence of the southwest and middle branches of the Missouri. Here we found a letter from Captain Clarke, and, as we agreed with him that the direction of the southwest fork gave it a decided preference over the others, we ascended that branch of the river for a mile, and encamped in a level, handsome plain on the left, having advanced only seven miles. In this place we resolved to wait the return of Captain Clarke, and, in the mean time, make the necessary celestial observations, recruit the men, and air the baggage. It was, accordingly, all unloaded and stowed away on shore.

"Near the three forks we saw many collections of the mud-nests of the small martin attached to the smooth faces of the limestone rock, where they were sheltered by projections of the rock above; and in the meadows were numbers of duck or mallard with their young, which are now nearly grown. The hunters returned towards evening with six deer, three otter, and a muskrat, and had seen great numbers of antelope, and many signs of beaver and elk.

"During all last night Captain Clarke had a high fever, with chills, accompanied by great pain. He, however, pursued his route eight miles to the middle branch, where, not finding any fresh Indian tracks, he came down it and joined us about three o'clock, very much exhausted with fatigue and the violence of his fever. Believing himself bilious, he took a dose of Rush's pills, which we have always found sovereign in such cases, and bathed the lower extremities in warm water.

"We are now very anxious to see the Snake In-

drans. After having advanced for several hundred miles into this wild and mountainous country, we may soon expect that the game will abandon us. With no information of the route, we may be unable to find a passage across the mountains when we reach the head of the river, at least such a one as will lead us to the Columbia; but, even were we so fortunate as to find a branch of that river, the timber which we have hitherto seen in these mountains does not promise us any fit to make canoes, so that our chief dependance is on meeting some tribe from whom we may procure horses. Our consolation is, that this southwest branch can scarcely head with any other river than the Columbia; and that, if a nation of Indians can live in the mountains, we are able to endure as much as they, and have even better means of procuring subsistence."

CHAPTER XIII.

The Name of the Missouri changed, as the River now divides itself into three Forks, one of which we called Jefferson, one Madison, and one Gallatin.—Their general Character.—The Party ascend the Jefferson Branch.—Description of the River Philosophy, which enters into the Jefferson.—Captain Lewis, with a small Party, goes in advance in search of the Shoshonees.—Description of the Country bordering on the River.—Captain Lewis still preceding the main Party in quest of the Shoshonees.—A singular Accident, which prevented Captain Clarke from following Captain Lewis's Advice, and ascending the middle Fork of the River.—Description of Philanthropy River, another Stream running into the Jefferson.—Captain Lewis, with a small Party, having been unsuccessful in his first Attempt, sets off a second time in quest of the Shoshonees.

"JULY 28. Captain Clarke continued very unwell during the night, but was somewhat relieved this morning. On examining the two streams, it became

difficult to decide which was the larger, or the real Missouri: they are each ninety yards wide, and so perfectly similar in character and appearance that they seem to have been formed in the same mould. We were therefore induced to discontinue the name of Missouri, and give to the southwest branch the name of Jefferson, in honour of the President of the United States, the projector of the enterprise; and called the middle branch Madison, after James Madison, secretary of state. These two, as well as Gallatin River, run with great velocity, and throw out large bodies of water. Gallatin River is, however, the most rapid of the three, and, though not quite as deep, navigable for a considerable distance. Madison River, though much less rapid than the Gallatin, is somewhat more rapid than the Jefferson: the beds of all of them are formed of smooth pebble and gravel, and the waters are perfectly transparent." * * *

"The greater part of the men, having yesterday put their deerskins in water, were this day engaged in dressing them, for the purpose of making clothing. The weather was very warm, the thermometer in the afternoon being at 90° above 0, and the mosquitoes more than usually troublesome: we were, however, relieved from them by a high wind from the southwest, which came on at four o'clock, bringing a storm of thunder and lightning, attended by refreshing showers, which continued till after dark. In the evening the hunters returned with eight deer and two elk; and the party sent up the Gallatin reported that, after passing the point where it escaped from Captain Lewis's view yesterday, it turned more towards the east, as far as they could discern the opening of the mountains formed by the valley which bordered it." * * *

"The low grounds, although not more than eight or nine feet above the water, seem never to be overflowed, except a part on the west side of the middle

fork, which is stony, and seems occasionally inundated. They are furnished with great quantities of small fruit, such as currants and gooseberries: among the latter of which is a black species, which we observe not only in the meadows, but along the mountain rivulets. From the same root rise a number of stems to the height of five or six feet, some of them particularly branched, and all reclining. The berries are attached by a long peduncle to the stem from which they hang, are of a smooth ovate form, as large as the common garden gooseberry, and as black as jet, though the pulp is of a bright crimson colour: it is extremely acid. The form resembles that of the common gooseberry, though larger." * * *

"Sacajawea, our Indian woman, informs us that we are encamped on the precise spot where her countrymen, the Snake Indians, had their huts five years ago, when the Minnetarees of Knife River first came in sight of them, and from whom they hastily retreated three miles up the Jefferson, and concealed themselves in the woods. The Minnetarees, however, pursued and attacked them, killed four men, as many women, and a number of boys; and made prisoners of four other boys and all the females, of whom Sacajawea was one. She does not, however, show any distress at these recollections, nor any joy at the prospect of being restored to her country; for she seems to possess the folly, or the philosophy, of not suffering her feelings to extend beyond the anxiety of having plenty to eat and a few trinkets to wear.

"July 29. This morning the hunters brought in some fat deer of the long-tailed red kind, which are quite as large as those of the United States, and are, indeed, the only kind we have found at this place. There are numbers of the sand-hill cranes feeding in the meadows: we caught a young one of the same colour as the red deer, which, though it had

nearly attained its full growth, could not fly; it is very fierce, and strikes a severe blow with its beak." * * * "The whole party have been engaged in dressing skins, and making them into moccasins and leggins. Captain Clarke's fever has almost left him, but he still remains very languid, and has a general soreness in his limbs. The latitude of our camp, as the mean of two observations of the meridian altitude of the sun's lower limb with octant by back observation, is $45^{\circ} 24' 8.5''$.

"July 30. Captain Clarke was this morning much restored; and, therefore, having made all the observations necessary to fix the longitude, we reloaded our canoes, and began to ascend Jefferson River. The river now becomes very crooked, and forms bends on each side; the current, too, is rapid, and formed into a great number of channels, and sometimes shoals, the beds of which consist of coarse gravel. The islands are unusually numerous: on the right are high plains, occasionally forming cliffs of rocks and hills, while the left is an extensive low ground and prairie, intersected by a number of bayous or channels falling into the river. Captain Lewis, who had walked through it, with Chaboneau, his wife, and two invalids, joined us at dinner a few miles above our camp. Here, the Indian woman said, was the place where she had been made prisoner. The men, being too few to contend with the Minnetarees, mounted their horses, and fled as soon as the attack began. The women and children dispersed, and Sacajawea, as she was crossing at a shoal place, was overtaken in the middle of the river by her pursuers." * * * "Captain Lewis proceeded, after dinner, through an extensive low ground of timber and meadow land intermixed; but the bayous were so obstructed by beaver dams, that, in order to avoid them, he directed his course towards the high plain on the right. This he gained with some difficulty, after wading up to his waist

through the mud and water of a number of beaver dams. When he desired to rejoin the canoes, he found the underbrush so thick, and the river so crooked, that this, joined to the difficulty of passing the beaver dams, induced him to endeavour to intercept the river at some point where it might be more collected into one chanel, and approach nearer to the high plain. He arrived at the bank about sunset, having gone only six miles in a direct course from the canoes; but he saw no traces of the men, nor did he receive any answer to his shouts, nor to the firing of his gun. It was now nearly dark; a duck lighted near him, and he shot it. He then went to the head of a small island, where he found some driftwood, which enabled him to cook his duck for supper, and he laid down to sleep on some willow-brush. The night was cool, but the driftwood gave him a good fire, and he suffered no inconvenience except from the moschetoës.

"July 31. Captain Lewis waited till after seven o'clock in the morning, when he became uneasy lest we should have passed beyond his camp last evening, and determined to follow us. Just as he had set out with this intention, he saw one of the party in advance of the canoes. Although our camp was only two miles below him in a straight line, we could not reach him sooner, in consequence of the rapidity of the water and the circuitous route of the river. We halted for breakfast, after which Captain Lewis continued his route. At the distance of one mile from our encampment we passed the principal entrance of a stream on the left, which rises in the Snowy Mountains, to the southwest, between Jefferson and Madison Rivers, and discharges itself by seven mouths, five below, and one three miles above this, which is the largest, and about thirty yards wide: we called it Philosophy River." * * *

"As we proceeded the low grounds became narrower, and the timber more scarce, till, at the dis-

tance of ten miles, the high hills approach and overhang the river on both sides, forming cliffs of hard black granite, like almost all those below the limestone cliffs at the Three Forks of the Missouri. These cliffs continued for a mile and three quarters, when we came to a point of rock on the right side, where the hills again retire, and the valley widens to the distance of a mile and a half. Within the next five miles we passed four islands, and reached the foot of a mountain in a bend of the river to the left. From this place we went a mile and a quarter to the entrance of a small run, discharging itself on the left, and encamped on an island just above it, after making seventeen and three quarter miles. We observe some pine on the hills on both sides of our encampment, which are very lofty. The only game we have seen were a bighorn, a few antelope and deer, and one brown bear, which escaped from our pursuit. Nothing was killed to-day, nor have we had any fresh meat, except one beaver, for the last two days; so that we are now reduced to an unusual situation, for we have hitherto always had a great abundance of flesh.

"August 1. We left our encampment early, and at the distance of a mile reached a point of rocks on the left side, where the river passes through perpendicular cliffs. Two and three quarter miles farther we halted for breakfast, under a cedar-tree in a bend to the right. Here, as had been previously arranged, Captain Lewis left us, with Sergeant Gass, Chaboneau, and Drewyer, intending to go in advance in search of the Shoshonees." * * * "In crossing the mountains he saw a flock of the dark or brown pheasant, one of which he killed. This bird is one third larger than the common pheasant of the Atlantic States; its form is much the same. The male has not, however, the tufts of long black feathers on the sides of the neck, so conspicuous in the Atlantic pheasant, and both sexes are booted nearly

to the toes. The colour is a uniform dark brown, with a small mixture of yellow or yellowish brown specks on some of the feathers, particularly those of the tail, though the extremities of these are perfectly black for about an inch. The eye is nearly black, and the iris has a small dash of yellowish brown; the feathers of the tail are somewhat longer than those of our pheasant, but the same in number, eighteen, and nearly equal in size, except that those in the middle are somewhat the longest. Their flesh is white, and agreeably flavoured.

“He also saw among the scattered pines near the top of the mountain a blue bird, about the size of a robin, but in action and form something like a jay: it is constantly in motion, hopping from spray to spray, and its note, which is loud and frequent, is, as far as letters can represent it, char ah! char ah! char ah!

“After breakfast we proceeded on. At the distance of two and a quarter miles the river enters a high mountain, which forms rugged cliffs of nearly perpendicular rocks. These are of black granite at the lower part, and the upper consists of a light-coloured freestone; they continue from the point of rocks close to the river for nine miles, which we passed before breakfast, though the current was very strong. At nine and a quarter miles we passed an island, and a rapid with a fall of six feet, and reached the entrance of a large creek on the left side. In passing this place, the towline of one of the canoes broke just at the shoot of the rapid, swung on the rocks, and nearly upset. To the creek as well as the rapid we gave the name of Frazier, after Robert Frazier, one of the party. Here the country opens into a beautiful valley, from six to eight miles in width. The river then becomes crooked and crowded with islands; its low grounds wide and fertile, but, though covered with fine grass from nine inches to two feet high, possessing but a

small proportion of timber, and that consisting almost entirely of a few narrow-leaved cottonwood-trees, distributed along the verge of the river. The soil of the plain is tolerably fertile, and consists of a black or dark yellow loam. It gradually ascends on each side to the bases of two ranges of high mountains which lie parallel to the river: the tops of them are yet, in part, covered with snow; and while in the valley we are nearly suffocated with heat during the day, at night the air is so cold that two blankets are not more than sufficient covering." * * *

"August 2. Captain Lewis, who slept in the valley a few miles above us, resumed his journey early, and, after making five miles, and finding that the river still bore to the south, determined to cross it, in hopes of shortening the route. For the first time, therefore, he waded across it, although there are probably many places above the falls where it might be attempted with equal safety. The river was about ninety yards wide, the current rapid, and about waist deep. He then continued along the left bank, and encamped after travelling twenty-four miles. He met no fresh tracks of Indians." * * *

"In the mean time we proceeded on slowly, the current being so strong as to require the utmost exertions of the men to make any advance, even with the aid of the cord and pole, the wind being from the northwest. The channel, current, banks, and general appearance of the river are like that of yesterday." * * *

"August 3. Captain Lewis pursued his course along the river through the valley, which continued much as it was yesterday, except that it now widened to nearly twelve miles: the plains, too, were more broken, and had some scattered pines near the mountains, where they rise higher than hitherto." * * * "The mountains continued high on each side of the valley, but their only covering was a small

species of pitch-pine with a short leaf, growing on the lower and middle regions, while for some distance below the snowy tops there was neither timber nor herbage of any kind." * * * "He made twenty-three miles, the latter part of which, for eight miles, was through a high plain, covered with prickly pears and bearded grass, which rendered the walking very inconvenient; but even this was better than the river bottoms we crossed in the evening, which, though apparently level, were formed into deep holes, as if they had been rooted up by hogs; and the holes were so covered with thick grass that we were in danger of falling at every step." * * *

"On setting out with the canoes, we found the river, as usual, much crowded with islands, the current more rapid as well as shallower, so that in many places we were obliged to man the canoes double, and drag them over the stone and gravel of the channel. Soon after we set off, Captain Clarke, who was walking on shore, observed a fresh track, which he knew to be that of an Indian from the great toes being turned inward; and, on following it, found that it led to the point of a hill from which our camp of last night could be seen. This circumstance strengthened the belief that some Indian had strayed thither, and run off, alarmed at the sight of us. At two and a quarter miles is a small creek in a bend towards the right, which runs down from the mountains at a little distance; we called it Panther Creek, from an animal of that kind killed by Reuben Fields at its mouth. It is precisely the same animal common to the western parts of the United States, and measured seven and a half feet from the nose to the extremity of the tail." * * * "We accomplished only thirteen miles, and the badness of the river made it very laborious, as the men were compelled to be in the water during the greater part of the day.

"August 4. This morning Captain Lewis started

early, and, after going southeast by east for four miles, reached a bold running creek twelve yards wide, with clear cold water, furnished apparently by four drains from the Snowy Mountains on the left."

At the distance of three miles he came to a river about thirty yards wide, apparently navigable for some distance; and, continuing his route in a south-westerly direction several miles farther, he reached another forty-five yards in breadth, which he found waist deep in fording it. Following its course for about six miles, he found it joined by a considerable stream with a rapid current, coming from the south-west. From a careful observation of the direction and character of these streams, he became satisfied that the middle one was the best to be taken by the canoes, and left a note for Captain Clarke to that effect. The party in the canoes proceeded onward as usual, finding but little change in the country, killing game as they had opportunity for their subsistence, and encountering many difficulties from the ripples and shoals of the river. The men were becoming much enfeebled from the severity of their labours and being constantly in the water.

"August 5. This morning," proceeds the Journal, "Chaboneau complained that he should be unable to march far to-day, and Captain Lewis therefore ordered him and Sergeant Gass to pass the rapid river, and proceed through the level low ground to a point of high timber on the middle fork, seven miles distant, and wait his return. He then went along the north side of the rapid river about four miles, where he forded it, and found it so swift and shallow that it would be impossible to navigate it. He continued along the left side for a mile and a half, when the mountains came close to the river, and rose to a considerable height, with a partial covering of snow. From this place the course of the river was to the east of north. After ascending

with some difficulty a high point of the mountain, he had a pleasing view of the valley he had passed, and which continued for about twenty miles farther on each side of the middle fork, which then seemed to enter the mountains, and was lost to the view. In that direction, however, the hills, which terminated the valley, were much lower than those along either of the other forks, particularly the rapid one, where they continued rising in ranges above each other as far as the eye could reach: the general course, too, of the middle fork, as well as that of the gap which it formed on entering the mountains, was considerably to the south of west: circumstances which gave a decided preference to this branch as the future route. Captain Lewis now descended the mountain, and crossed over to the middle fork, about five miles distant, and found it still perfectly navigable. There was a very large and plain Indian road leading up to it, but it had then no tracks except those of horses, which seemed to have used it the last spring. The river here made a great bend to the southeast, and he therefore directed his course as well as he could to the spot where he had directed Chaboneau and Gass to repair, and struck the river about three miles above their camp. It was now dark, and he was obliged to make his way through the thick brush of the pulpy-leaved thorn and the prickly pear for two hours before he reached their camp. Here he was fortunate enough to find the remains of some meat, which was his only food during his march of twenty-five miles. He had seen no game of any sort except a few antelope, which were very shy." * * *

"We arrived at the forks about four o'clock, but, unluckily, Captain Lewis's note had been attached to a green pole, which the beaver had cut down, and carried off with the note on it: an accident which deprived us of all information as to the character of the two branches of the river. Observing, there-

fore, that the northwest fork was most in our direction, we ascended it. We found it extremely rapid, and its waters were scattered in such a manner that for a quarter of a mile we were forced to cut a passage through the willow-brush that leaned over the little channels and united at the top. After going up it for a mile, we encamped on an island which had been overflowed, and was still so wet that we were compelled to make beds of brush to keep ourselves out of the mud. Our provision consisted of two deer which had been killed in the morning.

"August 6. We again proceeded up the northwest fork, which we found still very rapid, and divided by several islands, while the plains near it were intersected by *bayous*. After passing with much difficulty over stones and rapids, we reached a bluff on the right, at the distance of nine miles, our general course having been south 30° west, and halted for breakfast. Here we were joined by Drewyer, who informed us of the state of the two streams, and of Captain Lewis's note, when we immediately began to descend the river, in order to take the other branch. In going down one of the canoes upset, and two others filled with water, by which all the baggage was wet, and several articles irrecoverably lost. As one of them swung round in a rapid current, Whitehouse was thrown out of her, and while down the canoe passed over him, and, had the water been two inches shallower, would have crushed him to pieces; but he escaped with a severe bruise of the leg. In order to repair these misfortunes, we hastened to the forks, where we were joined by Captain Lewis, and then passed over to the left side, opposite to the entrance of the rapid fork, and encamped on a large gravelly bar, near which there was plenty of wood. Here we opened, and exposed to dry, all the articles which had suffered from the water. None of them were completely spoiled except a small keg of powder: the rest of the pow-

der was quite safe, though it had been under water upward of an hour. The air is indeed so pure and dry, that any woodwork immediately shrinks unless it is kept filled with water; but we had placed our powder in small canisters of lead, each containing enough for the canister when melted into bullets, and secured with cork and wax, which answered the purpose perfectly.

"Captain Lewis had risen very early, and, having nothing to eat, sent out Drewyer to the woodland on the left in search of a deer, and directed Sergeant Gass to keep along the middle branch, to meet us if we were ascending it. He then set out with Chaboneau towards the forks; but, five miles above them, hearing us on the left, struck the river as we were descending, and came on board at the forks.

"In the evening we killed three deer and four elk, which furnished us once more with a plentiful supply of meat. Shannon, the same man who had been lost before for fifteen days, was sent this morning to hunt on the northwest fork. When we decided on returning, Drewyer was directed to go in quest of him, but he returned with information that he had proceeded several miles up the river without being able to find him. We now had the trumpet sounded, and fired several guns, but he did not return, and we fear he is again lost.

"August 7. We remained at our encampment this morning for the purpose of making some celestial observations, and also in order to refresh the men, and complete the drying of the baggage. We obtained a meridian altitude, which gave the latitude of our camp $45^{\circ} 2' 43.8''$. We were now completely satisfied that the middle branch was the most navigable, and the true continuation of the Jefferson. The northwest fork seems to be the drain of the melting snows of the mountains: we called it Wisdom River." * * *

"As soon as the baggage was dried it was reload-

ed on board the boats, but we now found it so much diminished that we were able to proceed with one canoe less. We therefore hauled up the superfluous one into a thicket of brush, where we secured her against being swept away by the high tide. At one o'clock all set out except Captain Lewis, who remained till the evening in order to complete the observation of equal altitudes." * * * "Uneasy about Shannon, we had sent R. Fields in search of him in the morning." * * *

They found the river so crooked on the following day, that, although they proceeded a considerable distance, they made but little advance on their general course. They passed a stream coming in from the southeast, thirty yards wide at its mouth, to which they gave the name of Philanthropy River. Fields returned without having seen or heard anything of the missing man. "The general appearance of the surrounding country," continues the narrative, "is that of a valley five or six miles wide, enclosed between two high mountains. The bottom is rich, with some small timber on the islands and along the river, which consists rather of underbrush, with a few cottonwood, birch, and willow trees. The high grounds have some scattering pine, which just relieve the general nakedness of the hills, but in the plain there is nothing except grass. Along the bottoms we saw to-day a considerable quantity of the buffalo clover, the sunflower, flax, greensward, thistle, and several species of rye grass, some of which rise to the height of three or four feet. There is also a grass with a soft, smooth leaf, which rises about three feet high, and bears its seed very much like the timothy; but it does not grow luxuriantly, nor would it apparently answer so well in our meadows as that plant. We preserved some of its seed, which are now ripe, in order to make the experiment. Our game consisted of deer and antelope, and we saw a number of geese and ducks just begin-

ning to fly, and some cranes. We have an abundance of the large biting or hare fly, of which there are two species, one black, the other smaller and brown except the head, which is green. The green, or blowing flies, unite with them in swarms to attack us, and seem to have relieved the eye-gnats, which have now disappeared. The moschetoës, too, are in large numbers, but not so troublesome as they were below. Through the valley are scattered bogs, and some very good turf; the earth of which the mud is composed is of a white or bluish-white colour, and seems to be argillaceous. On all the three rivers, but particularly on the Philanthropy, are immense quantities of beaver, otter, and muskrat." * * *

"On our right is the point of a high plain, which our Indian woman recognises as the place called the Beaver's Head, from a supposed resemblance to that object. This, she says, is not far from the summer retreat of her countrymen, which is on a river beyond the mountains, and running to the west. She is therefore certain that we shall meet them either on this river or on that immediately west of its source, which, judging from its present size, cannot be far distant. Persuaded of the absolute necessity of procuring horses to cross the mountains, it was determined that one of us should proceed in the morning to the head of the river, and penetrate the mountains till he found the Shoshonees or some other nation who can assist us in transporting our baggage, the greater part of which we shall be compelled to leave without the aid of horses." * * *

Early the next day they were joined by Shannon. He was greatly fatigued, but had lived plentifully, and brought in the skins of three deer. "Immediately after breakfast," says the Journal, "Captain Lewis took Drewyer, Shields, and M'Neal, and, slinging their knapsacks, they set out with a resolution to meet some nation of Indians before they

returned, however long they might be separated from the party." * * *

The party in the canoes continued to ascend the river, which was so crooked that they advanced but four miles in a direct line from their starting-place in a distance of eleven miles.

"August 10. Captain Lewis proceeded on his route at an early hour through the wide bottom along the left bank of the river. At about five miles he passed a large creek, and then fell into an Indian road leading towards the point where the river entered the mountains. This he followed till he reached a high perpendicular cliff of rocks, where the river makes its passage through the hills, and which he called Rattlesnake Cliff, from the numbers of that reptile which he saw there. Here he kindled a fire and waited the return of Drewyer, who had been sent out on the way to kill a deer: he came back about noon with the skins of three deer, and the flesh of one of the best of them. After a hasty dinner they returned to the Indian road, which they had left for a short distance to see the cliff. It led them sometimes over the hills, sometimes along the narrow bottoms of the river, till, at the distance of fifteen miles from Rattlesnake Cliff, they reached a handsome, open, and level valley, where the river divided into nearly two equal branches. The mountains over which they passed were not very high, but rugged, and run close to the river side. The river, which before it enters the mountain is rapid, rocky, very crooked, much divided by islands, and shallow, now becomes more direct in its course as it is hemmed in by the hills, and has not so many bends nor islands, but is still more rapid and rocky, and continues as shallow as before. On examining both branches, it was evident that neither of them was navigable farther. The road forked with the river; and Captain Lewis therefore sent a man up each of them for a short distance, in order that, by compa-

ring their respective reports, he might be able to take that which seemed to have been most used the last spring. From their accounts he resolved to choose that which led along the southwest branch of the river, which was rather the smaller of the two; he accordingly wrote a note to Captain Clarke, informing him of his route, and recommending his staying with the party at the forks till he should return. This he fixed on a dry willow pole at the forks of the river, and then proceeded up the southwest branch. But, after going a mile and a half, the road became scarcely distinguishable, and the tracks of the horses which he had followed along the Jefferson were no longer seen. He therefore returned to examine the other road himself, and found that the horses had, in fact, passed along the western or right fork, which had the additional recommendation of being larger than the other.

"This road he concluded to take, and sent back Drewyer to the forks with a second letter to Captain Clarke, apprizing him of the change, and then proceeded on. The valley of the west fork, through which he now passed, bears a little to the north of west, and is confined within the space of about a mile in width by rough mountains and steep cliffs of rock. At the distance of four and a half miles it opens into a beautiful and extensive plain, about ten miles long, and five or six in width, surrounded on all sides by a higher rolling or waving country, intersected by several little rivulets from the mountains, each bordered by wide meadows. Nearly the entire prospect is bounded by these mountains, which thus form a beautiful sheltered vale about sixteen or eighteen miles in diameter. On entering this vale the river bends to the northwest, and bathes the foot of the hills on the right. At this place they halted for the night, on the right side of the river, and, having lighted a fire of dry willow brush, the only fuel which the country affords, supped on a deer. They

had travelled to-day thirty miles by estimate: that is, ten to Rattlesnake Cliff, fifteen to the forks of Jefferson River, and five to their encampment. In this vale some parts of the low grounds are tolerably fertile, but much the greater proportion is covered with prickly pear, sedge, twisted grass, the pulpy-leaved thorn, southern-wood, and wild sage, and, like the uplands, has a very inferior soil. These last have little more than the prickly pear, and the twisted or bearded grass; nor are there in the whole vale more than three or four cottonwood-trees, and those are small. At the apparent extremity of the bottom lands above, and about ten miles to the west, are two perpendicular cliffs, rising to a considerable height on each side of the river, and at this distance seem like a gate."

The party by water started at sunrise, and found the river not so rapid as the day before, though more narrow, and still very crooked, and so shallow, that they were obliged to drag the canoes over many ripples in the course of the day. The game appeared to be growing scarcer, and they killed only a single deer.

CHAPTER XIV.

Captain Lewis precedes the main Body in Search of the Shoshonees.—His ill Success at the first Interview.—The Party with Captain Lewis at length discover the Source of the Missouri.—Captain Clarke, with the main Body, still employed in ascending the Missouri or Jefferson River.—Captain Lewis's second interview with the Shoshonees successful.—The interesting Ceremonies of his first Introduction to the Natives detailed at large.—Their Hospitality.—Their Mode of hunting the Antelope.—The Difficulties encountered by Captain Clarke in ascending the River.—Suspensions entertained of Captain Lewis by the Shoshonees, and his Mode of allaying them.—The ravenous Appetite of the Savages illustrated by a singular Adventure.—The Indians still Jealous, and the great Pains taken by Captain Lewis to preserve their Confidence.—Captain Clarke arrives with the main Body, exhausted by the Difficulties they had undergone.

“August 11. Captain Lewis again proceeded on early, but had the mortification to find that the track he had followed yesterday soon disappeared. He determined, therefore, to go on to the narrow gate, or pass of the river, which he had seen from the camp, in hopes of being able to recover the Indian path. For this purpose he waded across the river, which was now about twelve yards wide, and barred in several places by the dams of the beaver, and then went straight forward to the pass, sending one man along the river to his left, and another to the right, with orders to search for the road, and, if they found it, to let him know by raising a hat on the muzzle of their guns. In this order they went along for about five miles, when Captain Lewis perceived, with the greatest delight, a man on horseback, at the distance of two miles, coming down the plain towards them. On observing him with the glass, Captain Lewis saw that he was of a different

nation from any Indians we had hitherto met: he was armed with a bow and a quiver of arrows; mounted on an elegant horse without a saddle, and a small string attached to the under jaw answered as a bridle. Convinced that he was a Shoshonee, and knowing how much of our success depended on the friendly offices of that nation, Captain Lewis was full of anxiety to approach without alarming him, and to convince him that he was a white man: he therefore proceeded on towards the Indian at his usual pace. When they were within a mile of each other the Indian suddenly stopped; Captain Lewis immediately followed his example, took his blanket from his knapsack, and, holding it with both hands at the two corners, threw it above his head, and unfolded it as he brought it to the ground, as if in the act of spreading it. This signal, which originates in the practice of spreading a robe or skin as a seat for guests to whom they wish to show a distinguished kindness, is the universal sign of friendship among the Indians on the Missouri and the Rocky Mountains. As usual, Captain Lewis repeated this signal three times: still the Indian kept his position, and looked with an air of suspicion on Drewyer and Shields, who were now advancing on each side. Captain Lewis was afraid to make any signal for them to halt, lest he should increase the distrust of the Indian, who began to be uneasy, and they were too distant to hear his voice. He therefore took from his pack some beads, a looking-glass, and a few trinkets, which he had brought for the purpose, and, leaving his gun, advanced unarmed towards the Indian. He remained in the same position till Captain Lewis came within two hundred yards of him, when he turned his horse and began to move off slowly. Captain Lewis then called out to him in as loud a voice as he could, repeating the words *tabba bone*, which in the Shoshonee language mean white man. But, looking over his shoulder, the In-

dian kept his eyes on Drewyer and Shields, who were still advancing, without recollecting the impropriety of doing so at such a moment, till Captain Lewis made a signal to them to halt: this Drewyer obeyed, but Shields did not observe it, and still went forward. Seeing Drewyer halt, the Indian turned his horse about as if to wait for Captain Lewis, who now reached within one hundred and fifty paces, repeating the words *tabba bone*, and holding up the trinkets in his hand, at the same time stripping up the sleeve of his shirt to show the colour of his skin: The Indian suffered him to advance within one hundred paces, then suddenly turned his horse, and, giving him the whip, leaped across the creek, and disappeared in an instant among the willow bushes: with him vanished all the hopes which the sight of him had inspired, of a friendly introduction to his countrymen.

“Though sadly disappointed by the imprudence of his two men, Captain Lewis determined to make the incident of some use, and, calling the men to him, they all set off after the track of the horse, which they hoped might lead them to the camp of the Indian who had fled, or, if he had given the alarm to any small party, their track might conduct them to the body of the nation. They now fixed a small flag of the United States on a pole, which was carried by one of the men as a signal of their friendly intentions, should the Indians observe them as they were advancing. The track lay across an island formed by a nearly equal division of the creek in the low grounds; and, after reaching the open land on the opposite side, it turned towards some high hills about three miles distant. Presuming that the Indian camp might be among these hills, and that by advancing hastily he might be seen and alarm them, Captain Lewis sought an elevated situation near the creek, had a fire made of willow brush, and took breakfast. At the same time he

prepared a small assortment of beads, trinkets, awls, some paint, and a looking-glass, and placed them on a pole near the fire, in order that, if the Indians returned, they might discover that the party were white men and friends. While making these preparations, a very heavy shower of rain and hail came on, and wet them to the skin. In about twenty minutes it was over, and Captain Lewis renewed the pursuit; but, as the rain had made the grass which the horse had trodden down rise again, his track could with difficulty be distinguished. As they went along they passed several places where the Indians seemed to have been digging roots the same day, and saw the fresh track of eight or ten horses; but they had been wandering about in so confused a manner that he could not discern any particular path, and at last, after pursuing the track of the fugitive Indian about four miles along the valley to the left, under the foot of the hills, he lost it altogether."

The party in the canoes advanced as usual, encountering the same difficulties as before, and making but little actual progress, from the numerous bends in the river. They passed a large island, which they called Three-thousand-mile Island, from its being at this distance from the mouth of the Missouri.

"August 12. This morning, as soon as it was light, Captain Lewis sent Drewyer to discover, if possible, the route of the Indians. In about an hour and a half he returned, after following the tracks of the horse they had lost yesterday to the mountains, among which they ascended, and were no longer visible. Captain Lewis now decided on making the circuit along the foot of the mountains which formed the valley, expecting by that means to find a road across them, and accordingly sent Drewyer on one side, and Shields on the other. In this way they crossed four small rivulets near each other, on which

were some bowers or conical lodges of willow brush, which seemed to have been constructed recently. From the manner in which the ground in the neighbourhood was torn up, the Indians appeared to have been gathering roots; but Captain Lewis could not discover what particular plant they were searching for; nor could he find any fresh track, till, at the distance of four miles from his camp, he met a large, plain Indian road, which came into the valley from the northeast, and wound along the foot of the mountains to the southwest, approaching obliquely the main stream he had left yesterday. Down this road he now went towards the southwest. At the distance of five miles it crossed a large run or creek, which is a principal branch of the main stream into which it falls, just above the high cliffs or gates observed yesterday, and which they now saw below them. Here they halted, and breakfasted on the last of the deer, keeping a small piece of pork in reserve against accident: they then proceeded through the low bottom along the main stream, near the foot of the mountains on their right. For the first five miles the valley continued towards the southwest, and was from two to three miles in width: then the main stream, which had received two small branches from the left, turned abruptly to the west through a narrow bottom between the mountains. The road was still plain; and as it led them directly towards the mountain, the stream gradually became smaller, till, after their advancing two miles farther, it had so greatly diminished in width, that one of the men, in a fit of enthusiasm, with one foot on each side of the rivulet, thanked God that he had lived to bestride the Missouri. As they proceeded on, their hopes of soon seeing the waters of the Columbia rose almost to painful anxiety, when, at the distance of four miles from the last abrupt turn of the stream, they reached a small gap, formed by the high mountains which recede on either side, leaving room for

the Indian road. From the foot of one of the lowest of these mountains, which rises with a gentle ascent of about half a mile, issues the remotest water of the Missouri.

"They had now reached the hidden sources of that river, which had never before been seen by civilized man; and as they quenched their thirst at the chaste and icy fountain—as they sat down by the brink of that little rivulet, which yielded its distant and modest tribute to the parent ocean, they felt themselves rewarded for all their labours and all their difficulties. They left reluctantly this interesting spot, and, pursuing the Indian road, through the interval of the hills, arrived at the top of a ridge, from which they saw high mountains, partially covered with snow, still to the west of them.

"The ridge on which they stood formed the dividing-line between the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. They followed a descent much steeper than that on the eastern side, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile reached a handsome, bold creek of cold, clear water running to the westward. They stopped to taste, for the first time, the waters of the Columbia; and, after a few minutes, followed the road across steep hills and low hollows, when they came to a spring on the side of a mountain. Here they found a sufficient quantity of dry willow-brush for fuel, and therefore halted for the night; and, having killed nothing in the course of the day, supped on their last piece of pork, and trusted to fortune for some other food to mix with a little flour and parched meal, which was all that now remained of their provisions. Before reaching the fountain of the Missouri, they saw several large hawks, nearly black, and some heathcocks: these last have a long, pointed tail, and are of a uniform dark brown colour, much larger than the common fowl, and similar in habits and their mode of flying to the grouse or prairie-hen. Drewyer also

wounded, at the distance of one hundred and thirty yards, an animal which we had not yet seen, but which, after falling, recovered itself and escaped. It seemed to be of the fox kind, rather larger than the small wolf of the plains, and with a skin in which black and reddish brown were curiously intermixed. On a creek of the Columbia they found a species of currant, which does not grow as high as that of the Missouri, though it is more branching, and its leaf, the under disk of which is covered with a hairy pubescence, is twice as large. The fruit is of the ordinary size and shape of the currant, and supported in the usual manner, but is of a deep purple colour, acid, and of a very inferior flavour." * * *

Captain Clarke proceeded on with the boats, advancing twelve miles in the course of the day, though, owing to the numerous curvatures in the river, only four miles in a direct line. The men were feeble and sore from being continually in the water, and so worn down by fatigue that they were impatient to travel by land.

Early next morning Captain Lewis started again on the Indian road, which ran in a western direction, through an open, broken country, and conducted him to a fine valley about a mile in width. Among other plants, they met with "a species of honeysuckle, resembling, in its general appearance and the shape of its leaf, the small honeysuckle of the Missouri, except that it is rather larger, and bears a globular berry about the size of a garden pea, of a white colour, and formed of a soft, white, mucilaginous substance, in which are several small brown seeds, irregularly scattered without any cell, and enveloped in a smooth, thin pellicle.

"They proceeded along a waving plain parallel to the valley for about four miles, when they discovered two women, a man, and some dogs, on an eminence at the distance of a mile before them. The strangers viewed them apparently with much atten-

tion for a few minutes, and then two of them sat down, as if to await Captain Lewis's arrival. He went on till he reached within about half a mile of them; then, ordering his party to stop, put down his knapsack and rifle, and, unfurling the flag, advanced alone. The females soon retreated behind the hill, but the man remained till Captain Lewis came within a hundred yards of him, when he too went off, though Captain Lewis called out *tabba bone* loud enough to be distinctly heard. He hastened to the top of the hill, but they had all disappeared. The dogs, however, were less shy, and came close to him: he therefore thought of tying a handkerchief with some beads round their necks, and then letting them loose, to convince the fugitives of his friendly disposition; but they would not suffer him to take hold of them, and soon left him.

"He now made a signal to his men, who joined him, and then all followed the track of the Indians, which led along a continuation of the same road they had been already travelling. It was dusty, and seemed to have been much used lately both by foot-passengers and horsemen. They had not gone along it more than a mile, when on a sudden they saw three female Indians, from whom they had been concealed by the deep ravines which intersected the road, till they were now within thirty paces of each other. One of them, a young woman, immediately took to flight: the other two, an elderly woman and a little girl, seeing we were too near for them to escape, sat on the ground, and, holding down their heads, seemed as if reconciled to the death which they supposed awaited them. The same habit of holding down the head, and inviting the enemy to strike, when all chance of escape is gone, is preserved in Egypt to this day. Captain Lewis instantly put down his rifle, and, advancing towards them, took the woman by the hand, raised her up, and repeated the words *tabba bone*, at the same time

stripping up his shirt sleeve to prove that he was a white man; for his hands and face had become, by constant exposure, quite as dark as their own. She appeared immediately relieved from her alarm, and Drewyer and Shields now coming up, Captain Lewis gave her and her child some beads, a few awls, pewter mirrors, and a little paint, and told Drewyer to request her to recall her companion, who had escaped to some distance, and, by alarming the Indians, might cause them to attack him without any time for explanation. She did as she was desired, and the young woman returned almost out of breath. Captain Lewis gave her an equal portion of trinkets, and painted the tawny cheeks of all three of them with vermilion: a ceremony which among the Shoshonees is emblematic of peace. After they had become composed, he informed them by signs of his wish to go to their camp, in order to see their chiefs and warriors; they readily assented, and conducted the party along the same road down the river. In this way they marched two miles, when they met a troop of nearly sixty warriors, mounted on excellent horses, riding at full speed towards them. As they came forward, Captain Lewis put down his gun, and went with the flag about fifty paces in advance. The chief, who with two men was riding in front of the main body, spoke to the women, who now explained that the party was composed of white men, and showed exultingly the presents they had received. The three men immediately leaped from their horses, came up to Captain Lewis, and embraced him with great cordiality, putting their left arm over his right shoulder, and clasping his back, applying at the same time their left cheek to his, and frequently vociferating *ah hi e! ah hi e!* "I am much pleased, I am much rejoiced." The whole body of warriors now came forward, and our men received the caresses, and no small share of the grease and paint, of their new friends. After this fraternal embrace,

of which the motive was much more agreeable than the manner, Captain Lewis lighted a pipe, and offered it to the Indians, who had now seated themselves in a circle around the party. But, before they would receive this mark of friendship, they pulled off their moccasins: a custom, as we afterward learned, which indicates the sacred sincerity of their professions when they smoke with a stranger, and which imprecates on themselves the misery of going bare-foot forever if they prove faithless to their words—a penalty by no means light for those who rove over the thorny plains of this country.” * * *

“After smoking a few pipes, some trifling presents were distributed among them, with which they seemed very much pleased, particularly with the blue beads and the vermillion. Captain Lewis then stated to the chief that the object of his visit was friendly, and should be explained as soon as he reached their camp; and that, as the sun was oppressive, and no water near, he wished to go there as soon as possible. They now put on their moccasins, and their chief, whose name was Cameahwait, made a short speech to the warriors. Captain Lewis then gave him the flag, which he informed him was among white men the emblem of peace; and, now that he had received it, was to be in future the bond of union between them. The chief then moved on; our party followed him; and the rest of the warriors, in a squadron, brought up the rear. After marching a mile they were halted by the chief, who made a second harangue; on which six or eight young men rode forward to their camp, and no farther regularity was observed in the order of march. At the distance of four miles from where they had first met, they reached the Indian camp, which was in a handsome level meadow on the bank of the river. Here they were introduced into an old leathern lodge, which the young men who had been sent from the party had fitted up for their reception.

After their being seated on some green boughs and antelope skins, one of the warriors pulled up the grass in the centre of the lodge, so as to form a vacant circle of two feet diameter, in which he kindled a fire. The chief then produced his pipe and tobacco, the warriors all pulled off their moccasins, and our party was requested to take off theirs. This being done, the chief lighted his pipe at the fire within the magic circle, and then, retreating from it, commenced a speech several minutes long, at the end of which he pointed the stem towards the four cardinal points of the heavens, beginning with the east, and concluding with the north. After this ceremony he presented the stem in the same way to Captain Lewis, who, supposing it to be an invitation to smoke, put out his hand to receive the pipe; but the chief drew it back, and continued to repeat the same offer three times, after which he pointed the stem first to the heavens, then to the centre of the little circle, took three whiffs himself, and presented it again to Captain Lewis. Finding that this last offer was in good earnest, he smoked a little: the pipe was then held to each of the white men, and, after they had taken a few whiffs, was given to the warriors. This pipe was made of a compact transparent greenstone, very highly polished, about two and a half inches long, and of an oval figure, the bowl being in the same situation with the stem. A small piece of burned clay is placed in the bottom of the bowl, to separate the tobacco from the end of the stem, and is of an irregularly round figure, not fitting the tube perfectly close, in order that the smoke may pass with facility. The tobacco is of the same kind with that used by the Minnetarees, Mandans, and Ricaras of the Missouri. The Shoshonees do not cultivate this plant, but obtain it from the Rocky Mountain Indians, and some of the bands of their own nation that live farther south.

"The ceremony of smoking being concluded,

Captain Lewis explained to the chief the purposes of his visit; and as, by this time, all the women and children of the camp had gathered around the lodge, to obtain a view of the first white men they had ever seen, he distributed among them the remainder of the small articles he had brought with him. It was now late in the afternoon, and our party had tasted no food since the night before. On apprizing the chief of this circumstance, he said that he had nothing but berries to eat, and presented some cakes made of service-berries and chokecherries which had been dried in the sun. On these Captain Lewis made a hearty meal, and then walked down towards the river: he found it a rapid, clear stream, forty yards wide and three feet deep; the banks were low and abrupt, like those of the upper part of the Missouri, and the bed formed of loose stones and gravel. Its course, as far as he could observe it, was a little to the north of west, and was bounded on each side by a range of high mountains, of which those on the east are the lowest and most distant from the river.

"The chief informed him that this stream discharged itself, at the distance of half a day's march, into another of twice its size, coming in from the southwest; but added, on farther inquiry, that there was scarcely more timber below the junction of those rivers than in this neighbourhood; and that the river was rocky, rapid, and so closely confined between high mountains, that it was impossible to pass down it either by land or water to the great lake, where, as he had understood, the white men lived. This information was far from being satisfactory; for there was no timber here that would answer the purpose of building canoes, indeed not more than just sufficient for fuel, and even that consisted of the narrow-leaved cottonwood, the red and the narrow-leaved willow, the chokecherry, service-berry, and a few currant-bushes, such as are common on the Missouri. The prospect of going on by

land was more pleasant; for there were great numbers of horses feeding in every direction round the camp, which would enable us to transport our stores, if necessary, over the mountains.

"Captain Lewis returned from the river to his lodge, and on his way an Indian invited him into his bower, and gave him a small morsel of boiled antelope and a piece of fresh salmon roasted. This was the first salmon he had seen, and perfectly satisfied him that he was now on the waters flowing to the Pacific. On reaching his lodge he resumed his conversation with the chief, after which he was entertained with a dance by the Indians.

"It now proved, as our party had feared, that the man whom they had first met this morning had returned to the camp, and spread the alarm that their enemies, the Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie, whom they call Pahkees, were advancing on them. The warriors instantly armed themselves, and were coming down in expectation of an attack, when they were agreeably surprised by meeting our party. The greater part of them were armed with bows and arrows, and shields, but a few had small fusils, such as are furnished by the Northwest Company's traders, and which they had obtained from the Indians on the Yellowstone, with whom they were now at peace. They had reason to dread the approach of the Pahkees, who had attacked them in the course of the last spring, and totally defeated them. On this occasion twenty of their warriors were either killed or made prisoners; and they lost their whole camp, except the leathern lodge which they had fitted up for us, and were now obliged to live in huts of a conical figure, made of willow-brush. The music and dancing, which were in no respect different from those of the Missouri Indians, continued nearly all night; but Captain Lewis retired to rest about twelve o'clock, when the fatigues

of the day enabled him to sleep, though he was awaked several times by the yells of the dancers."

While Captain Lewis was thus engaged, his companions in the canoes were slowly and laboriously ascending the river. The character of the stream was much as it had been for several days, and the men were in the water three fourths of the time, dragging the boats over the shoals. They had but little success in killing game, but caught, as they had done for some days before, numbers of fine trout.

"August 14. In order to give time for the boats to reach the forks of Jefferson River," proceeds the narrative, "Captain Lewis determined to remain where he was, and obtain all the information he could collect in regard to the country. Having nothing to eat but a little flour and parched meal, with the berries of the Indians, he sent out Drewyer and Shields, who borrowed horses from the natives, to hunt for a few hours. About the same time the young warriors set out for the same purpose. There are but few elk or black-tailed deer in this neighbourhood; and as the common red deer secrete themselves in the bushes when alarmed, they are soon safe from the arrows, which are but feeble weapons against any animals which the huntsmen cannot previously run down with their horses. The chief game of the Shoshonees, therefore, is the antelope, which, when pursued, retreats to the open plains, where the horses have full room for the chase. But such is its extraordinary fleetness and wind, that a single horse has no possible chance of outrunning it or tiring it down, and the hunters are therefore obliged to resort to stratagem.

"About twenty Indians, mounted on fine horses, and armed with bows and arrows, left the camp. In a short time they descried a herd of ten antelope: they immediately separated into little squads of two or three, and formed a scattered circle round the

herd for five or six miles, keeping at a wary distance, so as not to alarm them till they were perfectly enclosed, and selecting, as far as possible, some commanding eminence as a stand. Having gained their positions, a small party rode towards the animals, and with wonderful dexterity the huntsmen preserved their seats, and the horses their footing, as they ran at full speed over the hills, down the steep ravines, and along the borders of the precipices. They were soon outstripped by the antelopes, which, on gaining the other extremity of the circle, were driven back and pursued by the fresh hunters. They turned and flew, rather than ran, in another direction; but there, too, they found new enemies. In this way they were alternately pursued backward and forward, till at length, notwithstanding the skill of the hunters, they all escaped; and the party, after running for two hours, returned without having caught anything, and their horses foaming with sweat. This chase, the greater part of which was seen from the camp, formed a beautiful scene; but to the hunters it is exceedingly laborious, and so unproductive, even when they are able to worry the animal down and shoot him, that forty or fifty hunters will sometimes be engaged for half a day without obtaining more than two or three antelope.

"Soon after they returned our two huntsmen came in with no better success. Captain Lewis therefore made a little paste with the flour, and the addition of some berries formed a very palatable repast. Having now secured the good-will of Cameahwait, he informed him of his wish that he would speak to the warriors, and endeavour to engage them to accompany him to the forks of Jefferson River, where by this time another chief, with a large party of white men, were waiting his return: that it would be necessary to take about thirty horses to transport the merchandise; that they should

be well rewarded for their trouble ; and that, when all the party should have reached the Shoshonee camp, they would remain for some time among them, and trade for horses, as well as concert plans for furnishing them in future with regular supplies of merchandise. He readily consented to do so, and, after collecting the tribe together, he made a long harangue, and in about an hour and a half returned, and told Captain Lewis that they would be ready to accompany him in the morning."

The navigation of the river was becoming more and more difficult ; but, by great efforts, Captain Clarke and his party were enabled to ascend it this day fourteen miles, or within half a mile, in a direct line, of Rattlesnake Cliff.

"August 15. Captain Lewis rose early, and, having eaten nothing yesterday except his scanty meal of flour and berries, felt sore inconvenience from hunger. On inquiry, he found that his whole stock of provisions consisted of but two pounds of flour. This he ordered to be divided into two equal parts, and one half of it to be boiled with the berries into a sort of pudding : after presenting a large share to the chief, he and his three men breakfasted on the remainder. Cameahwait was delighted with this new dish. He took a little of the flour in his hand, tasted, and examined it very narrowly, and asked if it was made of roots. Captain Lewis explained the process of preparing it, and he said it was the best thing he had eaten for a long time.

"This being finished, Captain Lewis now endeavoured to hasten the departure of the Indians, who still hesitated, and seemed reluctant to move, although the chief addressed them twice for the purpose of urging them. On inquiring the reason, Cameahwait told him that some foolish person had suggested that he was in league with their enemies, the Pahkees, and had come only to draw them into an ambuscade, but that he himself did not believe it.

Captain Lewis felt uneasy at this insinuation: he knew the suspicious temper of the Indians, accustomed from their infancy to regard every stranger as an enemy; and saw that, if this suggestion were not instantly checked, it might effect a total failure of the enterprise. Assuming, therefore, a serious air, he told the chief that he was sorry to find they placed so little confidence in him; but that he pardoned their suspicions, because they were ignorant of the character of white men, among whom it was disgraceful to lie, or entrap even an enemy by falsehood; that if they continued to think thus meanly of us, they might be assured no white men would ever come to supply them with arms and merchandise; that there was at this moment a party of white men waiting to trade with them at the forks of the river; and that, if the greater part of the tribe entertained suspicion, he hoped there were still among them some who were men, who would go and see with their own eyes the truth of what he had said, and who, even if there were danger, were not afraid to die. To doubt the courage of an Indian is to touch the tenderest string of his mind, and the surest way to rouse him to any hazardous achievement. Cameahwait instantly replied that he was not afraid to die; and, mounting his horse, for the third time harangued his warriors. He told them that he was resolved to go, if he went alone, or if he were sure of perishing; that he hoped there were among those who heard him some others who were not afraid to die, and who would prove it by mounting their horses and following him. This address produced an effect on six or eight only of the warriors, who now joined their chief. With these Captain Lewis smoked a pipe, and then, fearful of some change in their capricious temper, set out immediately.

“It was about twelve o'clock when his small party left the camp, attended by Cameahwait and the

eight warriors. Their departure seemed to spread a gloom over the village: those who would not venture to go were sullen and melancholy, and the women were crying, and imploring the Great Spirit to protect their warriors, as if they were proceeding to certain destruction. Yet such is the wavering inconstancy of these savages, that Captain Lewis, with his party, had not gone far before they were joined by ten or twelve more warriors; and, before reaching the creek which they had passed on the morning of the 13th, all the men of the nation and a number of women had overtaken them, and had changed from the surly, ill temper in which they were two hours previously, to the greatest cheerfulness and gayety. When they arrived at the spring on the side of the mountain where the party had encamped on the 12th, the chief insisted on halting to let the horses graze, to which Captain Lewis assented, and smoked with them. They are excessively fond of the pipe, in which, however, they are not able to indulge much, as they do not cultivate tobacco themselves, and their rugged country affords them but few articles to exchange for it. Here they remained for about an hour, and on setting out, by engaging to pay four of the party, Captain Lewis obtained permission for himself and each of his men to ride behind an Indian; but he soon found riding without stirrups more tiresome than walking, and therefore dismounted, making the Indian carry his pack. About sunset they reached the upper part of the level valley in a cove through which he had passed, and which they now called Shoshonee Cove. The grass having been burned on the north side of the river, they crossed over to the south, and encamped about four miles above the narrow pass between the hills, noticed as they traversed the place before. The river was here about six yards wide, and frequently dammed up by the beaver. Drewyer had been sent forward to hunt, but he returned in

the evening unsuccessful; and their only supper, therefore, was the remaining pound of flour, stirred in a little boiling water, and then divided between the four white men and two of the Indians."

In order not to exhaust the strength of the men, who were greatly prostrated by the severity of their labours, Captain Clarke did not set out this day till after breakfast. The men, as before, were obliged to be constantly in the water, the increasing coldness of which, as they approached the sources of the stream, greatly aggravated their sufferings. Rattlesnakes were very common, and they were in continual danger of being bitten by them. They advanced thirteen miles, and encamped on some low ground, covered with clover and a few cottonwood-trees.

"August 16. As neither our party nor the Indians had anything to eat, Captain Lewis sent two of his hunters ahead this morning to procure some provision; at the same time requesting Cameahwait to prevent his young men from going out, lest by their noise they might alarm the game. But this measure immediately revived their suspicions. It now began to be believed that these men were sent forward in order to apprise the enemy of their coming; and, as Captain Lewis was fearful of exciting any farther uneasiness, he made no objection on seeing a small party of Indians advance on each side of the valley under the pretence of hunting, but in reality to watch the movements of our two men. Even this precaution, however, did not quiet the alarm of the Indians, a considerable part of whom returned home, leaving only twenty-eight men and three women. -

"After the hunters had been gone about an hour, Captain Lewis again mounted with one of the Indians behind him, and the whole party set out; but, just as they passed through the narrows, they saw one of the spies coming back at full speed across the plain. The chief stopped and seemed uneasy; the

whole band were moved with fresh suspicions, and Captain Lewis himself was much disconcerted, lest by some unfortunate accident some of their enemies might perhaps have straggled that way. The young Indian had scarcely breath to say a few words as he came up, when the whole troop dashed forward as fast as their horses could carry them; and Captain Lewis, astonished at this movement, was borne along for nearly a mile before he learned, with great satisfaction, that it was all caused by the spy's having come to announce that one of the white men had killed a deer. Relieved from his anxiety, he now found the jolting very uncomfortable; for the Indian behind him being afraid of not getting his share of the feast, had lashed the horse at every step since they set off; he therefore reined him in, and ordered the Indian to stop beating him. The fellow had no idea of losing time in disputing the point, and, jumping off the horse, ran for a mile at full speed.

"Captain Lewis now slackened his pace, and followed at a sufficient distance to observe them. When they reached the place where Drewyer had thrown out the intestines, they all dismounted in confusion, and ran tumbling over each other like famished dogs. Each tore away whatever part he could, and instantly began to eat it: some had the liver, some the kidneys, and, in short, no part on which we are accustomed to look with disgust escaped them. One of them, who had seized about nine feet of the entrails, was chewing at one end, while with his hand he was diligently clearing his way by discharging the contents at the other. It was, indeed, impossible to see these wretches ravenously feeding on the filth of animals, and the blood streaming from their mouths, without deploring how nearly the condition of savages approaches that of the brute creation: yet, though suffering with hunger, they did not attempt, as they might have done, to take by force the whole deer, but contented them-

selves with what had been thrown away by the hunter. Captain Lewis had the deer skinned, and, after reserving a quarter of it, gave the rest of the animal to the chief, to be divided among the Indians, who immediately devoured near the whole of it without cooking. They now went forward towards the creek, where there was some brushwood to make a fire, and found Drewyer, who had killed a second deer: the same struggle for the entrails was renewed here; and, on giving nearly the whole animal to the Indians, they devoured it even to the soft part of the hoofs. A fire being made, Captain Lewis had his breakfast, during which Drewyer brought in a third deer. This, too, after reserving one quarter, was given to the Indians, who now seemed completely satisfied, and in good humour. At this place they remained about two hours, to let the horses graze, then continued their journey, and towards evening reached the lower part of the cove, having on the way shot an antelope, the greater part of which was given to the Indians.

"As they were now approaching the place where they had been told by Captain Lewis they would see the white men, the chief insisted on halting. They therefore all dismounted, and Cameahwait, with great ceremony, and as if for ornament, put tippets or skins round the necks of our party, similar to those worn by themselves. As this was obviously intended to disguise the persons of their white friends, Captain Lewis, in order to inspire them with more confidence, put his cocked hat and feather on the head of the chief; and, as his own over-shirt was in the Indian form, and his skin browned by the sun, he could not have been distinguished from an Indian: the men followed his example, and the change seemed to be very agreeable to the Indians.

"In order to guard, however, against any disappointment, Captain Lewis again explained the possibility of the white men not having reached the forks,

in consequence of the difficulty of the navigation; so that, if they should not find them at that spot, they might be assured of their not being far below. They again all mounted their horses, and rode on rapidly, making one of the Indians carry their flag, so that Captain Clarke and his party might recognise them as they approached; but, to the mortification and disappointment of both parties, on coming within two miles of the forks no canoes were to be seen. Uneasy lest at this moment he should be abandoned, and all his hopes of obtaining aid from the Indians destroyed, Captain Lewis gave the chief his gun, telling him that, if the enemies of his nation were in the bushes, he might defend himself with it; that for his own part he was not afraid to die, and that the chief might shoot him as soon as they discovered themselves betrayed. The other three men at the same time gave their guns to the Indians, who now seemed more easy, but still wavered in their resolution.

“As they went on towards the point, Captain Lewis, perceiving how critical his situation had become, resolved to attempt a stratagem, which his present difficulty seemed completely to justify. Recollecting the notes he had left at the point for us, he sent Drewyer for them with an Indian, who witnessed his taking them from the pole. When they were brought, Captain Lewis told Cameahwait that, on leaving his brother chief at the place where the river issues from the mountains, it was agreed that the boats should not be brought higher than the next forks we should meet; but that, if the rapid water prevented the boats from coming on as fast as they expected, his brother chief was to send a note to the first forks above him, to let him know where they were: that this note had been left this morning at the forks, and mentioned that the canoes were just below the mountains, and coming up slowly in consequence of the current. Captain Lewis added

that he would stay at the forks for his brother chief, but would send a man down the river ; and that if Cameahwait doubted what he said, one of, their young men could go with him, while he and the other two remained at the forks. This story satisfied the chief and the greater part of the Indians ; but a few did not conceal their suspicions, observing that we told different stories, and complaining that their chief exposed them to danger by a mistaken confidence. Captain Lewis now wrote, by the light of some willow-brush, a note to Captain Clarke, which he gave to Drewyer, with an order to use all possible expedition in descending the river, and engaged an Indian to accompany him by the promise of a knife and some beads.

“ At bedtime the chief and five others slept round the fire of Captain Lewis, and the rest hid themselves in different parts of the willow-brush, to avoid the enemy, who, they feared, would attack them in the night. Captain Lewis endeavoured to assume a cheerfulness he did not feel, to prevent despondency in the savages ; and, after conversing gayly with them, he retired to his moscheto bier, by the side of which the chief now placed himself. He lay down, yet slept but little, being, in fact, scarcely less uneasy than his Indian companions. He was apprehensive that, finding the ascent of the river impracticable, Captain Clarke might have stopped below the Rattlesnake Cliff, and that the messenger would not meet him. The consequence of disappointing the Indians at this moment would most probably be, that they would retire, and secrete themselves in the mountains so as to prevent our having an opportunity of recovering their confidence. They would also spread a panic among all the neighbouring Indians, and thus cut us off from a supply of horses, so necessary, and almost indispensable, to our success. But he was, at the same time, consoled by remembering that his hopes of assistance

rested on better foundations than their generosity—on their avarice and their curiosity. He had promised liberal exchanges for their horses; but, what was still more seductive, he had told them that one of their countrywomen, who had been taken by the Minnetarees, accompanied the party below; and one of the men had spread the report of our having with us a man perfectly black, whose hair was short and curled. This last account had excited a great degree of curiosity, and they seemed more desirous of seeing this monster than of obtaining the most favourable barter for their horses."

The principal party had resumed their voyage immediately after breakfast, and towards the close of the day, after having advanced eleven and a half miles, Captain Clarke ascended an eminence, from which he discerned the fork of the river, and sent the hunters to examine it. "They must have left it," says the Journal, "only a short time before Captain Lewis's arrival, but, fortunately, had not seen the note which enabled him to induce the Indians to stay with him. From the top of this eminence he could discover only three trees through the whole country; nor was there, along the sides of the cliffs they had passed in the course of the day, any timber except a few small pines: the low grounds were supplied with willow, currant-bushes, and service-berries. After advancing half a mile farther, we came to the lower point of an island near the middle of the river, and about the centre of the valley. Here we halted for the night, only four miles by land, though ten by water, below where Captain Lewis lay. Although we had made only fourteen miles, the labours of the men had fatigued and exhausted them very much: we therefore collected some small willow-brush for a fire, and lay down to sleep."

CHAPTER XV.

Affecting Interview between the Wife of Chaboneau and the Chief of the Shoshonees.—Council held with that Nation, and favourable Result.—The extreme navigable Point of the Missouri.—General Character of the River and of the Country through which it passes.—Captain Clarke, in exploring the Source of the Columbia, falls in with another Party of Shoshonees.—Geographical Information acquired from one of that Party.—Their Manner of catching Fish.—The Party reach Lewis River.—Difficulties which Captain Clarke had to encounter in his Route.—Friendship and Hospitality of the Shoshonees.—The Party with Captain Lewis employed in making Saddles, and preparing for the Journey.

“ AUGUST 17. Captain Lewis rose very early, and despatched Drewyer and the Indian down the river in quest of the boats. Shields was sent out at the same time to hunt, while M'Neal prepared a breakfast out of the remainder of the meat. Drewyer had been gone about two hours, and the Indians were all anxiously waiting for some news, when an Indian, who had straggled a short distance down the river, returned with a report that he had seen the white men, who were only a short distance below, and were coming on. The Indians were all transported with joy; and the chief, in the warmth of his satisfaction, renewed his embraces of Captain Lewis, who was quite as much delighted as the Indians themselves. The report proved most agreeably true. On setting out at seven o'clock, Captain Clarke, with Chaboneau and his wife, walked on shore; but they had not gone more than a mile before Captain Clarke saw Sacajawea, who was with her husband one hundred yards ahead, begin to dance, and show every mark of the most extravagant joy, turning round, and pointing to several In-

dians whom she now saw advancing on horseback, sucking her fingers at the same time, to indicate that they were of her native tribe. As they drew nearer, Captain Clarke discovered among them Drewyer dressed like an Indian, and from him learned the situation of the party. While the boats were making the circuit, he proceeded towards the fork with the Indians, who, as they went along, sang aloud with the greatest appearance of delight. We soon drew near to the camp, and, just as we approached it, a woman made her way through the crowd towards Sacajawea, and, recognising each other, they embraced with the most tender affection. The meeting of these two young women had in it something peculiarly touching, not only in the ardent manner in which their feelings were expressed, but from the real interest of their relation to each other. They had been companions in childhood: in the war with the Minnetarees they had both been taken prisoners in the same battle; and they had shared together and softened by mutual affection the rigours of captivity, till one of them had escaped from their enemies with scarce a hope of ever seeing her friend rescued from their hands.

"While Sacajawea was renewing among the women the friendships of former days, Captain Clarke went on, and was received by Captain Lewis and the chief, who, after the first embraces and salutations were over, conducted him to a sort of circular tent or shade of willows. Here he was seated on a white robe; and the chief immediately tied in his hair six small shells resembling pearls, an ornament highly valued by these people, who procure them in the course of trade from the seacoast. The moccasins of the whole party were then taken off, and, after much ceremony, the smoking began. After this the conference was to be opened; and, glad of an opportunity of being able to converse more intelligibly, Sacajawea was sent for: she came into

the tent, sat down, and was beginning to interpret, when in the person of Cameahwait she recognised her brother. She instantly jumped up, and ran and embraced him, throwing over him her blanket, and weeping profusely: the chief was himself moved, though not in the same degree. After some conversation between them she resumed her seat, and attempted to interpret for us; but her new situation seemed to overpower her, and she was frequently interrupted by her tears. After the council was finished, the unfortunate woman learned that all her family were dead except two brothers, one of whom was absent, and a son of her eldest sister, a small boy, who was immediately adopted by her.

"The canoes arriving soon after, we encamped in a meadow on the left side, a little below the fork, took out our baggage, and by means of our sails and willow poles, formed a camp for our Indian visitors. About four o'clock the chiefs and warriors were collected, and, after the customary ceremony of taking off the moccasins and smoking the pipe, we explained to them, in a long harangue, the purposes of our visit; making themselves one conspicuous object of the good wishes of our government, on whose strength, as well as its friendly disposition, we expatiated. We told them of their dependance on the will of our government for all future supplies of whatever was necessary either for their comfort or defence; that, as we were sent to discover the best route by which merchandise could be conveyed to them, and no trade would be begun before our return, it was mutually advantageous that we should proceed with as little delay as possible; that we were under the necessity of requesting them to furnish us with horses to transport our baggage across the mountains, and a guide to show us the route, but that they should be amply remunerated for their horses, as well as for every other service they should render us. In the mean time, our first wish

was, that they should immediately collect as many horses as were necessary to transport our baggage to their village, where at our leisure we would trade with them for as many horses as they could spare.

"The speech made a favourable impression: the chief, in reply, thanked us for our expressions of friendship towards himself and his nation, and declared their willingness to render us every service. He lamented that it would be so long before they should be supplied with firearms, but that till then they could subsist as they had heretofore done. He concluded by saying that there were not horses here sufficient to transport our goods, but that he would return to the village to-morrow, and bring all his own horses, and encourage his people to come over with theirs. The conference being ended to their satisfaction, we now inquired of Cameahwait what chiefs were among the party, and he pointed out two of them. We then distributed our presents. To Cameahwait we gave a medal of the small size, with the likeness of President Jefferson, and on the reverse a figure of hands clasped with a pipe and tomahawk: to this was added a uniform coat, a shirt, a pair of scarlet leggins, a carrot of tobacco, and some small articles. Each of the other chiefs received a small medal struck during the presidency of General Washington, a shirt, handkerchief, leggins, a knife, and some tobacco. Medals of the same sort were also presented to the young warriors, who, though not chiefs, were promising youths, and very much respected in the tribe. These honorary gifts were followed by presents of paint, moccasins, awls, knives, beads, and looking-glasses. We also gave them all a plentiful meal of Indian corn, of which the hull is taken off by being boiled in ley; and, as this was the first they had ever tasted, they were very much pleased with it. They had, indeed, abundant sources of surprise in all they saw: the appearance of the men, their arms, their clothing,

the canoes, the strange looks of the negro, and the sagacity of our dog, all in turn shared their admiration, which was raised to astonishment by a shot from the air-gun. This operation was instantly considered as a *great medicine*, by which they, as well as the other Indians, mean something emanating directly from the Great Spirit, or produced by his invisible and incomprehensible agency. The display of all these riches had been intermixed with inquiries into the geographical situation of their country; for we had learned by experience, that, to keep the savages in good temper, their attention should not be wearied with too much business, but that serious affairs should be enlivened by a mixture of what is new and entertaining. Our hunters brought in very seasonably four deer and an antelope, the last of which we gave to the Indians, who in a very short time devoured it.

"After the council was over we consulted as to our future operations. The game did not promise to last here for many days; and this circumstance combined with many others to induce our going on as soon as possible. Our Indian information as to the state of the Columbia was of a very alarming kind; and our first object was, of course, to ascertain the practicability of descending it, of which the Indians discouraged our expectations. It was therefore agreed that Captain Clarke should set off in the morning with eleven men, furnished, besides their arms, with tools for making canoes: that he should take Chaboneau and his wife to the camp of the Shoshonees, where he was to leave them, in order to hasten the collection of horses; that he should then lead his men down to the Columbia, and if he found it navigable, and the timber in sufficient quantity, begin to build canoes. As soon as he had decided as to the propriety of proceeding down the Columbia or across the mountains, he was to send back one of the men with information of it to Cap-

tain Lewis, who by that time would have brought up the whole party, and the rest of the baggage, as far as the Shoshonee village. Preparations were accordingly made this evening to carry out the arrangement.

"The sun is excessively hot in the daytime, but the nights are very cold, and rendered still more unpleasant from the want of any fuel except willow brush. The appearances, too, of game for many days' subsistence are not very favourable.

"August 18. In order to relieve the men of Captain Clarke's party of the heavy weight of their arms, provisions, and tools, we exposed a few articles to barter for horses, and soon obtained three very good ones, in exchange for which we gave a uniform coat, a pair of leggins, a few handkerchiefs, three knives, and some other small articles, the whole of which did not cost in the United States more than twenty dollars: a fourth was purchased by the men for an old checked shirt, a pair of old leggins, and a knife. The Indians seemed to be quite as well pleased as ourselves with the bargains they had made. We now found that the two inferior chiefs were somewhat displeased at not having received a present equal to that given to the great chief, who appeared in a dress so much finer than their own. To allay their discontent, we bestowed on them two old coats, and promised them that, if they were active in assisting us across the mountains, they should have an additional present. This treatment completely reconciled them; and the whole Indian party, except two men and two women, set out in perfectly good humour to return home with Captain Clarke. After going fifteen miles through a wide level valley, with no wood but willows and shrubs, he encamped in the Shoshonee Cove near a narrow pass where the highlands approach within two hundred yards of each other, and the river is only ten yards wide. The Indians went

on farther, except the three chiefs and two young men, who assisted in eating two deer brought in by the hunters. After their departure everything was prepared for the transportation of the baggage, which was now exposed to the air and dried. Our game was one deer and a beaver; and we saw an abundance of trout in the river, for which we fixed a net in the evening.

"We had now reached the extreme navigable point of the Missouri, which our observations place in latitude $43^{\circ} 30' 43''$ north. It is difficult to comprise, in any general description, the characteristics of a river so extensive, and fed by so many streams, which have their sources in a great variety of soils and climates. But the Missouri is still sufficiently powerful to give to all its waters something of a common character, which is, of course, decided by the nature of the country through which it passes. The bed of the river is chiefly composed of a blue mud, from which the water itself derives a deep tinge. From its junction here to near where it leaves the mountains, its course is embarrassed by rapids and rocks, which the hills on each side have thrown into its channel. Below that point its current, with the exception of the falls, is not difficult of navigation, nor is there much variation in its appearance to the mouth of the Platte. That powerful river throws out vast quantities of coarse sand, which contributes to give a new face to the Missouri, which is now much more obstructed by islands. The sand, as it is drifted down, adheres to some of the projecting points from the shore, and forms a barrier to the mud, which at length accumulates to the same height with the sand-bar itself. As soon as it has acquired some consistency, the willow grows there the first year, and assists in giving solidity to the mass; and, when the mud and sand farther accumulate, the cottonwood-tree next appears, till the gradual elevation of the soil raises the sur-

face above the highest freshets. Thus stopped in its course, the water seeks a passage elsewhere, and, as the soil on either side is light and yielding, what was only a peninsula becomes gradually an island, and the river indemnifies itself for the usurpation by encroaching on the adjacent shore. In this way the Missouri, like the Mississippi, is constantly cutting off the projections of the shore, and leaving its ancient channel, which is then marked by the mud it has deposited and a few stagnant ponds.

"The general appearance of the country, as it presents itself in ascending, may be thus described: from its mouth to the two Charletons a ridge of highlands borders the river at a small distance, leaving between them fine rich meadows: from the mouth of the two Charletons the hills recede, giving greater extent to the low grounds; but they again approach the river for a short distance near Grand River, and afterward at Snake Creek: from that point they retire, nor do they again come to the neighbourhood of the Missouri till above the Sauk Prairie, where they are comparatively low and small: thence they diverge and reappear at the Charaton Scarty, after which they are scarcely, if at all, discernible till they again advance to the river nearly opposite to the Kansas.

"The same ridge of hills extends on the south side in almost one unbroken chain, from the mouth of the Missouri to the Kansas, though decreasing in height beyond the Osage. As they are nearer the river than the hills on the opposite side, the intermediate low grounds are of course narrower, but the general character of the soil is similar on both sides.

"In the meadows and along the shore, the tree most common is the cottonwood, which, with the willow, forms almost the exclusive growth of the Missouri. The hills, or, rather, high grounds (for they do not rise higher than from one hundred and

fifty to two hundred feet), are composed of a good black soil, which is perfectly susceptible of cultivation, though it becomes richer on the hills beyond the Platte, and they are in general thinly covered with timber. Beyond these hills the country extends into high, open plains, which are on both sides sufficiently fertile ; but the south has the advantage of better streams of water, and may therefore be considered as preferable for settlements. The lands, however, become much better, and the timber more abundant, between the Osage and the Kansas. From the Kansas to the Nodawa the hills continue at nearly an equal distance, varying from four to eight miles from each other, except that from the Little Platte to nearly opposite the ancient Kansas village they are more remote, and the meadows of course wider, especially on the north side of the river. From the Nodawa the northern hills disappear, except at occasional intervals, where they are seen at a distance, till they return about twenty-seven miles above the Platte, near the ancient village of the Ayoways. On the south the hills continue close to the river, from the ancient village of the Kansas up to Council Bluffs, fifty miles beyond the Platte, forming high prairie lands. On both sides the lands are good ; and perhaps this distance, from the Osage to the Platte, may be recommended as among the best districts on the Missouri for the purposes of settlers.

“ From the Ayoway village, the northern hills again retire from the river, to which they do not return till three hundred and twenty miles above, at Floyd’s River. The hills on the south, also, leave the river at Council Bluffs, and reappear at the Mahar village, two hundred miles farther up. The country thus abandoned by the hills is more open, and the timber in smaller quantities than below the Platte ; so that, although the plain is rich, and covered with high grass, the want of wood renders it less calculated for cultivation than below that river.

"The northern hills, after running near the Missouri for a few miles at Floyd's River, recede from it at the Sioux River, the course of which they follow; and though they again appear on the Missouri at Whitestone River, where they are low, yet they do not return to it till beyond James's River. The high lands on the south, after running near the river at the Mahar villages, again disappear, and do not approach it till coming to the Cobalt Bluffs, about forty-four miles from these villages; and then, from those bluffs to the Yellowstone, a distance of about one thousand miles, they follow the banks of the river with scarcely any deviation.

"From James's River, the lower grounds are confined within a narrow space by the hills on both sides, which now continue near each other up to the mountains. The space between them, however, varies from one to three miles, as high as the Muscleshell River, beyond which the hills approach so close as to leave scarcely any low grounds on the Missouri, and near the falls reach the water's edge. Beyond the falls, the hills are scattered and low to the first range of mountains.

"The soil along the whole length of the Missouri below the Platte is, generally speaking, very fine; and, though timber is scarce, there is still sufficient for the purposes of settlers. But beyond that river, although the soil is still rich, yet the almost total absence of timber, and particularly the want of good water, there being but a small supply of water in the creeks, and even that brackish, oppose powerful obstacles to its settlement. The difficulty becomes still greater between the Muscleshell River and the falls, where, besides the increased scarcity of timber, the country itself is less fertile.

"The elevation of these high lands varies as they pass through this extensive tract of country. From Wood River they are about one hundred and fifty feet above the water, and remain at that height till

they rise near the Osage, from which place to the ancient fortification they again diminish in size. Thence they continue higher till they reach the Mandan village, after which they are rather lower to the neighbourhood of Muscleshell River, where they are met by the northern hills, which have advanced at a more uniform height, varying from one hundred and fifty to two hundred or three hundred feet. From this point to the mountains the height of both is nearly the same, from three hundred to five hundred feet; and the low grounds are so narrow, that the traveller seems passing through a range of high country. From Maria's River to the falls, the hills descend to the height of about two or three hundred feet.

"August 19. The morning was cold, and the grass perfectly whitened by the frost. We were engaged in preparing packs and saddles to load the horses as soon as they should arrive. A beaver was taken in a trap, but we were disappointed in trying to catch trout in our net. We therefore made a seine of willow brush, and in hauling it procured a number of fine trout, and a species of mullet which we had not seen before. It is about sixteen inches long, the scales small; the nose long, obtusely pointed, and exceeding the under jaw; the mouth opens with folds at the sides; it has no teeth, and the tongue and palate are smooth. The colour of its back and sides is a bluish brown, while the belly is white: it has the saggot bones, whence we concluded it to be of the mullet species. It is by no means so good a fish as the trout, which are here the same as those we first saw at the falls, larger than the speckled trout of the mountains in the Atlantic States, and equally well flavoured. In the evening the hunters returned with two deer.

"Captain Clarke in the mean time proceeded through a wide level valley, in which the chief pointed out a spot where many of his tribe were killed in

battle a year ago. The Indians accompanied him during the day, and as they had nothing to eat, he was obliged to feed them from his own stores, the hunters not being able to kill anything. Just as he was entering the mountains, he met an Indian with two mules and a Spanish saddle, who was so polite as to offer one of them to him to ride over the hills. Being on foot, Captain Clarke accepted his offer, and gave him a waistcoat as a reward for his civility. He encamped for the night on a small stream, and the next morning,

"August 20, he set out at six o'clock. In passing through a continuation of the broken, hilly country, he met several parties of Indians. On coming near the camp, which had been removed, since we left it, two miles higher up the river, Cameahwait requested that the party should halt. This was complied with; when a number of Indians came out from the camp, and with great ceremony several pipes were smoked. This being over, Captain Clarke was conducted to a large leathern lodge, prepared for his party in the middle of the encampment, the Indians having only shelters of willow bushes. A few dried berries and one salmon, the only food the whole village could contribute, were then presented to him; after which he proceeded to repeat in council, what had been already told them, the purposes of his visit; urged them to take their horses over and assist in transporting our baggage, and expressed a wish to obtain a guide to examine the river. This was explained and enforced to the whole village by Cameahwait; and an old man was pointed out, who was said to know more of the geography of the country to the north than any other person, and whom Captain Clarke engaged to accompany him. After explaining his views he distributed a few presents, the council was ended, and nearly half the village set out to hunt the antelope, but returned without success.

“ Captain Clarke, in the mean time, made particular inquiries as to the situation of the country, and the possibility of soon reaching a navigable stream. The chief began by drawing on the ground a delineation of the rivers, from which it appeared that his information was very limited. The river on which the camp is, he divided into two branches just above us, which, as he indicated by the opening in the mountains, were in view. He next made it discharge itself into a larger river ten miles below, coming from the southwest; the joint stream continuing one day's march to the northwest, and then inclining to the westward two days' march farther. At that point he placed several heaps of sand on each side, which, as he explained it, represented vast mountains of rock always covered with snow; in passing through which the river was so completely hemmed in by the high cliffs that there was no possibility of travelling along the shore; that the bed of the river was obstructed by sharp pointed rocks, and its rapidity such that, as far as the eye could reach, it presented a perfect column of foam. The mountains, he said, were equally inaccessible, as neither man nor horse could cross them; and, such being the state of the country, neither he nor any of his nation had ever attempted to go beyond these mountains. Cameahwait also said that he had been informed by the Chopunnish, or Pierced-Nose Indians, who reside on this river west of the mountains, that it ran a great way towards the setting sun, and at length lost itself in a great lake of water, which was ill tasted, and where the white men lived.

“ An Indian belonging to a band of Shoshonees who live to the southwest, and who happened to be at the camp, was then brought in, and inquiries were made of him as to the character of the country in that direction: he described it in terms scarcely less terrible than those in which Cameahwait had represented the west. He said that his relations lived at

the distance of twenty days' march from this place, on a course a little to the west of south, and not far from the whites, with whom they traded for horses, mules, cloth, metal, beads, and the shells here worn as ornaments, which are those of a species of pearl oyster. In order to reach his country, we should be obliged, during the first seven days, to climb over steep, rocky mountains, where there was no game, and where we should find nothing but roots for subsistence; and even for these we should be obliged to contend with a fierce, warlike people, whom he called the Broken-Moccasin, or Moccasin-with-Holes, who lived like bears in holes, and fed on roots, and the flesh of such horses as they could steal or plunder from those who passed through the mountains. So rough, indeed, was the passage, that the feet of the horses would be wounded in such a manner that many of them would be unable to proceed. The next part of the route was for ten days through a dry, parched desert of sand, inhabited by no animal which would supply us with subsistence; and, as the sun had now scorched the grass and dried up the small pools, which are sometimes scattered through this desert in the spring, both ourselves and our horses would perish for want of food and water. About the middle of this plain a large river passed from southeast to northwest, which, though navigable, afforded neither timber nor salmon. Three or four days' march beyond this plain his relations lived, in a country tolerably fertile, and partially covered with timber, on another large river running in the same direction as the former. This last discharged itself into a third large river, on which resided many powerful nations, with which his own were at war; but whether it emptied itself into the great or stinking lake, as they call the ocean, he did not know. He said that from his country to the stinking lake it was a great distance; and that the route to it, taken by such of his relations as had

visited it, was up the river on which they lived, and over to that on which the white people lived, and which they knew discharged itself into this lake. This route he advised us to take ; but added that we had better defer the journey till spring, when he would himself conduct us. This account persuaded us that the streams of which he spoke were southern branches of the Columbia, heading with the Rio des Apostolos and Rio Colorado, and that the route which he mentioned was to the Gulf of California. Captain Clarke therefore told him that this road was too much towards the south for our purpose ; and then requested to know if there was no route on the left of the river where we now are, by which we might intercept it below the mountains ; but he knew of none except that through the barren plains, which, he said, joined the mountains on that side, and through which it was impossible to pass at this season, even if we were fortunate enough to escape the Broken-Moccasin Indians.

“ Captain Clarke recompensed the Indian by presenting him a knife, with which he seemed much gratified, and now inquired of Cameahwait by what route the Pierced-Nose Indians, who, he said, lived west of the mountains, crossed over to the Missouri. This, he replied, was towards the north, but that the road was a very bad one ; that during the passage, he had been told, they suffered excessively from hunger, being obliged to subsist for many days on berries alone, there being no game in that part of the mountains, which were broken and rocky, and so thickly covered with timber that they could scarcely pass.

“ Surrounded by difficulties as all the other routes were, this seemed to be the most practicable of all the passages by land ; since, if the Indians can pass the mountains with their women and children, no difficulties which they could overcome would be formidable to us ; and if the tribes below the mount-

ains were as numerous as they were represented to be, they must have some means of subsistence equally within our power. They had told us, indeed, that the nations to the westward subsisted principally on fish and roots, and that their only game were a few elk, deer, and antelope, there being no buffalo west of the mountain.

"The first object, however, was to ascertain the truth of their information relative to the difficulty of descending the river; and for this purpose Captain Clarke set out at three o'clock in the afternoon, accompanied by the guide and all his men except one, whom he left with orders to purchase a horse and join him as soon as possible. At the distance of four miles he crossed the river, and eight miles from the camp halted for the night at a small stream. The road which he followed was a beaten path through a wide, rich meadow, in which were several old lodges. On the route he met a number of men, women, and children, as well as horses; one of the men, who appeared to possess some consideration, turned back with him, and, observing a woman with three salmon, obtained them from her and presented them to the party. Captain Clarke shot a mountain cock, or cock of the plains, a dark brown bird larger than the common fowl, with a long pointed tail, and a fleshy protuberance about the base of the upper chop, something like that of the turkey, though without the snout. In the morning,

"August 21, he resumed his march early, and at the distance of five miles reached an Indian lodge of brush, inhabited by seven families of Shoshonees. They behaved with great civility, gave the whole party as much boiled salmon as they could eat, and added as a present several dried salmon, and a considerable quantity of chokecherries. After smoking with them all, he visited the fish-weir, which was about two hundred yards distant.

The river was here divided by three small islands,

which caused the water to pass along four channels. Of these, three were narrow, and stopped by means of trees, which were stretched across, and supported by willow stakes, sufficiently near each other to prevent the passage of the fish. About the centre of each channel was placed a basket formed of willows, eighteen or twenty feet in length, of a cylindrical form, and terminating in a conic shape at its lower extremity: this was situated with its mouth upward, opposite to an aperture in the wear. The main channel of the water was then conducted to this wear, and, as the fish entered it, they became so entangled with each other that they could not move, and were taken out by untying the small end of the willow basket. The wear in the main channel was formed in a manner somewhat different: there were, in fact, two distinct wears, formed of poles and willow sticks quite across the river, approaching each other obliquely, with an aperture in each side near the angle. It was made by tying a number of poles together at the top, in parcels of three, which were then set up in a triangular form at the base, two of the poles being in the range desired for the wear, and the third down the stream. To these poles two ranges of other poles were next lashed horizontally, with willow bark and withes, and willow sticks joined in with these crosswise, so as to form a kind of wicker-work from the bottom of the river to the height of three or four feet above the surface of the water. This was so close as to prevent the fish from passing; and even in some parts, with the help of a little gravel and some stone, enabled them to give any direction they wished to the water. These two wears, being placed near to each other, one for the purpose of catching the fish as they ascended, the other as they went down the river, were provided with two baskets, made in the form already described, and which were placed at the apertures of the wear.

“After examining these curious objects, he return-

ed to the lodges, and soon passed the river to the left, where an Indian brought him a tomahawk, which he said he had found in the grass, near the lodge where Captain Lewis had stayed during his first visit to the village. This was a tomahawk which had been missed at the time, and was supposed to be stolen: it was, however, the only article which had been lost in our intercourse with the nation; and as even that was returned, the inference is highly honourable to the integrity of the Shoshonees.

"On leaving the lodges, Captain Clarke crossed to the left side of the river, and despatched five men to the forks of it, in search of the man left behind yesterday, who had procured a horse and proceeded thither by another road, as they were informed. At the distance of fourteen miles they caught a very large salmon, two and a half feet long, in a creek six miles below the forks; and, after travelling about twenty miles through the valley, following the course of the river, which runs nearly northwest, they halted in a small meadow on the right side, under a cliff of rocks. Here they were joined by the five men who had gone in quest of Crusattê. They had been to the forks of the river, where the natives resort in great numbers for the purpose of fishing, and who made our men a present of five fresh salmon. In addition to this, one deer was killed to-day. The western branch is much larger than the eastern; and, after we passed the junction, we found the river about one hundred yards in width, rapid and shoaly, but with only a small quantity of timber on its banks. As Captain Lewis was the first white man who had visited its waters, Captain Clarke gave it the name of Lewis's River. The low grounds through which he had passed to-day were rich and wide, but where he encamped in the evening the hills began to assume a formidable aspect." * * *

"August 22. He soon began to perceive that the

Indian accounts were not exaggerated. At the distance of a mile he passed a small creek, and the points of four mountains, which were rocky, and so high that it seemed almost impossible to cross them with horses. The road lay over the sharp fragments of rocks which had fallen from the mountains, and which were strewed in heaps for miles together; yet the horses, although unshod, travelled across them as fast as the men, and without detaining them a moment. They passed two bold running streams, and reached the entrance of a small river, where a few Indian families resided. These had not been previously acquainted with the arrival of the whites; the guide was behind, and the wood so thick that we came upon them unobserved, till at a very short distance. As soon as they saw us, the women and children fled in great consternation; the men offered us everything they had—the fish on the scaffolds, the dried berries, and the collars of elk's tushes worn by the children. We took only a small quantity of the food, and gave them, in return, some small articles, which conduced very much to pacify them. The guide now coming up, explained to them who we were, and the object of our visit, which seemed to relieve their fears: still a number of the women and children did not recover from their fright, but cried during our stay, which lasted about an hour. The guide, whom we found a very friendly, intelligent old man, informed us that up this river there was a road which led over the mountains to the Missouri. On resuming his route, he went along the steep side of a mountain about three miles, and then reached the river near a small island, at the lower part of which we encamped: he here attempted to take some fish, but could obtain only one small salmon. The river was here shoal and rapid, with many rocks scattered in various directions along its bed. On the sides of the mountains were some scattered pines, and the tops of

those on the left were covered with them; there were, however, but few in the low grounds through which we passed; indeed, we only saw a single tree fit to make a canoe, and even that was small. The country has an abundant growth of berries, and we met several women and children gathering them, who bestowed them upon us with great liberality. Among the woods Captain Clarke observed a species of woodpecker, the beak and tail of which were white, the wings black, and every other part of the body of a dark brown: its size was that of the robin, and it fed on the seeds of the pine.

"August 23. Captain Clarke set off very early; but, as his route lay along the steep side of a mountain, over irregular and broken masses of rocks, which wounded the horses' feet, he was obliged to proceed slowly. At the distance of four miles he reached the river; but the rocks here became so steep, and projected so far into the stream, that there was no mode of passing except through the water. This he did for some distance, though the current was very rapid, and so deep that they were forced to swim their horses. After following the edge of the water for about a mile under this steep cliff, he reached a small meadow, below which the whole current of the river beat against the right shore on which he was, and which was formed of a solid rock, perfectly inaccessible to horses. Here, too, the little track which he had been pursuing terminated. He therefore resolved to leave the horses, and the greater part of the men at this place, and examine the river still farther, in order to determine if there were any possibility of descending it in canoes. Having killed nothing except a single goose to-day, and the whole of their provision being consumed last evening, it was by no means advisable to remain any length of time where they were. He now directed the men to fish and hunt at this place till his return; and then, with his guide and three

others, he proceeded, clambering over immense rocks and along the sides of lofty precipices which bordered the stream, until at about twelve miles' distance he reached a small meadow, the first he had seen on the river since he left his party. A little below this meadow, a large creek, twelve yards wide and of some depth, discharges itself from the north. Here were some recent signs of an Indian encampment, and the tracks of a number of horses, which must have come along a plain Indian path which he now saw following the course of the creek. This stream, his guide said, led towards a large river running to the north, and was frequented by another nation for the purpose of catching fish. He remained here two hours, and, having taken some small fish, made a dinner on them, with the addition of a few berries.

"From the place where he had left the party to the mouth of this creek, it presented one continued rapid, in which are five shoals, neither of which could be passed with loaded canoes; and the baggage must therefore be transported for a considerable distance over the steep mountains, where it would be impossible to employ horses for the relief of the men. Even the empty boats must be let down the rapids by means of cords, and not even in that way without great risk both to the canoes as well as to the men. At one of these shoals, indeed, the rocks rise so perpendicularly from the water as to leave no hope of a passage, or even a portage, without great labour in removing rocks, and in some instances cutting away the earth.

"To surmount these difficulties would exhaust the strength of the party, and, what was equally discouraging, would waste our time and consume our provisions, of neither of which had we much to spare. The season was now far advanced, and the Indians had told us we should shortly have snow. The salmon, too, had so far disappeared, that the na-

tives themselves were hastening from the country ; and not an animal of any kind larger than a pheasant or a squirrel, and of these a few only, would then be seen in this part of the mountains : after which we should be obliged to rely on our own stock of provisions, which would not support us more than ten days. These circumstances combine to render a passage by water impracticable in our present situation. To descend the course of the river on horseback was the other alternative, and scarcely a more inviting one. The river was so deep that there were only a few places where it could be forded, and the rocks approached so near the water as to render it impossible to make a route along its edge. In crossing the mountains themselves, we should have to encounter, besides their steepness, one barren surface of broken masses of rock, down which, in certain seasons, the torrents sweep vast quantities of stone into the river. These rocks are of a whitish brown, and towards the base of a gray colour, and so hard that, on striking them with steel, they yield a fire like flint. This sombre appearance was in some places scarcely relieved by a single tree, though near the river and on the creeks there was more timber, among which were some tall pine : several of these might be made into canoes, and, by lashing two of them together, one of tolerable size might be formed.

“ After dinner he continued his route, and at the distance of half a mile passed another creek, about five yards wide. Here his guide informed him that by ascending the creek for some distance he would have a better road, and cut off a considerable bend of the river towards the south. He therefore pursued a well-beaten Indian track up this creek for about six miles, when, leaving the creek to the right, he passed over a ridge, and, after walking a mile, again met the river, where it flows through a meadow of about eighty acres in extent. This they pass-

ed, and then ascended a high and steep peak of a mountain, from which the guide now pointed out where the river broke through the mountains, about twenty miles distant: near the base of the mountains a small river falls in from the south. This view was terminated by one of the loftiest mountains Captain Clarke had ever seen, which was perfectly covered with snow. Towards this formidable barrier the river went directly on; and there it was, as the guide observed, that the difficulties and dangers of which he and Cameahwait had spoken commenced. After reaching the mountain, he said, the river continued its course towards the north for many miles, between high perpendicular rocks which were scattered along its bed. It then penetrated the mountains through a narrow gap, on each side of which arose perpendicularly a rock as high as the top of the mountain before them; that the river then made a bend which concealed its future course from view; and as it was alike impossible to descend the river or clamber over that vast mountain, eternally covered with snow, neither he nor any of his nation had ever been lower than at a place where they could see the gap made by the river on entering the mountains. To that place, he said, he would conduct Captain Clarke, if he desired it, by the next evening. But the latter was in no need of farther evidence to convince him of the utter impracticability of the route before him. He had already witnessed the difficulties of part of the road; yet, after all these, his guide, whose intelligence and veracity he could not doubt, now assured him that their difficulties were only commencing, and what he saw before him too clearly convinced him of the Indian's veracity. He therefore determined to abandon this route, and returned to the upper part of the last creek they had passed, and, reaching it an hour after dark, encamped for the night: on this creek he had seen in the morning an Indian road coming in from the north. Disappoint-

ed in finding a route by water, Captain Clarke now questioned his guide more particularly as to the direction of this road, which he seemed to understand perfectly. He drew a map on the sand, and represented the road, as well as that they had passed yesterday on Berry Creek, as both leading towards two forks of the same great river, where resided a nation called Tushepaws, who, having no salmon on their own river, came by these roads to the fish-wears on Lewis's River. He had himself been among these Tushepaws, and, having once accompanied them on a fishing party to another river, had there seen Indians who had come from across the Rocky Mountains. After a great deal of conversation, or, rather, talking by signs, and a second and more particular map had been drawn by his guide, Captain Clarke felt persuaded that the latter knew of a road from the Shoshonee village they had left to the great river to the north, without coming so low down as this on a route impracticable for horses.

"August 24. Being desirous of hastening his return, he set out early; and, after descending the creek to the river, stopped to breakfast on berries in the meadow above the second creek. He then went on, but unfortunately fell from a rock, and injured his leg very much; though he walked forward as rapidly as he could, and at four in the afternoon rejoined his men. During his absence they had killed a mountain-cock and a few pheasants, and taken some small fish, on which, with haws and service-berries, they had subsisted. Captain Clarke immediately sent forward a man on horseback with a note to Captain Lewis, apprizing him of the result of his inquiries, and late in the afternoon set out with the rest of the party, and encamped at the distance of two miles. The men were much disheartened at the bad prospect of escaping from the mountains; and, having nothing to eat but a few berries, which have made several of them sick, they all passed a disagreeable

night, which was rendered more uncomfortable by a heavy dew.

"August 25. The want of provisions urged Captain Clarke to return as soon as possible: he therefore set out early, and halted an hour in passing the Indian camp near the fish-wears. These people treated them with great kindness; for, though poor and dirty, they willingly give what little they possess. They gave the whole party boiled salmon and dried berries, which were not, however, in sufficient quantities to appease their hunger. They soon resumed their old road; but as abstinence, or the strange diet, had given one of the men a very severe illness, they were detained much on his account, and it was not till late in the day they reached the cliff under which they had encamped on the 21st. They immediately began to fish and hunt in order to procure a meal, and caught several small fish. By means of the guide they obtained two salmon from a party of women and children, who, with one man, were going below to gather berries. This supplied them with about half a meal; but after dark they were regaled with a beaver which one of the hunters brought in.

"August 26. The morning was fine, and three men were despatched ahead to hunt, while the rest were detained until nine o'clock, in order to retake some horses which had strayed away during the night. They then proceeded along the route by the forks of the river, till they reached the lower Indian camp where they first were when we met them. The whole camp immediately flocked around them with great appearance of cordiality, but all the spare food of the village did not amount to more than two salmon, which they gave to Captain Clarke, who distributed them among his men. The hunters had not been able to kill anything, nor had either Captain Clarke or the greater part of his men any food during the twenty-four hours, till towards even-

ing one of them shot a salmon in the river, and a few small fish were caught, which furnished them with a scanty meal. The only animals they had seen were a few pigeons and some very wild hares; also great numbers of the large black grasshopper, and several ground-lizards.

"August 27. The men, who were engaged last night in mending their moccasins, all except one went out hunting, but no game was to be procured. One of them, however, took a small salmon, and the Indians made them a present of another, on which the whole party made a very slight breakfast. These Indians, to whom such a life is familiar, seem contented, although they depend for subsistence on the scanty productions of the fishery. But our men, who are used to hardships, but have been accustomed to have the first wants of nature regularly supplied, feel very sensibly their wretched situation: their strength is wasting away, and they begin to express their apprehensions of being without food in a country perfectly destitute of any means of supporting life except a few fish. In the course of the day an Indian brought into the camp five salmon, two of which Captain Clarke bought, and made a supper for the party.

"August 28. There was a frost again this morning. The Indians gave the party two salmon out of several which they had caught in their traps, and, having purchased two more, they were enabled to subsist on them during the day. A camp of about forty Indians from the west fork passed to-day, on their route to the eastward. The prospect of provisions is getting worse every day; the hunters, who had ranged through the country in every direction where game might be expected, have seen nothing. The fishery is scarcely more productive; for an Indian who was out all day with his fish-gig killed only one salmon. Besides the four fish procured from the Indians, Captain Clarke obtained

some fishroe in exchange for three small fish-hooks, the use of which he taught them, and which they very readily comprehended. All the men who are not engaged in hunting are occupied in making pack-saddles for the horses which Captain Lewis informed us he had bought.

"August 20. Two hunters were despatched early in the morning, but they returned without killing anything; and the only game we procured was a beaver, which was caught last night in a trap, which he carried off two miles before he was found. The fur of this animal is as good as any we have ever seen; nor does it, in fact, appear to be ever out of season on the upper branches of the Missouri. This beaver, with several dozen of fine trout, gave us a plentiful subsistence for the day. The party were occupied chiefly in making pack-saddles; in the manufacture of which, we supply the place of nails and boards by substituting, for the first, thongs of raw hide, which answer the purpose very well, and for boards we use the handles of our oars and the plank of some boxes, the contents of which we empty into sacks of raw hides made for the purpose. The Indians who visit us behave with the greatest decorum, and the women are busily engaged in making and mending the moccasins of the party. As we had still some superfluous baggage which would be too heavy to carry across the mountains, it became necessary to make a *cache* or deposite. For this purpose we selected a spot on the bank of the river, three quarters of a mile below the camp, and three men were set to dig it, with a sentinel in the neighbourhood, who was ordered, should the natives straggle that way, to fire a signal for the workmen to desist and separate. Towards evening the *cache* was completed, without being perceived by the Indians, and the packages were prepared for deposite."

CHAPTER XVI.

Contest between Drewyer and a Shoshonee.—Fidelity and Honour of that Tribe.—The Party set out on their Journey.—Conduct of Cameahwait reproved, and himself reconciled.—Easy Parturition of the Shoshonee Women.—History of this Nation.—Their Terror of the Pahkees.—Their Government, and Family Economy in the Treatment of their Women.—Their Complaints of Spanish Treachery.—Description of their Weapons of War.—Curious Mode of making Shields.—Caparison of their Horses.—Dress of the Men and Women particularly described.—Their Mode of acquiring new Names.

“August 21. The weather was very cold, the water standing in vessels exposed to the air being covered with ice a quarter of an inch thick: the ink froze in the pen, and the low grounds were perfectly whitened with frost; but after this the day proved excessively warm. The party were engaged in their usual occupations, and completed twenty saddles with the necessary harness, all prepared for use as soon as the Indians should arrive. Our two hunters, who were despatched early in the morning, did not return, so that we were obliged to encroach on our pork and corn, which we consider as the last resource when our casual supplies of game fail. After dark we carried the baggage to the *cache*, depositing what we thought too cumbrous to carry with us: that is, all the specimens of plants, seeds, and minerals collected since leaving the Falls of the Missouri, with a small assortment of medicines. Late at night Drewyer returned with a fawn, and a considerable quantity of Indian plunder, which he had taken by way of reprisal. While hunting this morning in the Shoshonee Cove, he came suddenly upon an Indian camp, at which were an old man, a young one, three women, and a boy: they showed no surprise at the sight of him, and he therefore

rode up to them, and, after turning his horse loose to graze, sat down and began to converse with them by signs. They had just finished a repast on some roots, and in about twenty minutes one of the women spoke to the rest of the party, who immediately went out, collected their horses, and began to saddle them. Having rested himself, Drewyer thought he would continue his hunt, and, rising, went to catch his horse, who was at a short distance, forgetting at the moment to take up his rifle. He had scarcely gone more than fifty paces when the Indians mounted their horses, the young man snatched up the rifle, and, leaving all their baggage, whipped their horses, and set off at full speed towards the passes of the mountains: Drewyer instantly jumped on his horse and pursued them. After running about ten miles the horses of the women nearly gave out; and they, finding Drewyer gaining on them, raised dreadful cries, which induced the young man to slacken his pace; and, being mounted on a very fleet horse, rode round them at a short distance. Drewyer now came up with the women, and by signs persuaded them that he did not mean to hurt them. They then stopped, and as the young man came towards them, Drewyer asked him for his rifle; but the only part of the answer which he understood was Pahkee, the name by which they call their enemies, the Minnetarees of Fort de Prairie. While they were thus engaged in talking, Drewyer watched his opportunity, and, seeing the Indian off his guard, galloped up to him and seized his rifle. He struggled for some time; but, finding Drewyer getting too strong for him, had the presence of mind to open the pan and let the priming fall out: after this he let go his hold, and, giving his horse the whip, escaped at full speed, leaving the women to the mercy of the conqueror. Drewyer then returned to where he had first seen them: here he found the baggage they had left behind, and brought it to the camp with him.

"August 22. This morning early, two men were sent to complete the covering of the *cache*, which could not be so perfectly done during the night as to elude the search of the Indians. On examining the spoils which Drewyer had obtained, they were found to consist of several dressed and undressed skins; two bags wove with the bark of the silk grass, each containing a bushel of dried service-berries, and about the same quantity of roots; an instrument made of bone for manufacturing flints into heads for arrows, besides a number of flint-stones. These last were much of the same colour, and nearly as transparent, as common black glass, and when cut, separated in flakes, leaving a very sharp edge. The roots were of three kinds, and folded separately from each other, in hides of buffalo made into parchment. The first was a fusiform root, six inches long, and about the size of a man's finger at the largest end, with radicles larger than is usual in roots of the fusiform kind. The rind was white and thin; the body also white, mealy, and easily reducible by pounding to a substance resembling flour, like which it thickened by boiling, and was of an agreeable flavour: it is eaten frequently in its raw state, either green or dried. The second species was much mutilated, but appeared to be fibrous; it was of a cylindrical form, about the size of a small quill, hard and brittle. A part of the rind, which had not been detached in the preparation, was hard and black, but the rest of the root was perfectly white: this, the Indians informed us, was always boiled before eating; and on making the experiment, we found that it became perfectly soft, but had a bitter taste, which was nauseous to us, but which the Indians seemed to relish; for, on giving the roots to them, they were very greedily eaten. The third species was a small nut, about the size of a nutmeg, of an irregularly rounded form, something like the smallest of the Jerusalem artichoke, and which, on boiling, we found

to resemble it in flavour: it is certainly the best root we have seen in use among the Indians. On inquiring of them from what plants these roots were procured, they informed us that none of them grew near the place where we were.

"The men were chiefly employed in dressing the skins belonging to the party who had accompanied Captain Clarke. About eleven o'clock, Chaboneau and his wife returned with Cameahwait, accompanied by about fifty men with their women and children. After they had encamped near us and turned loose their horses, we called a council of all the chiefs and warriors, and addressed a speech to them: additional presents were then distributed, particularly to the two second chiefs, who had, agreeably to their promises, exerted themselves in our favour. The council was then adjourned, and all the Indians were treated with an abundant meal of boiled Indian corn and beans. The poor wretches, who had no animal food, and scarcely anything but a few fish, had been almost starved, and received this new luxury with great thankfulness. Out of compliment to the chief, we gave him a few dried squashes which we had brought from the Mandans, and he declared it was the best food he had ever tasted except sugar, a small lump of which he had received from his sister. He now declared how happy they should all be to live in a country which produced so many good things; and we told him that it would not be long before the white men would put it in their power to live where they might themselves cultivate all these kinds of food instead of wandering among the mountains. He appeared to be much pleased with this information; and the whole party being now in excellent temper after their repast, we began our purchase of horses. We soon obtained five good ones on very reasonable terms: that is, by giving for each merchandise which cost us originally about six dollars. We have again to admire the perfect decency

and propriety of their conduct ; for, although so numerous, they do not attempt to crowd round our camp, or take anything which they see lying about ; and whenever they borrow knives, or kettles, or any other article from the men, they return them with great fidelity.

"Towards evening we formed a drag of bushes, and in about two hours caught five hundred and twenty-eight very good fish, most of them large trout. Among them we observed, for the first time, ten or twelve trout of a white or silvery colour, except on the back and head, where they were of a bluish cast. In appearance and shape they resembled exactly the speckled trout, except that they were not quite as large, though the scales were much larger, and the flavour equally good. The greater part of the fish was distributed among the Indians.

"August 23. Our visitors seemed to depend wholly on us for food, and as the state of our provisions obliged us to be careful of our remaining stock of corn and flour, this was an additional reason for urging our departure ; but Cameahwait requested us to wait till the arrival of another party of his nation, who were expected to-day. Knowing that it would be in vain to oppose his wish, we consented, and two hunters were sent out, with orders to go farther up the southeast fork than they had hitherto been. At the same time the chief was informed of the low state of our provisions, and advised to send out most of his young men to hunt : this he recommended them to do, and most of them set out. We then sunk our canoes by means of stones to the bottom of the river : a situation which, better than any other, secured them against the effects of the high waters, and the frequent fires of the plains, the Indians having promised not to disturb them during our absence ; a promise we believed the more readily, as they were almost too lazy to take the trouble of raising them for firewood. We were desirous of purchasing

some more horses, but they declined selling any until we should reach their camp in the mountains. Soon after starting, the Indian hunters discovered a mule buck, and twelve of their horsemen pursued it for four miles. We saw the chase, which was very entertaining, and at length they rode it down and killed it. This mule buck was the largest deer of any kind we have seen, being nearly as large as a doe elk. Besides this, they brought in another deer and three goats; but, instead of a general distribution of the meat, such as we have hitherto seen among all the tribes of Indians, we observed that some families had a large share, while others received none. On inquiring of Cameahwait the reason of this custom, he said that meat among them was scarce, and that each hunter reserved what he had killed for the use of himself and his own family, none of the rest having any claim on what he chose to keep. Our hunters returned soon after with two mule deer and three common deer, three of which we distributed among the families that had received none of the game of their own hunters. About three o'clock the expected party, consisting of fifty men, women, and children, arrived. We now learned that most of the Indians were on their way down the valley towards the buffalo country, and some anxiety to accompany them appeared to prevail among those who had promised to assist us in crossing the mountains. We ourselves were not without some apprehension that they might leave us; but, as they continued to say that they would return with us, nothing was said upon the subject. We were, however, resolved to start early in the morning, and therefore despatched two men to hunt in the cove, and leave the game on the route we should pass the next day.

"August 24. As the Indians who arrived the day before had a number of spare horses, we thought it probable they might be willing to dispose of them, and desired the chief to speak to them in relation to

it. They declined giving any positive answer, but requested to see the goods which we proposed to exchange. We then produced some battle-axes which we had made at Fort Mandan, and a quantity of knives, with both of which they appeared very much pleased; and we were soon able to purchase three horses, by giving for each an axe, a knife, a handkerchief, and a little paint. To this we were obliged to add a second knife, a handkerchief, a shirt, and a pair of leggins before we could obtain a mule; and such is the estimation in which those animals are held, that even at this price, which was double that for a horse, the fellow who sold him took to himself great merit, in having given away, as he said, one of them to us. They now declared they had no more horses for sale; and as we had already nine of our own, two hired ones, and a mule, we began loading them as heavily as was prudent, and, placing the rest of the baggage on the shoulders of the Indian women, left our camp at twelve o'clock. We were all on foot except Sacajawea, for whom her husband had purchased a horse with some articles which we gave him for that purpose: an Indian, however, had the politeness to offer Captain Lewis one of his horses to ride, which he accepted, in order better to direct the march of the party.

"We crossed the river below the forks, directing our course towards the cove by the route already passed, and had just reached the lower part of it, when an Indian rode up to Captain Lewis to inform him that one of his men was very sick, and unable to come on. The party was immediately halted at a run which falls into the creek on the left, when Captain Lewis rode back two miles, and found Wiser severely afflicted with the colic: by giving him some essence of peppermint and laudanum, he recovered sufficiently to ride Captain Lewis's horse, the latter rejoining the party on foot. When he arrived, he found that the Indians, who had been impa-

tiently expecting his return, had unloaded their horses and turned them loose, and made their camp for the night. It would have been fruitless to remonstrate, and not prudent to excite any irritation; and therefore, although the sun was still high, and we had made only six miles, we thought it best to remain with them: after we had encamped there fell a slight shower of rain. One of the men caught several fine trout; but Drewyer, who had been sent out to hunt, returned without having killed anything. We therefore gave a little corn to those of the Indians who were engaged in carrying our baggage, and who had absolutely nothing to eat. We also advised Cameahwait, as we could not supply the whole of his people with provisions, to recommend to all who were not assisting us to go on before us to their camp. This he did; but in the morning,

"August 25, a few only followed his advice, the rest accompanying us at some distance on each side. We set out at sunrise, and, after going seventeen miles, halted for dinner within two miles of the narrow pass in the mountains. The Indians who were on the sides of our party had started some antelopes, but were obliged, after a pursuit of several hours, to abandon the chase. Our hunters had, in the mean time, brought in three deer, the greater part of which was distributed among the Indians. While at dinner, we learned by means of Sacajawea that the young men who left us this morning had carried a request from the chief that the village should break up its encampment, and meet his party to-morrow, when they would all go down the Missouri into the buffalo country. Alarmed at this new caprice, which, if not counteracted, threatened to leave ourselves and baggage on the mountains, or, even if we should reach the waters of the Columbia, to prevent our obtaining horses to go on farther, Captain Lewis immediately called the three chiefs

together. After smoking a pipe, he asked them if they were men of their word, and if we could rely on their promises. They readily replied in the affirmative. He then asked if they had not agreed to assist us in carrying our baggage over the mountains. To this they also answered yes. And why, then, said he, have you requested your people to meet us to-morrow, where it will be impossible for us to trade for horses, as you promised we should. If, he continued, you had not promised to help us in transporting our goods over the mountains, we should not have attempted it, but have returned down the river; after which no white men would have ever come into your country. If you wish the whites to be your friends, and to bring you arms and protect you from your enemies, you should never promise what you do not mean to perform: when I first met you you doubted what I said, yet you afterward saw that I told you the truth. How, then, can you doubt what I now tell you? You see that I have divided among you the meat which my hunters kill, and I promise to give all who assist us a share of whatever we have to eat. If, therefore, you intend to keep your promise, send one of the young men immediately to order the people to remain at the village till we arrive.

"The two inferior chiefs then said that they had wished to keep their word, and to assist us; that they had not sent for the people, but, on the contrary, had disapproved of the measure, which was done wholly by the first chief. Cameahwait remained silent for some time: at last he said that he knew he had done wrong, but that, seeing all his people in want of provisions, he had wished to hasten their departure for the country where their wants might be supplied. He, however, now declared that, having passed his word, he would never violate it, and counter-orders were immediately sent to the village by a young man, to whom we gave a handkerchief in order to ensure despatch and fidelity.

"This difficulty being now adjusted, our march was resumed with an unusual degree of alacrity on the part of the Indians. We passed a spot where, six years ago, the Shoshonees had suffered a very severe defeat from the Minnetarees; and late in the evening we reached the upper part of the cove, where the creek enters the mountains. The part of the cove on the northeast side of the creek has lately been burned, most probably as a signal on some occasion. Here we were joined by our hunters with a single deer, which Captain Lewis gave, as a proof of his sincerity, to the women and children, and remained supperless himself. As we came along we observed several large hares, some ducks, and many of the cock of the plains: in the low grounds of the cove were also considerable quantities of wild onions.

"August 26. The morning was excessively cold, and the ice in our vessels was nearly a quarter of an inch in thickness: we set out at sunrise, and soon reached the fountain of the Missouri, where we halted for a few minutes, and then crossing the dividing ridge, reached the fine spring where Captain Lewis had slept on the 12th, in his first excursion to the Shoshonee camp. The grass on the hillside was perfectly dry, and parched by the sun; but near the spring it was quite green: we therefore halted for dinner, and turned out our horses to feed. To each of the Indians engaged in carrying our baggage was distributed a pint of corn, which they parched, then pounded, and made a sort of soup.

"One of the women, who had been leading two of our pack-horses, halted at a rivulet about a mile behind, and sent on the two horses by a female friend. On inquiring of Cameahwait the cause of her detention, he answered, with great apparent unconcern, that she had just stopped to lie in, but would soon overtake us. In fact, we were astonished to see her, in about an hour's time, come on with her new-

born infant, and pass us on her way to the camp, seemingly in perfect health. The wonderful facility with which the Indian women give birth to their children, would seem some benevolent gift of nature, in exempting them from pains which their savage state would render doubly grievous." * * *

"The tops of the high, irregular mountains to the westward were still entirely covered with snow; and the coolness which the air acquired in passing over them was a very agreeable relief from the heat, which had dried up the herbage on the sides of the hills. While we stopped the women were busily employed in collecting the root of a plant with which they feed their children, who, like their mothers, were nearly half starved, and in a wretched condition. It is a species of fennel, which grows in the moist grounds: the radix is of the knob kind, of a long ovate form, terminating in a single radicle, the whole being three or four inches long, and the thickest part about the size of a man's little finger. When fresh, it is white, firm, and crisp; and when dried and pounded, makes a fine white meal. Its flavour is not unlike that of aniseed, though less pungent. From one to four of these knobbed roots are attached to a single stem, which rises to the height of three or four feet, and is jointed, smooth, cylindric, and has several small peduncles, one at each joint above the sheathing leaf. Its colour is a deep green, as is also that of the leaf, which is sheathing, sessile, and polipartite, the divisions being long and narrow. The flowers, which were in bloom, are small and numerous, with white and umbelliferous petals: there are no root leaves. As soon as the seeds have matured, the roots of the present year, as well as the stem, decline, and are renewed in the succeeding spring from the little knot which unites the roots. The sunflower was also abundant here, and the seeds, which were now ripe, were gathered in considerable quantities, and, after

being pounded and rubbed between smooth stones, form a kind of meal, which is a favourite dish among the Indians.

"After dinner we continued our route, and were soon met by a party of young men on horseback, who turned with us and went to the village. As soon as we were within sight of it, Cameahwait requested that we should discharge our guns: the men were therefore drawn up in a single rank, and gave a running fire of two rounds, to the great satisfaction of the Indians. We then proceeded to the encampment, where we arrived about six o'clock, and were conducted to the leathern lodge, in the centre of thirty-two others made of brush. The baggage was arranged near this tent, which Captain Lewis occupied, and was surrounded by those of the men, so as to secure it from pillage. This camp was in a beautiful smooth meadow, near the river, and about three miles above the camp where we first visited the Indians. We here found Colter, who had been sent by Captain Clarke with a note apprizing us that there were no hopes of a passage by water, and that the most practicable route seemed to be that mentioned by his guide, towards the north. Whatever road we should decide to take, it was now necessary to provide ourselves with horses. We therefore informed Cameahwait of our intention of going to the great river beyond the mountains, and that we wished to purchase twenty more horses. He replied that the Minnetarees had stolen a great number of their horses the last spring, but that he still hoped they could spare us that number. In order not to lose the present favourable moment, and to keep the Indians as cheerful as possible, the violins were brought out, and our men danced, greatly to their diversion. This mirth was the more welcome as our situation was not precisely such as would most dispose us to gayety; for we had only a little parched corn to eat, and our means

of subsistence or of success depended on the wavering temper of the natives, who might change their minds the next day.

"The Shoshonees are a small tribe of the nation called the Snake Indians, a vague appellation, which embraces at once the inhabitants of the southern parts of the Rocky Mountains and of the plains on either side. The Shoshonees with whom we now were amount to about one hundred warriors, and three times that number of women and children. Within their own recollection they formerly lived in the plains, but they have been driven into the mountains by the Pahkees, or the roving Indians of the Saskatchewan, and are now obliged to visit occasionally, and by stealth, the country of their ancestors. Their lives, indeed, are migratory. From the middle of May to the beginning of September they reside on the head-waters of the Columbia, where they consider themselves perfectly secure from the Pahkees, who have never yet found their way to that retreat. During this time they subsist chiefly on salmon, and, as that fish disappears on the approach of autumn, they are driven to seek subsistence elsewhere. They then cross the ridge to the waters of the Missouri, down which they proceed slowly and cautiously, till they are joined near the Three Forks by other bands, either of their own nation or of the Flatheads, with whom they associate against the common enemy. Being now strong in numbers, they venture to hunt the buffalo in the plains eastward of the mountains, near which they spend the winter, till the return of the salmon invites them to the Columbia. But such is their terror of the Pahkees, that, so long as they can obtain the scantiest subsistence, they do not leave the interior of the mountains; and, as soon as they have collected a large stock of dried meat, they again retreat, thus alternately obtaining their food at the hazard of their lives, and hiding themselves to consume it.

“In this loose and wandering life they suffer the extremes of want; for two thirds of the year they are forced to live in the mountains, passing whole weeks without meat, and with nothing to eat but a few fish and roots. Nor can anything be imagined more wretched than their condition at the present time, when the salmon is fast retiring, when roots are becoming scarce, and they have not yet acquired strength to hazard an encounter with their enemies. So insensible are they, however, to these calamities, that the Shoshonees are not only cheerful, but even gay; and their character, which is more interesting than that of any Indians we have seen, has in it much of the dignity of misfortune. In their intercourse with strangers they are frank and communicative; in their dealings they are perfectly fair; nor have we, during our stay with them, had any reason to suspect that the display of all our new and valuable wealth has tempted them into a single act of dishonesty. While they have generally shared with us the little they possess, they have always abstained from begging anything from us. With their liveliness of temper, they are fond of gaudy dresses and all sorts of amusements, particularly games of hazard; and, like most Indians, delight in boasting of their warlike exploits, either real or fictitious. In their conduct towards us they have been kind and obliging; and though on one occasion they seemed willing to neglect us, yet we scarcely knew how to blame the treatment by which we were to suffer, when we recollected how few civilized chiefs would have hazarded the comforts or the subsistence of their people for the sake of a few strangers. This manliness of character may be the cause of, or it may be formed by, the nature of their government, which is perfectly free from any restraint. Each individual is his own master, and the only control to which his conduct is subjected is the advice of a chief supported by his influence over the

rest of the tribe. The chief himself is, in fact, no more than the most confidential person among the warriors : a rank neither distinguished by any external honour, nor conferred by any ceremony, but gradually acquired from the good wishes of his companions, and by superior merit. Such an officer has, therefore, strictly no power : he may recommend, or advise, or influence, but his commands have no effect on those who incline to disobey, and who may at any time withdraw from their voluntary allegiance. This shadowy authority, which cannot survive the confidence which supports it, often decays with the personal vigour of the chief, or is transferred to some more fortunate or favourite hero.

“ In their domestic economy the man is equally sovereign. He is the sole proprietor of his wives and daughters, and can barter them away, or dispose of them in any manner he may think proper. The children are seldom corrected : the boys, particularly, soon become their own masters ; they are never whipped, for they say that it breaks their spirit, and that, after being flogged, they never recover their independence of mind, even when they grow to manhood. A plurality of wives is very common ; but these are not generally sisters, as among the Minnetarees and Mandans, but are purchased of different fathers. Infant daughters are often betrothed by the father to men who are grown, either for themselves or for their sons, for whom they are desirous of providing wives. The compensation to the father is usually made in horses or mules ; and the girl remains with her parents till the age of puberty, which is thirteen or fourteen, when she is surrendered to her husband. At the same time, the father often makes a present to the husband equal to what he had formerly received as the price of his daughter, though this return is optional with the parent. Sacajawea had been contracted in this way

before she was taken prisoner, and when we brought her back her betrothed was still living. Although he was double the age of Sacajawea, and had two other wives, he claimed her; but, on finding that she had a child by her husband Chaboneau, he relinquished his pretensions, and said he did not want her." * * *

"Among the females, we observed some who appeared to be held in more respect than the women of any nation we had seen. But the mass of them are condemned, as among all savage nations, to the lowest and most laborious drudgery. When the tribe is stationary, they collect the roots and cook; they build the huts, dress the skins, and make clothing; collect the wood, and assist in taking care of the horses on the route; they load the horses, and have the charge of all the baggage. The business of the man is to fight; he therefore takes on himself the chief care of his horse, the companion of his warfare; and will descend to no other labour than to hunt and fish. He would consider himself degraded by being compelled to walk any distance; and were he so poor as to possess only two horses, he would ride the best one, and leave the other for his wives and children, and their baggage; or should he have too many wives or too much baggage for the horse, the wives would have no alternative but to follow him on foot; they are not, however, often reduced to these extremities, for their stock of horses is very ample. Notwithstanding their losses the last spring, they still have at least seven hundred, among which are about forty colts, and half that number of mules. There are no horses here which can be considered as wild; we have seen two only on this side of the Muscleshell River which were without owners; and even those, although shy, showed every mark of having been once in the possession of man. The original stock was procured from the Spaniards, but they now raise their own. The horses are gen-

erally very fine, of a good size, vigorous, and patient of fatigue as well as hunger. Each warrior has one or two tied to a stake near his hut both day and night, so as to be always prepared for action. The mules are obtained in the course of trade from the Spaniards, with whose brands several of them are marked, or are stolen from them by the frontier Indians. They are the finest animals of the kind we have ever seen, and, at this distance from the Spanish colonies, are very highly valued. The worst are considered as worth two horses, and a good mule cannot be obtained for less than three, and sometimes four horses.

"We also saw a bridle-bit, stirrups, and several other articles, which, like the mules, came from the Spanish settlements. The Shoshonees say that they can reach those settlements in ten days' march by the route of the Yellowstone River; but we readily perceive that the Spaniards are by no means favourites. They complain that they refuse to let them have firearms, under pretence that these dangerous weapons will only induce them to kill each other. In the mean time, say the Shoshonees, we are left to the mercy of the Minnetarees, who, having arms, plunder us of our horses, and put us to death without mercy. 'But this should not be,' said Cameahwait, fiercely, 'if we had guns. Instead of hiding ourselves in the mountains, and living, like the bears, on roots and berries, we would then go down and live in the buffalo country in spite of our enemies, whom we never fear when we meet on equal terms.'

"As war is the chief occupation, bravery is the first virtue among the Shoshonees. None can hope to be distinguished without having given proofs of it; nor can there be any preferment or influence in the nation without some warlike achievement. The important events which give reputation to a Shoshonee, and entitle him to a new name, are killing a

white bear ; stealing, individually, horses from the enemy ; leading out a party that happens to be successful either in destroying their foes or capturing their horses ; and, lastly, scalping a warrior. These acts seem to be regarded as of nearly equal dignity, but the last, that of taking an enemy's scalp, is an honour quite independent of the act of vanquishing him. To kill an adversary is of no importance, unless the scalp is brought from the field of battle ; and were a warrior to slay any number of his enemies in action, and others were to obtain the scalps or first touch the dead, they would have all the honours, since they had borne off the trophies.

“ Although thus oppressed by the Minnetarees, the Shoshonees are still a very military people. Their cold and rugged country inures them to fatigue ; their long abstinence makes them support resolutely the dangers of mountain warfare ; and worn down, as we have seen them, by want of sustenance, they have a look of fierce and adventurous courage. The Shoshonee warriors always fight on horseback : they possess a few bad guns, which are reserved exclusively for war ; but their common arms are the bow and arrow, a shield, a lance, and a weapon called by the Chippeways, by whom it was formerly used, the *poggamoggon*. The bow is made of cedar or pine, covered on the outer side with sinews and glue. It is about two and a half feet long, and does not differ in shape from those used by the Sioux, Mandans, and Minnetarees. Sometimes, however, it is made of a single piece of the horn of an elk, covered on the back, like those of wood, with sinews and glue, and occasionally ornamented with a strand wrought of porcupine quills and sinews, wrapped round the horn near its two ends. Bows made of the horns of the bighorn are still more prized, and are formed by cementing with glue flat pieces of the horn together, covering the back with sinews and glue, and loading the whole

with an unusual quantity of ornaments. The arrows resemble those of the other Indians, except in being more slender than any we have seen. They are contained, with the implements for striking fire, in a narrow quiver formed of different kinds of skin, though that of the otter seems to be preferred. It is just long enough to protect the arrows from the weather; and is worn on the back, by means of a strap passing over the right shoulder and under the left arm.

"The shield is a circular piece of buffalo hide, about two feet four or five inches in diameter, ornamented with feathers, and a fringe of dressed leather around it, and adorned, or rather deformed, with paintings of strange figures. The buffalo hide is perfectly proof against any arrow; but, in the minds of the Shoshonees, its power to protect them is chiefly derived from the virtues communicated to it by the old men and jugglers. To make a shield is indeed one of their most important ceremonies: it begins with a feast, to which all the warriors, old men, and jugglers are invited. After the repast, a hole is dug in the ground about eighteen inches in depth, and of the same diameter as the intended shield: into this hole heated stones are thrown, and water poured over them, till they emit a very dense hot steam. The buffalo skin, which must be the entire hide of a male two years old, and that has never been suffered to dry since it was taken from the animal, is now laid across the hole, with the fleshy side to the ground, and stretched in every direction by as many as can take hold of it. As it becomes heated, the hair separates and is taken off by the hand; till at last the skin is contracted into the compass designed for the shield. It is then taken off, and placed on a hide prepared into parchment, when it is pounded during the rest of the festival by the bare heels of those who have been invited to it. This operation sometimes continues for

several days, after which it is delivered to the proprietor, and declared by the old men and jugglers to be proof against arrows; and, provided the feast has been satisfactory, even against the bullets of their enemies. Such is their delusion, that many of the Indians implicitly believe that this ceremony has given to the shield supernatural powers, and that they have no longer to fear any weapons of their foes.

"The *poggamoggon* is an instrument consisting of a handle twenty-two inches long, made of wood, covered with dressed leather, and about the size of a whip-handle. At one end is a thong of two inches in length, which is tied to a round stone, weighing two pounds, and held in a cover of leather; while at the other is a loop of the same material, which is passed round the wrist so as to secure the hold of the instrument, and with it they strike a very severe blow.

"Besides these, they have a kind of armour something like a coat of mail, which is formed by a great many folds of dressed antelope skins, united by means of a mixture of glue and sand. With this they cover their own bodies and those of their horses, and find it impervious to the arrow.

"The caparison of their horses is a halter and a saddle. The first is either a rope of six or seven strands of buffalo hair plaited or twisted together, about the size of a man's finger, and of great strength; or merely a thong of raw hide, made pliant by pounding and rubbing; though the first kind is much preferred. The halter is very long, and is never taken from the neck of the horse when in constant use. One end of it is first tied round the neck in a knot, and then brought down to the under jaw, round which it is formed into a simple noose, passing through the mouth: it is then drawn up on the right side, and held by the rider in his left hand, while the rest trails after him to some distance. At other

times the knot is formed at a little distance from one of the ends, so as to let that end serve as a bridle, while the other trails on the ground. With this cord dangling by the side of him, the horse is put to his full speed without fear of falling, and when he is turned to graze the noose is merely taken from his mouth. The saddle is formed like the pack-saddles used by the French and Spaniards, of two flat, thin boards, which fit the sides of the horse, and are kept together by two cross-pieces, one before and the other behind, that rise to a considerable height, ending sometimes in a flat point extending outward, and always making the saddle deep and narrow. Under this a piece of buffalo skin, with the hair on, is placed, so as to prevent the rubbing of the boards, and before they mount they throw a piece of skin or robe over the saddle, which has no permanent cover. When stirrups are used, they consist of wood covered with leather; but stirrups and saddles are conveniences reserved for old men and women. The young warriors rarely use anything except a small leathern pad stuffed with hair, and secured by a girth made of a leathern thong. In this way they ride with great expertness, and they are particularly dexterous in catching the horse when he is running at large. If he will not immediately submit when they wish to take him, they make a noose in the rope, and, although he may be at a distance, or even running, rarely fail to fix it on his neck; and such is the docility of the animal, that, however unruly he may seem, he surrenders as soon as he feels the rope on him. This cord is so serviceable in this way, that it is never dispensed with, even when they use the Spanish bridle, which they prefer, and always procure when they have it in their power. The horse becomes to them almost an object of attachment. A favourite one is frequently painted, and his ears cut into various shapes; while the mane and tail, which are never drawn nor trimmed, are

decorated with feathers of birds, and sometimes a warrior will suspend at the breast of his horse the finest ornaments he possesses.

"Thus armed and mounted, the Shoshonee is a formidable enemy, even with the feeble weapons which he is still obliged to use. When they attack at full speed, they bend forward, and cover their bodies with the shield, while with the right hand they shoot under the horse's neck.

"The only articles of metal which the Shoshonees possess are a few bad knives, some brass kettles, some bracelets or armbands of iron or brass, a few buttons worn as ornaments in their hair, one or two spears about a foot in length, and some heads for arrows made of iron or brass. All these they have obtained in trading with the Crow or Rocky Mountain Indians, who live on the Yellowstone. The few bridle-bits and stirrups they procured from the Spanish colonies.

"The instrument which supplies the place of a knife among them is a piece of flint with no regular form, and the sharp part of which is not more than one or two inches long. The edge of this is renewed, and the flint itself is formed into heads for arrows by means of the point of a deer or elk horn, an implement which they use with great art and ingenuity. They have no axes or hatchets; all the wood being cut with flint or elk-horn, the latter of which is always used for a wedge in splitting it. Their utensils consist, besides the brass kettles, of pots in the form of a jar, made either of earth, or of a stone found in the hills between Madison and Jefferson Rivers, which, though soft and white in its natural state, becomes very hard and black after exposure to the fire. The horns of the buffalo and the bighorn supply them with spoons.

"Fire they always kindle by means of a blunt arrow and a piece of well-seasoned wood of a soft, spongy kind, such as the willow or cottonwood.

"The Shoshonees are of diminutive stature, with thick, flat feet and ankles, and crooked legs, and are, generally speaking, worse formed than any nation of Indians we have seen. Their complexion resembles that of the Sioux, and is darker than that of the Minnetarees, Mandans, or Shawnees. The hair in both sexes is suffered to fall loosely over the face and down the shoulders: some of the men, however, divide it by means of thongs of dressed leather or otter skin into two equal queues, which hang over the ears, and are drawn in front of the body; but at the present moment, when the nation is afflicted by the loss of so many relations killed in war, most of them have the hair cut quite short in the neck, and Cameahwait has his so cut all over the head, this being the customary mourning for a deceased kinsman.

"The dress of the men consists of a robe, a tippet, a shirt, long leggins, and moccasins. The robe is formed most commonly of the skins of antelope, bighorn, or deer, though, when it can be procured, the buffalo hide is preferred. Sometimes, too, they are made of the skins of beaver, moonax, or of small wolves, and frequently, during the summer, of elk-skin. These are dressed with the hair on, and the robe reaches about as low as the middle of the leg. It is worn loosely over the shoulders, the sides being at pleasure either left open or drawn together by the hand, and in cold weather kept close by a girdle round the waist. This robe answers the purpose of a cloak during the day, and at night it is their only covering.

"The tippet is the most elegant article of Indian dress we have ever seen. The neck or collar of it is a strip about four or five inches wide, cut from the back of the otter skin, the nose and eyes forming one extremity, and the tail the other. This being dressed with the fur on, they attach to one edge of it from one hundred to two hundred and fifty lit-

the rolls of ermine skin, beginning at the ear and proceeding towards the tail. These rolls consist of narrow strips from the back of that animal, sowed round small cords of twisted silk-grass, thick enough to make them taper towards the tail, which hangs from the end, and are generally about the size of a large quill. They are tied at the head into little bundles of two, three, or more, according to the caprice of the wearer, and then suspended from the collar, and a broad fringe of ermine skin is fixed so as to cover the parts where they unite, which might otherwise have a coarse appearance. Little tassels of fringe, also, of the same materials, are fastened to the extremities of the tails, so as to show their black colour to greater advantage. The centre of the collar is farther ornamented with the shells of the pearl oyster. Thus adorned, it is worn close round the neck, and the little rolls fall down over the shoulders nearly to the waist, so as to form a sort of short cloak, which has a very handsome appearance. These tippets are very highly esteemed, and are given or disposed of on important occasions only. This ermine is the fur known to the Northwest traders by the name of the white weasel, but it is the genuine ermine; and, by encouraging the Indians to take these animals, their fur might, no doubt, be rendered a valuable article of trade. They must be very abundant, for the tippets are in great numbers, and each one requires at least a hundred skins.

“The shirt is a covering of dressed skin without the hair, and made of the hide of the antelope, deer, bighorn, or elk, though the last is more rarely used than any other for this purpose. It fits the body loosely, and reaches half way down the thigh. The aperture at the top is wide enough to admit the head, and has no collar, but is either square, or most frequently terminates in the tail of the animal, which is left entire, so as to fold outward, though some-

times the edges are cut into a fringe, and ornamented with the quills of the porcupine. The seams of the shirt are on the sides, and are richly fringed and adorned with porcupine quills to within five or six inches of the sleeves, where it is left open, as is also the under side of the sleeve from the shoulder to the elbow, below which it fits closely round the arm as far as the wrist, and has no fringe like the sides, and the under part of the sleeve above the elbow. It is kept up by wide shoulder-straps, on which the manufacturer displays his taste by a variety of figures wrought with porcupine quills of different colours, and sometimes with beads, when they can be obtained. The lower end of the shirt retains the natural shape of the fore legs and neck of the skin, with the addition of a slight fringe: the hair, too, is left on the tail and near the hoofs, part of which last is retained, and split into a fringe.

"The leggins are generally made of antelope skins, dressed without the hair, and with the legs, tail, and neck hanging to them. Each leggin is formed of a skin nearly entire, and reaches from the ankle to the upper part of the thigh, and the legs of the skin are tucked, before and behind, under a girdle round the waist. It fits closely to the leg, the tail being worn upward, and the neck, highly ornamented with fringe and porcupine quills, drags on the ground behind the heels. As the legs of the animal are tied round the girdle, the wide part of the skin is drawn so high as to conceal the parts usually kept from view, in which respect their dress is much more decent than that of any nation of Indians on the Missouri. The seams of the leggins down the sides are also fringed and ornamented, and occasionally decorated with tufts of hair taken from enemies whom they have slain. In making all these articles of dress, their only thread is the sinew taken from the back and loins of the deer, elk, buffalo or some other animal.

"The moccasin is made of deer, elk, or buffalo skin, dressed without the hair, though in winter they use the skin of this animal with the hairy side inward, as do most of the Indians who inhabit the buffalo country. Like the Mandan moccasin, it is made with a single seam on the outer edge, and sewed up behind, a hole being left at the instep to admit the foot. It is variously ornamented with figures wrought with porcupine quills; and sometimes the young men most fond of dress cover it with the skin of the polecat, and trail at their heels the tail of the animal.

"The dress of the women consists of the same articles as that of the men. The robe, though smaller, is worn in the same way: the moccasins are precisely similar. The shirt or chemise reaches half way down the leg, and is of the same form, except that there is no shoulder-strap, the seam coming quite up to the shoulder; though for women who are nursing, both sides are open almost down to the waist. It is also ornamented in the same way, with the addition of little patches of red cloth, edged round with beads at the skirts. The chief ornament is over the breast, where there are curious figures wrought with the usual finery of porcupine quills. Like the men, they have a girdle round the waist; and when either sex wish to disengage the arm, it is drawn up through the hole near the shoulder, and the lower part of the sleeve thrown behind the body.

"Children alone wear beads round their necks; grown persons of both sexes prefer them suspended in little bunches from the ear, sometimes intermixed with triangular pieces of the shell of the pearl oyster. Occasionally the men tie them in the same way to the hair of the fore part of the head; and, to increase their beauty, add the wings and tails of birds, and particularly the feathers of the great eagle or calumet-bird, of which they are extremely fond. The collars are formed either of seashells

procured from their relations to the southwest, or of the sweet-scented grass which grows in the neighbourhood, and which they twist or plat to the thickness of a man's finger, and then cover it with porcupine quills of various colours. The first of these is worn indiscriminately by both sexes; the second is principally confined to the men; while a string of elk's tusks forms a collar almost exclusively worn by the women and children. Another collar worn by the men consists of a string of round bones like the joints of a fish's back; but the one preferred above all others, because the most honourable, is that formed of the claws of the brown bear. To kill one of these animals is as distinguished an achievement as to put an enemy to death; and, in fact, with their weapons, is a more dangerous trial of courage. These claws are suspended on a thong of dressed leather, and, being ornamented with beads, are worn by the warriors round the neck with great pride. The men also frequently wear the skin of a fox, or a strip of otter skin round the head, in the form of a bandeau. In short, the dress of the Shoshonees is as convenient and decent as that of any of the Indians we have seen.

"They have many more children than might have been expected, considering their precarious means of support and their wandering life.

"The old men are few in number, and do not appear to be treated with much tenderness or respect.

"The tobacco used by the Shoshonees is not cultivated among them, but obtained from the Indians of the Rocky Mountains, and from some of the bands of their own nation who live south of them; it is the same plant which is in use among the Minnetarees, Mandans, and Ricaras.

"Their chief intercourse with other nations seems to consist in their association with other Snake Indians and with the Flatheads when they go eastward to hunt the buffalo, and during the occasional visits made by the latter to the waters of the Co-

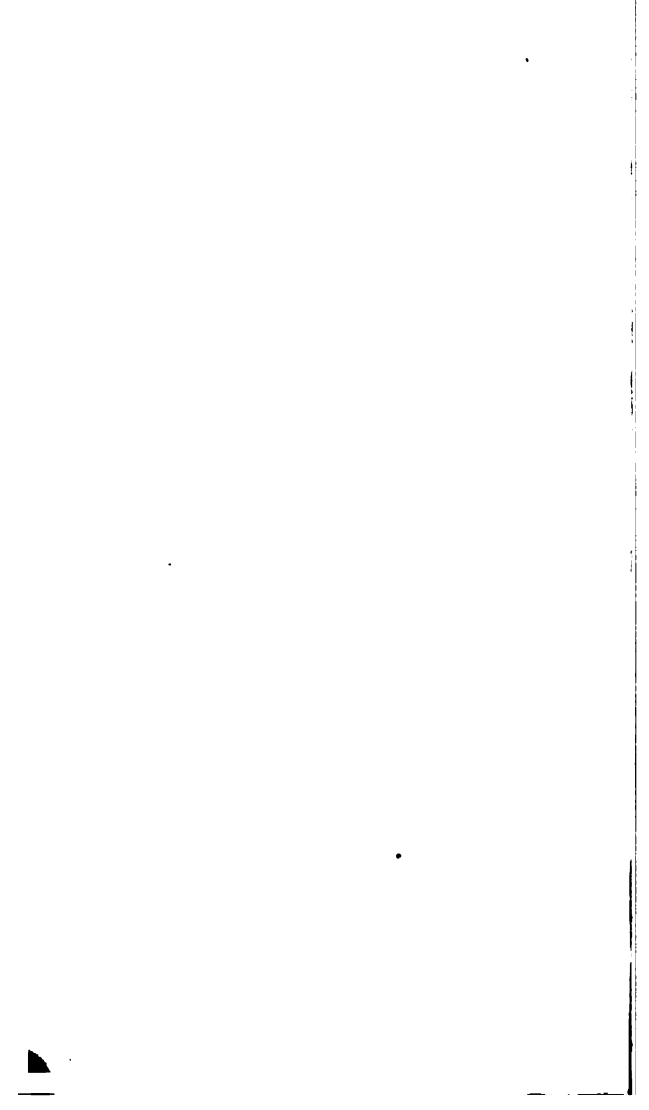
lumbia for the purpose of fishing. Their intercourse with the Spaniards is much more rare, and it furnishes them with a few articles, such as mules, and some bridles and other ornaments for horses, which, as well as their kitchen utensils, they also obtain from the bands of Snake Indians on the Yellowstone. The pearl ornaments which they esteem so highly come from other bands, whom they represent as their friends and relations, living to the southwest, beyond the barren plains on the other side of the mountains. These relations, they say, inhabit a good country, filled with elk, deer, bear, and antelope, where horses and mules are much more numerous than they are here, or, to use their own expression, as abundant as the grass of the plains.

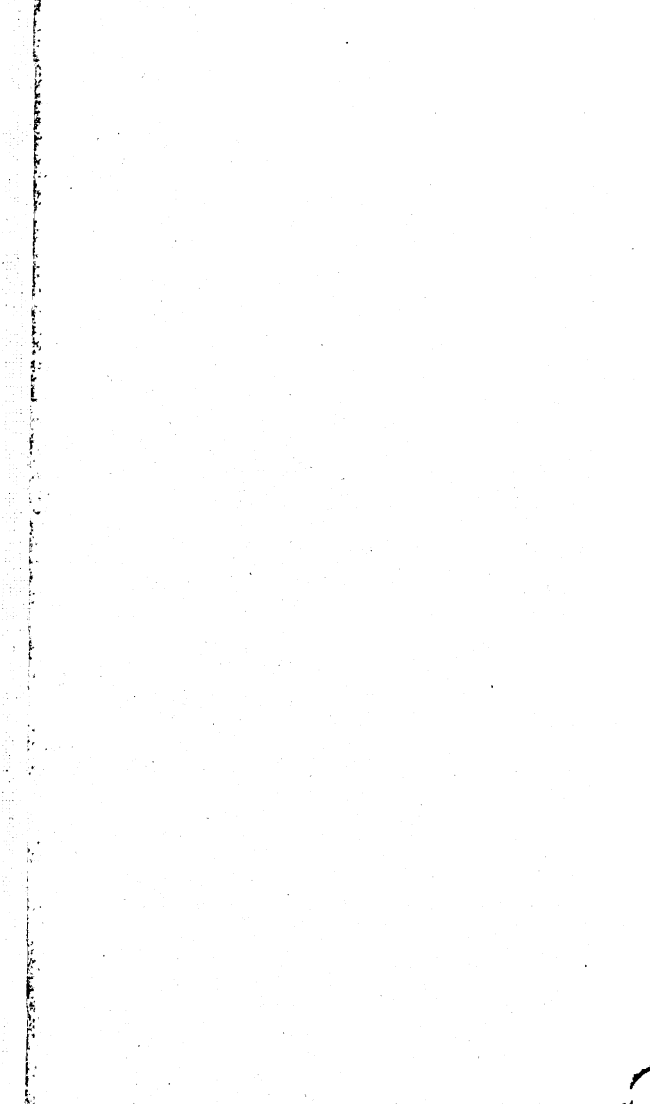
"The name of the Indian varies in the course of his life. The one he receives in childhood, merely from the necessity of distinguishing him from others, or on account of some accidental resemblance to external objects, the young warrior is impatient to exchange for another acquired by some gallant achievement. Any important action, stealing a horse, scalping an enemy, or killing a brown bear, entitles him at once to a new name, which he then selects for himself, and it is confirmed by the nation. Sometimes the two names subsist together: thus, the chief Cameahwait, which means "one who never walks," has the war name of Tooettecone, or "black gun," which he acquired when he first signalized himself. As each new action gives a warrior a right to change his name, many of them have several in the course of their lives. To give to a friend one's own name is an act of courtesy, and a pledge, like that of pulling off the moccasin, of sincerity and hospitality. The chief in this way gave his name to Captain Clarke when he first arrived, and he was afterward known among the Shoshonees by the name of Cameahwait." * * *

CR. M4

22









Oct 9 - 1933



